

## Foreword

Thank you for choosing Hongqi H5 sedan!

All FAW vehicle models have passed China Compulsion Certification (CCC Certification) and Gulf Cooperation Council Certification (GCC Certification).

Hongqi H5 sedan carries multiple luxury equipment and advanced technology. To take full advantage of these equipment and technology, FAW recommends you read this manual thoroughly to know Hongqi H5 sedan quickly and comprehensively.

This manual explains the driving safety, vehicle maintenance and emergency countermeasures in detail to help you drive this vehicle safely and comfortably, and meanwhile maintain the value of the vehicle to the maximum degree.

The documents provided with the vehicle include this Owner's Manual, Maintenance Manual, which contain the important maintenance information for H5 Sedan. FAW suggests you keep the documents provided inside the vehicle for reference at any time.

This manual is compiled in accordance with the product situations at the time of printing. It will be modified into a second edition for the subsequent products. FAW will reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice. Thank you for your understanding.

FAW wishes you a pleasant driving experience and all the best!

First Auto Works (FAW)



## Table of contents

	Pictorial index	Search by illustration
1	Safety Instructions	One must read through the safety instructions.
2	Instrument cluster	How to read instruments, various alarm lights and indicators,etc.
3	Parts operation	The Opening/closing of windows and doors, adjustments before driving,etc.
4	Driving	Required operations and advice while driving
5	Audio system	Audio system operation
6	Interior equipment	Usage of interior equipment,etc.
7	Maintenance	Steps of vehicle maintenance
8	When trouble arises	Measures for failures or emergencies
9	Vehicle specifications	Vehicle details
10	Additional information	Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China
	Other information	Listing of the acronyms and other information contained in this manual

**1 Safety Instructions**

**1-1. Safety Instructions**

Safe Driving..... 24  
 Seat belts ..... 26  
 Airbag ..... 32  
 Child safety information ..... 44  
 Child restraint system..... 45  
 Install the child restraint system ..... 50  
 Cautions on exhaust gas .. 58

**1-2. Immobilizer System**

Engine immobilizer system ..... 59  
 Vehicle body immobilizer system ..... 60

**2 Instrument cluster**

**2. Instrument Cluster**

Combination instrument ..... 62  
 Warning light ..... 64  
 Indicator lamp ..... 65  
 Combination instrument multifunction display ..... 66

**3 Operating the components**

**3-1. Information on the key**

Key .....78

**3-2. Opening, closing and locking the door and trunk lid**

Doors .....82  
 Trunk lid .....86  
 Passive entry & start system\* .....90

**3-3. Adjusting the seats**

Front seats ..... 95  
 Rear seats ..... 99  
 Head restraints ..... 102  
 Seat memory\* ..... 104

**3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and rear-view mirrors**

Steering wheel ..... 106  
 Interior anti-glare rear view mirror ..... 108  
 Exterior mirrors ..... 110

**3-5. Opening and closing the windows**

Power windows .....113  
 Panorama sunroof\* .....116  
 Common sunroof\* .....119

**4 Driving**

**4-1. Before Driving**

Driving a vehicle ..... 123  
 Goods and luggage ..... 131  
 Trailer towing ..... 132

**4-2. Driving specifications**

Engine (start) switch ..... 133  
 Transmission ..... 137

Turn signal light control handle .....	142
EPB Electronic Parking Brake .....	143
Auto hold* .....	145

#### 4-3. Operating lights and wipers

Headlight switch .....	146
IHC intelligent high beam control* .....	149
Fog light switch .....	152
Front windshield wiper and washer .....	153

#### 4-4. Fuel filling

Opening the fuel tank lid..	156
-----------------------------	-----

#### 4-5. Using other driving systems

Constant speed cruise control* .....	159
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Function* .....	163
LIM (Limited System)* ....	172
Front and rear parking radar* .....	174
Rear view camera system* .....	182
Panoramic camera system* .....	188
Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS) .....	193
LDW (Lane Departure Warning)* .....	195
Forward collision warning (FCW) * .....	198
AEB (Autonomous Emergency Brake) system * .....	201
LCDA Lang Change Decision Aid * .....	205
Idling start/stop system* ...	209
PSC semi-automatic parking system * .....	214
Driver assistance .....	225

#### 4-6. Driving information

Key points for driving in winter .....	229
--	-----

### 5 Audio system

#### 5-1. Basic operations

Buttons on the audio system panel .....	233
Multimedia display .....	234
Multimedia switch on the steering wheel .....	238
USB port .....	239

#### 5-2. Settings

System settings .....	241
-----------------------	-----

#### 5-3. Radio

Using the radio .....	249
-----------------------	-----

#### 5-4. USB music

USB music play .....	252
----------------------	-----

#### 5-5. Bluetooth music

Bluetooth music play .....	255
----------------------------	-----

#### 5-6. Video

Video play .....	256
------------------	-----

#### 5-7. Images

Image viewing .....	258
---------------------	-----

#### 5-8. Hands-free system

Using the hands-free system .....	259
-----------------------------------	-----

**5-9. Bluetooth telephone**

Using the Bluetooth®  
telephone ..... 262

**5-10. Voice recognition \***

Using the voice recognition  
function ..... 265

**5-11. CarLife \***

Using CarLife ..... 267

**5-12. On-board interconnection system (Hong Qi Smart Connect) \***

Using the on-board  
interconnection system  
on the mobile phone \* ..... 273

**6 Interior features****6-1. Using the A/C system**

Fully automatic A/C  
system ..... 286

- Using the automatic A/C  
system ..... 287
- Manual regulation ..... 287
- Front windshield  
defrosting/defogging .... 290
- Adjusting the position of and  
opening and closing the air  
outlets ..... 291

Windshield heating ..... 293

**6-2. Using the interior lamps**

List of interior lamps ..... 294

- Front room lamp ..... 295
- Front map light ..... 295
- Rear map light ..... 295
- Vanity mirror light ..... 296
- Trunk light ..... 296

**6-3. Using the storage units**

List of storage units ..... 297

- Glove box ..... 298
- Front seat center storage  
compartment ..... 298
- Rear storage  
compartment ..... 299
- Cup holders ..... 300
- Bottleholder and side  
pocket ..... 301
- File pocket ..... 302
- Eyeglasses box ..... 302
- Trunk hook ..... 303

**6-4. Other interior equipment**

On-board wireless  
charging \* ..... 304

Sun visor ..... 305

File holder ..... 306

Vanity mirror ..... 307

Power socket ..... 308

Seat temperature  
control\* ..... 309

Rear central armrest ..... 311

Roof grab handle ..... 312

Coat hook ..... 313

**7 Maintenance and care****7-1. Maintenance and servicing**

Cleaning and protecting vehicle  
exterior trim ..... 316

Clean and protect the  
interior trim ..... 319

**7-2. Maintenance**

Maintenance  
instructions ..... 322

**7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance**

Do-it-yourself service  
precautions ..... 325

Engine hood .....	328
Engine compartment .....	329
Tire .....	342
Tire pressure .....	345
Wheel .....	347
A/C filter .....	349
Smart key battery .....	351
Checking and replacing...	353

## 8 When trouble arises

### 8-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers .....	358
--------------------------	-----

### 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

If the vehicle needs to be towed .....	359
If any abnormality is found on the vehicle .....	364
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds...	365
In the case of a flat tyre.....	369
If the engine cannot be started .....	378
If the key is lost .....	379
If the smart key does not work properly .....	380
If the door can not be locked properly .....	382
If the battery is low .....	384
If the vehicle is overheating .....	388
In case of the vehicle stuck .....	390
If you drive on water-covered roads .....	392
In case of a punctured tyre .....	393
In case of an accident ...	394

Trunk lid emergency open .....	395
--------------------------------	-----

## 9 Vehicle specifications

### 9. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) .....	399
Fuel sensor .....	411

## 10 Additional information

Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China.....	413
--	-----

## Other information

Abbreviation list .....	415
-------------------------	-----

1

2

3

4

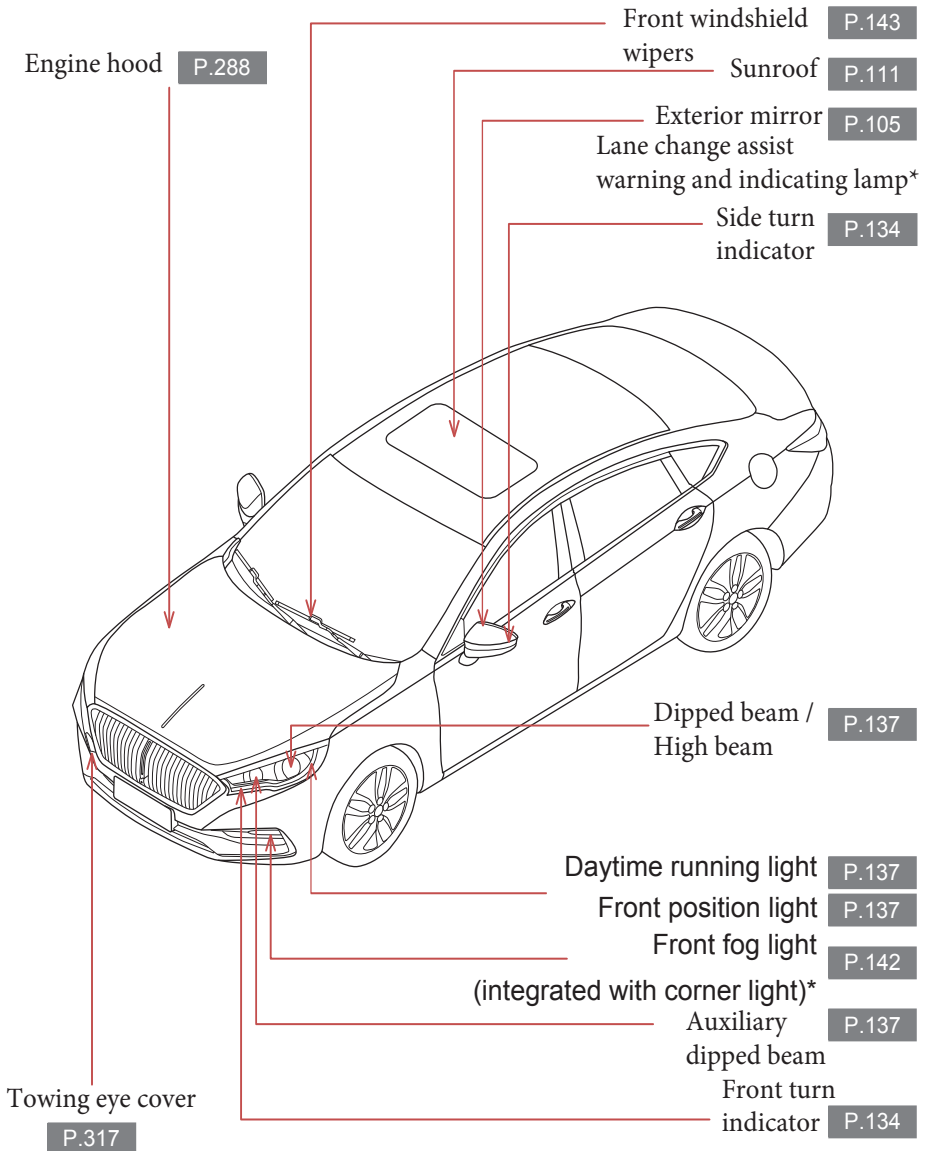
5

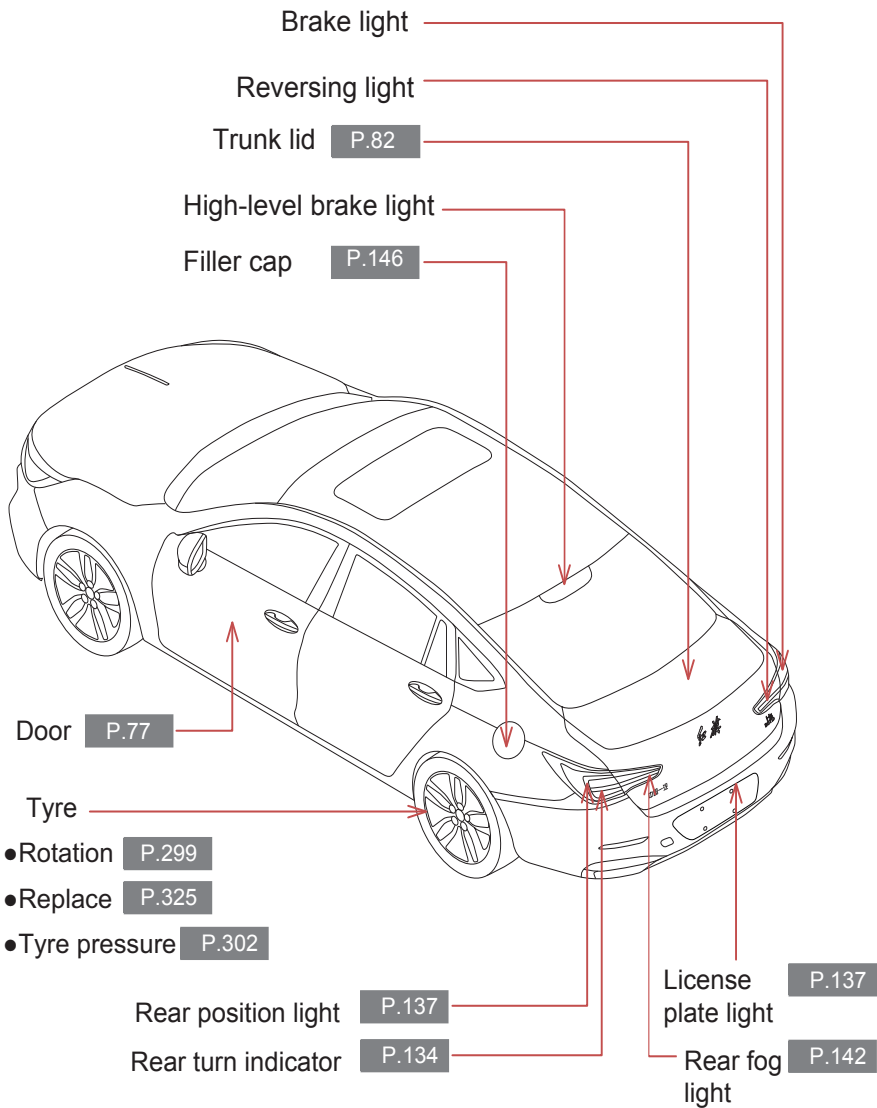
6

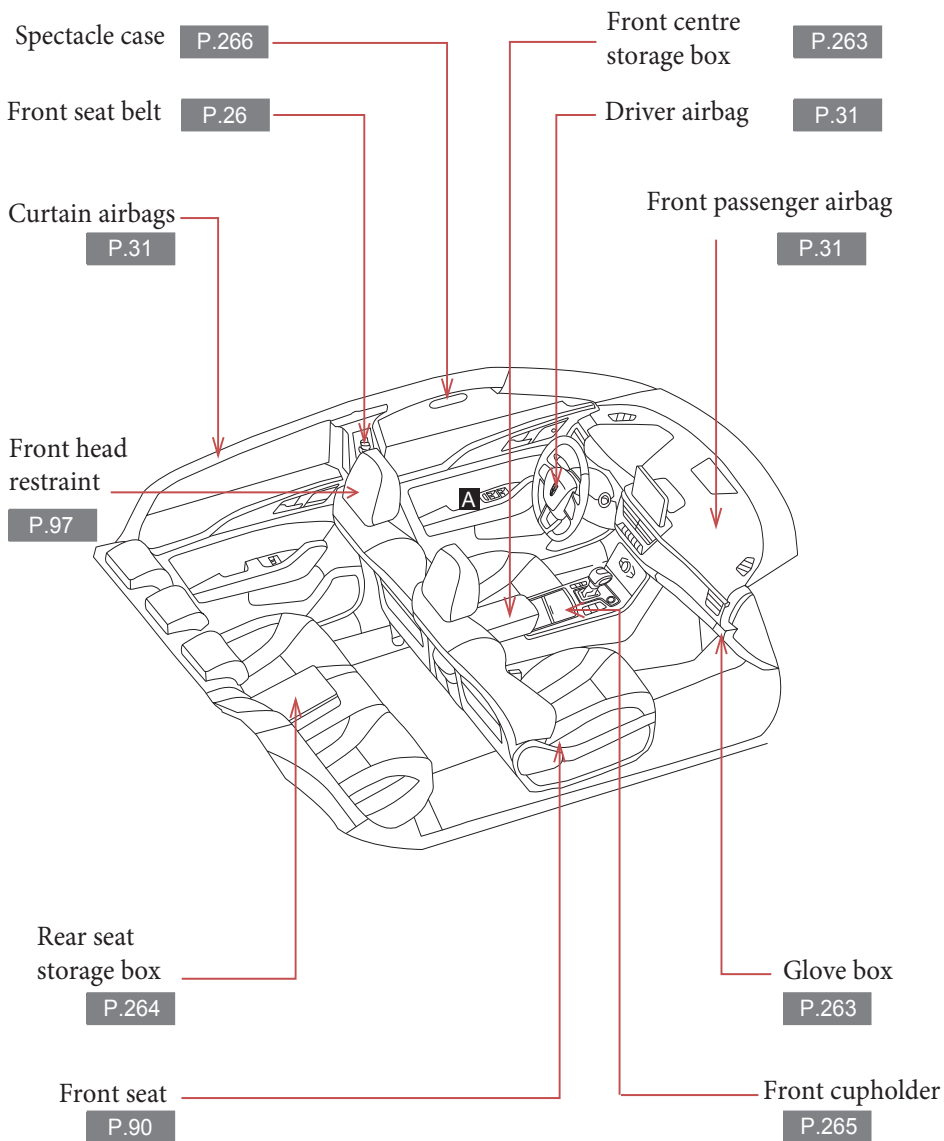
7

8

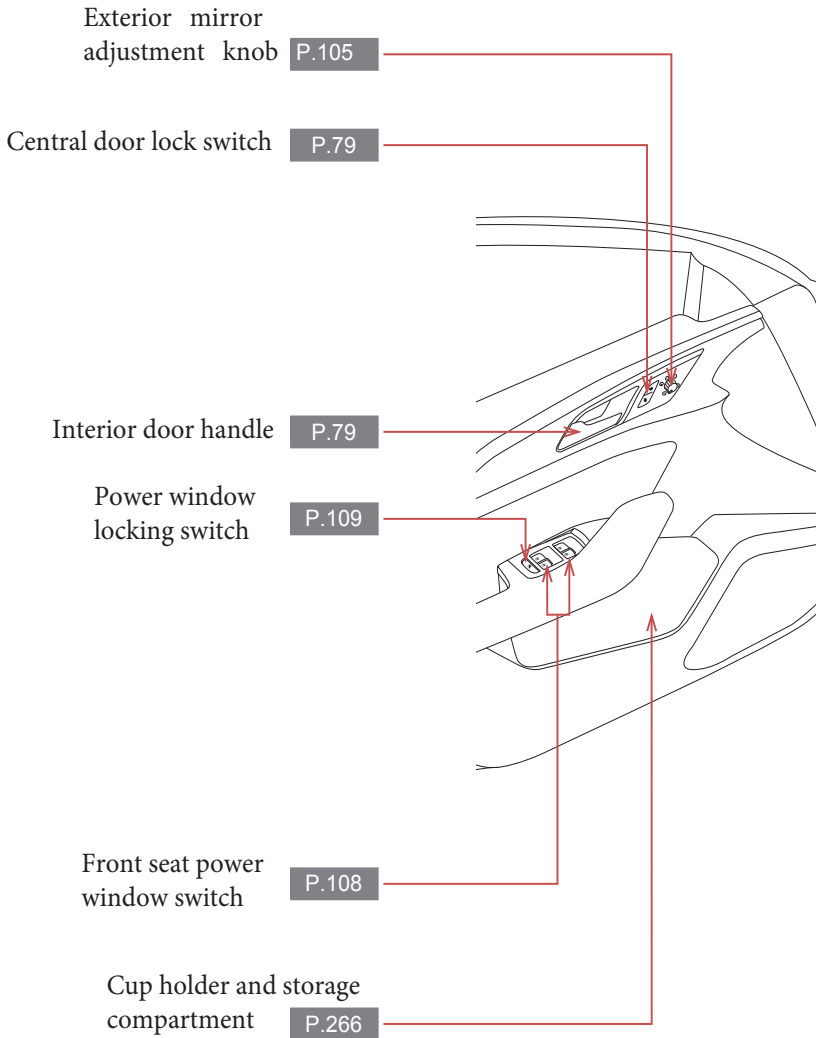
9

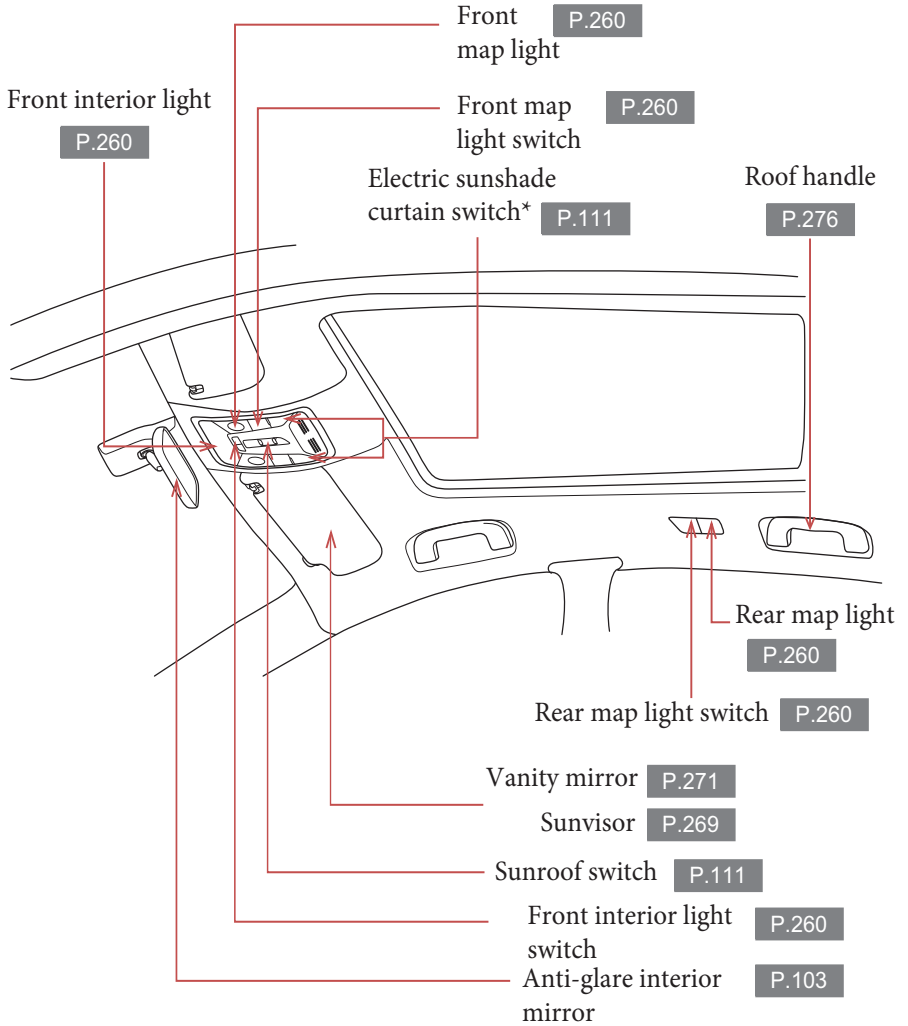






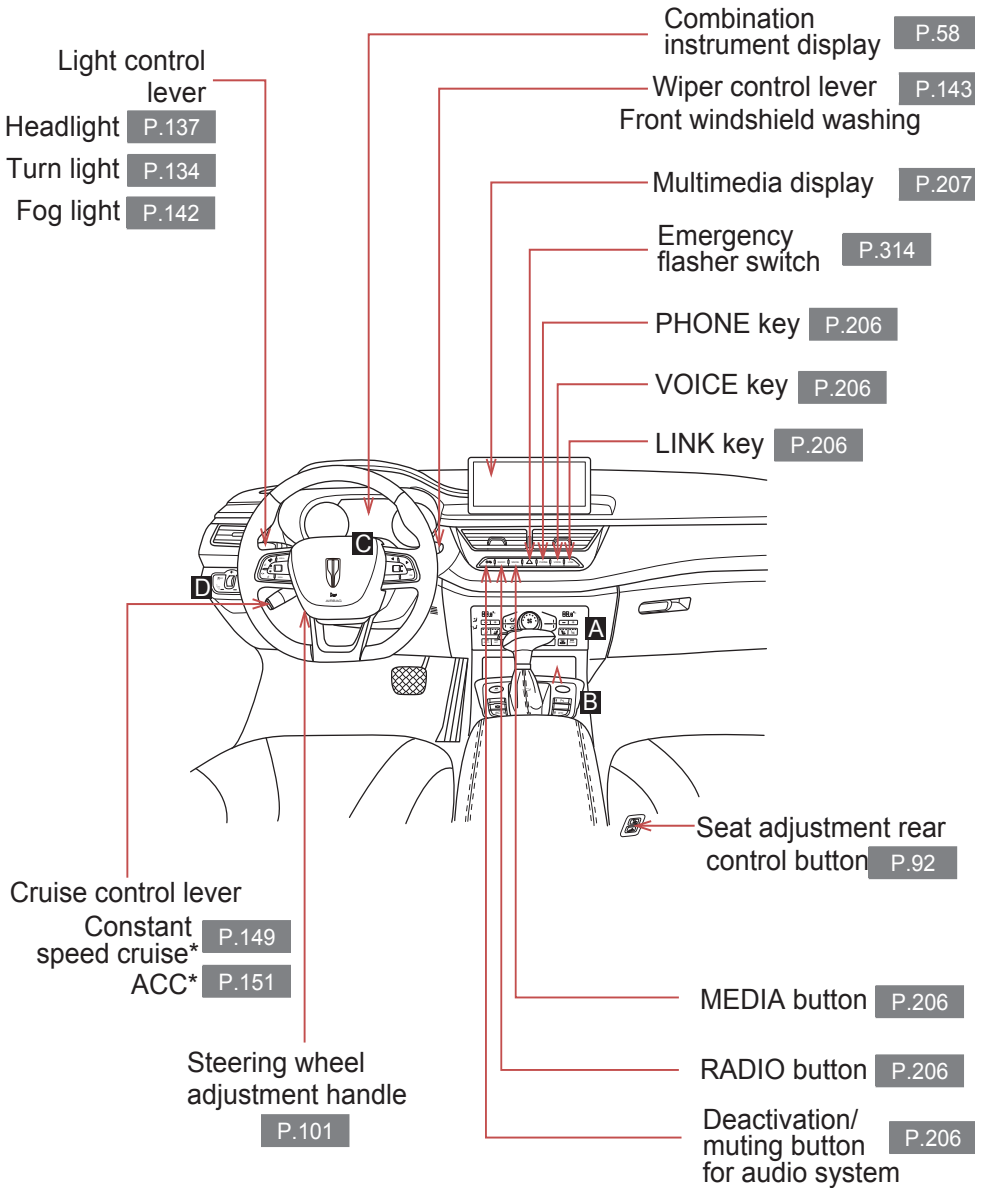
A





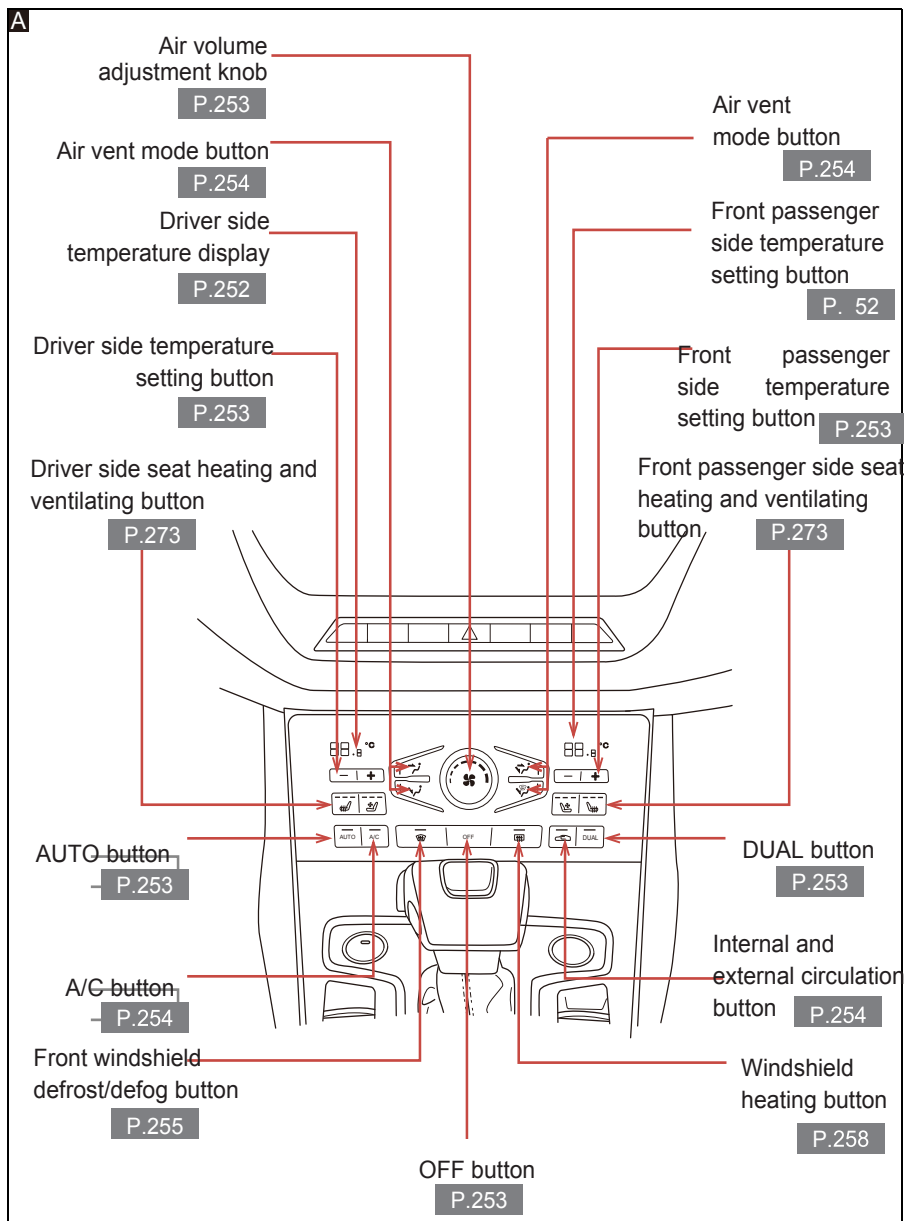
# Pictorial index

# Instrument panel

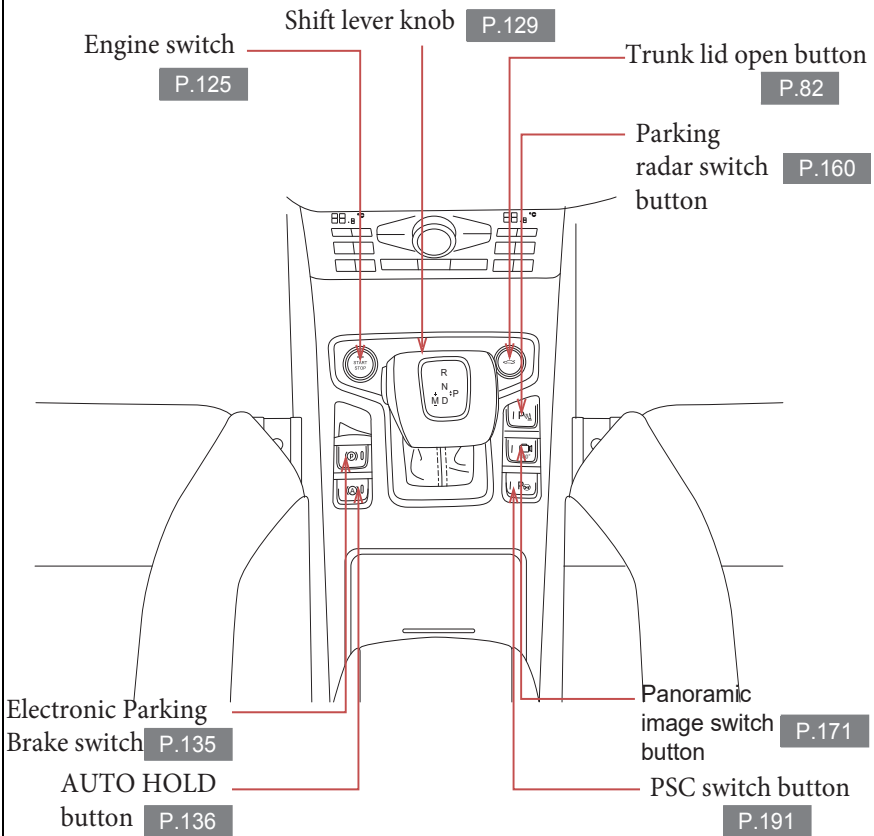


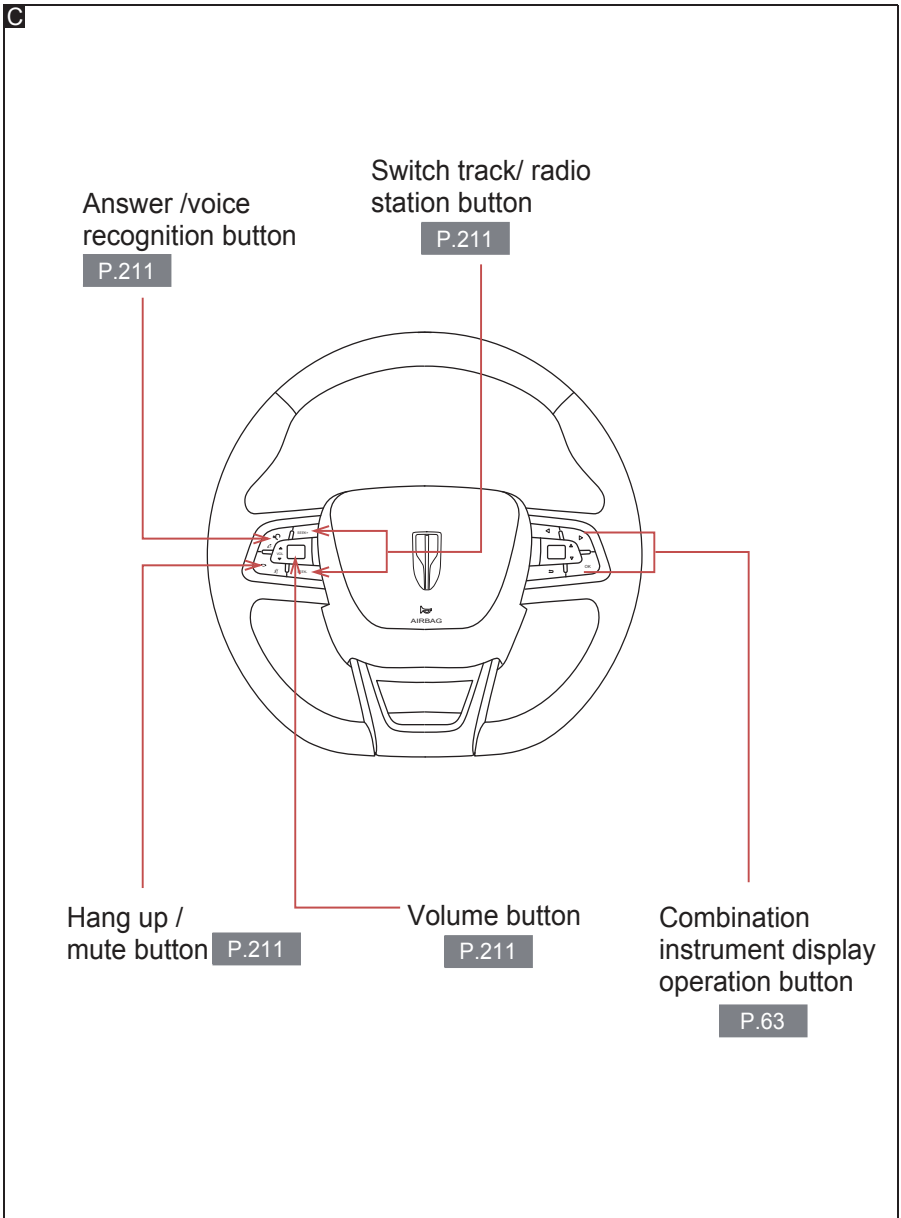
# Pictorial index

# Instrument panel



**B**





D

Idle start/stop  
deactivation button  
P.187

Light height adjustment wheel  
P.138

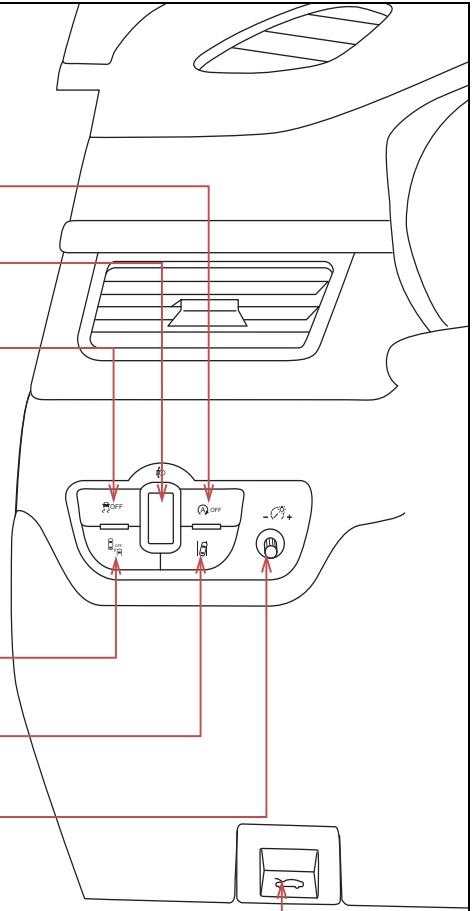
ESC deactivation button  
P.200

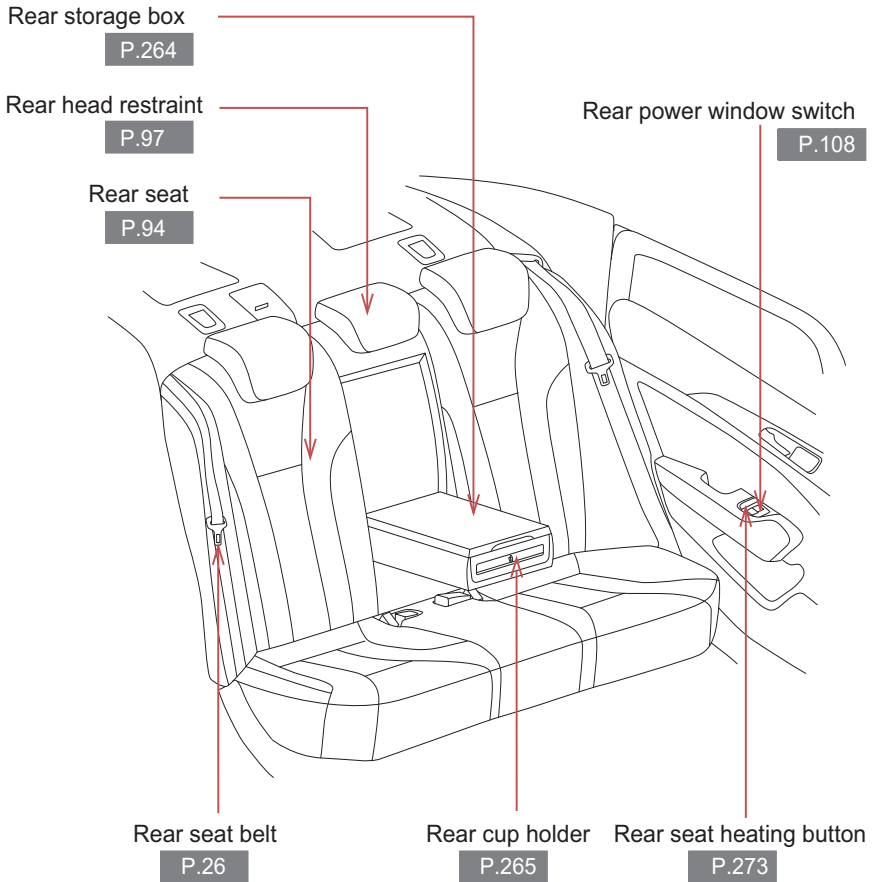
Deactivation button for  
lane change assist  
P.184

LDW switch button  
P.177

Backlight brightness  
adjustment knob  
P.59

Engine hood  
opening handle  
P.288





## For your information

### Owner's Manual

Only after getting a driving licence can the owner drive this vehicle on road. This manual specifically targets at qualified drivers.

In this manual, "\*" means that the configuration and function may vary by and are only available in certain countries, regions, and vehicle models. Please refer to the real vehicle for detailed equipment information.

All specifications provided in this manual are up-to-date as of the time the manual is delivered to print. However, due to FAW's constant efforts in re-modelling and improving, the equipments and performance of subsequent models may vary. Accordingly, contents of this manual will be updated at any time without notice. It's not suggested you compare the contents in other Manual versions with the equipments and performance of the vehicle you purchased, and demand additional gears in light of differences between versions. If you are unclear about the purchased vehicle or the user's manual, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers.

### Accessories, spare parts and modification of the vehicle

The FAW authorized Hongqi dealers possesses advanced tools, equipments as well as genuine spare parts required for providing maintenance and service for your vehicle. We suggest you use the qualified genuine accessories and spare parts.

FAW cannot accept any liability nor can it guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine FAW accessories and spare parts, neither for replacement nor installation involving such parts. In addition, damages or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine FAW spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Do not use products which are not authorized by FAW to modify the vehicle, otherwise it will affect the vehicle's manoeuvrability, safety and durability, and may even violate local government regulations. Besides, any problems caused by the modification are not covered under warranty.

## Read the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Use the diagnostic instrument to connect to the vehicle OBD port. When the ECU information is being read, you can read the vehicle VIN code. You can obtain reading devices from market, which should meet ISO14229, ISO15765, ISO15031, ISO11898 standards.

## Install the RF transmitter system

Installing a RF transmitter system onto a vehicle may affect electronic systems such as:

- Fuel injection system
- Anti-lock Braking System
- Cruise control system
- Airbag System
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers before you install the RF transmitter system.

Please confirm with FAW authorized Hongqi dealers to learn about preventive measures or special instructions for installing RF transmitter systems.

For details on RF bands, power levels, antenna locations and RF transmitter installation regulations, please contact FAW authorized Hongqi dealers.

Excessive noise may occur when receiving radio frequency from other radio frequency transmitting channels (RF transmitters).

## Vehicle Scrapping

Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by FAW authorized Hongqi dealers before you scrap the vehicle. The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in the vehicle contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners intact, it may cause injury or fire, etc..

## Vehicle Model code

This manual describes the CA7180HA6T\* 1, CA7150HA6T\* 2 models.

\*1: Vehicles equipped with 6-speed automatic transmission.

\*2: Vehicles equipped with 7-speed dual-clutch automatic transmission.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Precautions while driving

The driver always drive soberly and defensively with full attention.

- Driving under sober state: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol and/or drugs. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgement and reduce coordination, which could result in serious injury or even death.
- Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Pay attention to the moves of other vehicles and pedestrians at any time so as to make timely judgements and prevent accidents.
- Focus on driving: Always concentrate on driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting control buttons, making a phone call, or reading could cause car crash, serious injury or even death.

#### ■ Precautions regarding children's safety

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Never allow children to have or use the key, otherwise they may be able to start the vehicle or operate the shift lever, causing safety hazards .
- Never allow children to play with the windows or other features of the vehicle which may cause injury.
- Make sure the temperature in the vehicle is favourable, because extreme temperatures inside can be fatal to children.

## Reading this manual

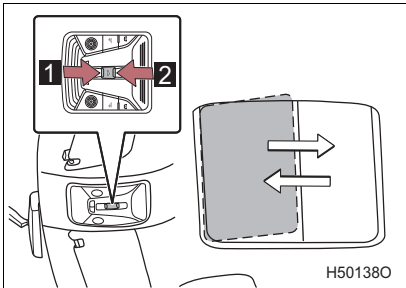
### CAUTIONS



Explain warnings which, if not observed, may cause serious injury or even death.

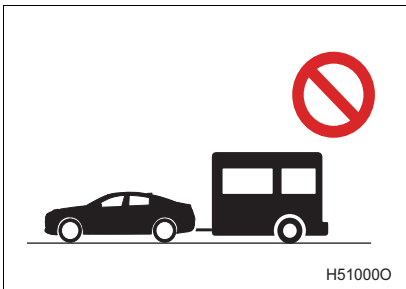
### NOTICES


Explain precautions which, if not observed, may cause damages or failures in the vehicle or devices.

**STEP 1** Represents operation or operating steps following number sequence.

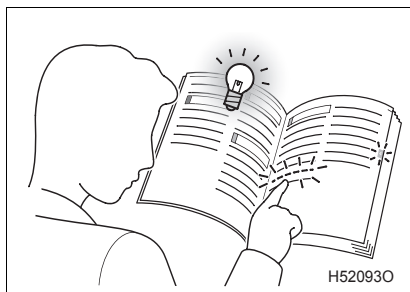


-  Indicates actions (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
-  Indicates results of operation (eg. Lid is open).

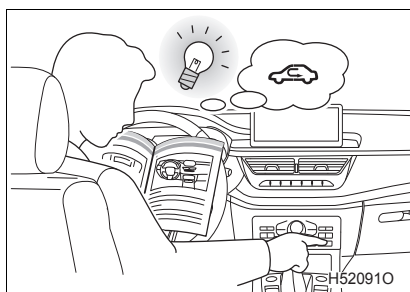


-  Represents "Keep off", "Do not do this", "Please avoid this situation".

## How to Search



- Search by title
  - Contents.....P.1



- Search by installation position
  - Pictorial index.....P.6



## 1-1. Safety Instructions

Safe Driving .....	24
Seat belts .....	26
Airbag .....	32
Child safety information .....	44
Child restraint system .....	45
Install the child restraint system .....	50
Cautions on exhaust gas .....	58

## 1-2. Immobilizer System

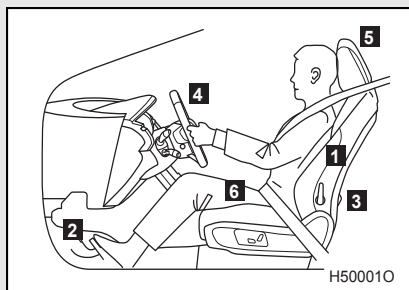
Engine immobilizer sys- tem .....	59
Vehicle body immobilizer system .....	60

## 1-1.Safety Instructions

# Safe Driving

**Adjust the seats, steering wheel and rear-view mirrors to the appropriate position before driving to ensure safety.**

- Correct driving posture



- 1 Sit upright and lean against the backrest.
- 2 Adjust the position of the seat forward or backward to ensure the pedals can be reached and easily depressed to the extent required. ( → P. 90 )
- 3 Adjust the backrest so that the controls are easily operable.( → P.90)
- 4 Adjust the tilt of the steering wheel so that the airbag is facing your chest. ( → P.101)
- 5 Adjust and lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint flush with the top edge of the occupant's ears.  
( → P.97)
- 6 Wear the seat belt correctly.  
( → P.26)

- Use the seat belts correctly

Before driving the vehicle, make sure all the occupants wear seat belts. ( → P. 26)

Children should use appropriate child restraint system until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle. ( → P.43)

- Adjust the rear-view mirror

By properly adjusting the interior and exterior mirrors to ensure a good view of the rear situation. ( → 103, 105)

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions while driving**

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat during driving; otherwise, it may cause a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not put a cushion between your body and the backrest; otherwise, it may be unfavorable to maintain correct posture, reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint, and consequently cause severe personal injury or even death.
- Do not place any object under the front seats, or it may become jammed in the seat rails and stop the seats from locking in place properly, which may lead to an accident.
- It is prone to fatigue during long-distance driving and proper rest is necessary.  
If you feel tired or drowsy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving but take a rest immediately.

**■ Adjust the seat position**

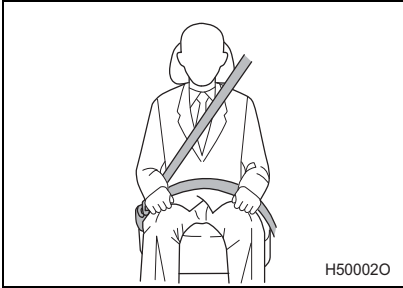
- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other occupants are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts when adjusting the seats; otherwise, the finger may be jammed in the seat adjustment mechanism.

# 1-1. Safety Instructions

## Seat belts

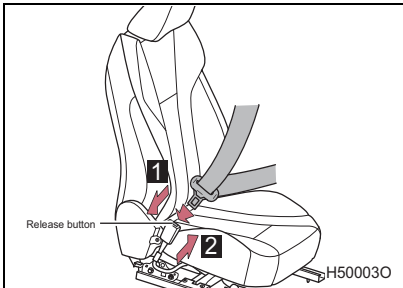
**Make sure that all the occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.**

### Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the belt at the shoulder so that it crosses all over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the belt at the lap as low as possible cross the hips.
- Adjust the backrest position, sit upright and lean against the backrest.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

### Fasten and release

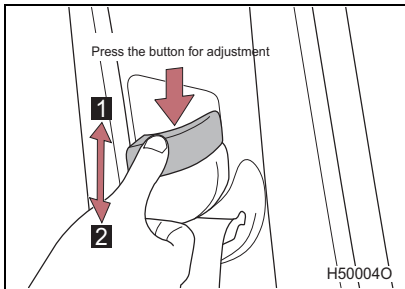


- 1** Fasten the belt  
Push the latch plate into the buckle until a “click” sound is heard.
- 2** Release the belt  
Press the release button.

### NOTICES

If the driver or occupants do not wear the belt, the combination instrument will activate an alarm when driving at a certain speed.

## Adjust the seat belt height (front seats)

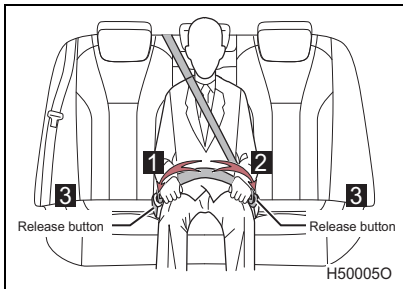


**1** Move upward

**2** Move downward

Press and hold the adjustment button, and move the height adjuster upward and downward as needed until you hear a “click”.

## Rear central seat belt



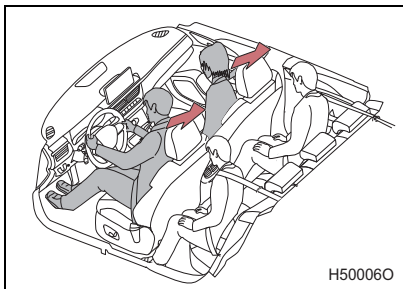
**1** Fasten the seat belt buckle on the right side of the occupant  
Push the latch plate into the buckle until a “click” sound is heard.

**2** Fasten the seat belt buckle on the left side of the occupant  
Push the latch plate into the buckle until a “click” sound is heard.

**3** Release the belt

Press the release button.

## Seat belt pretensioners (only for front seats)



When serious head-on collision occurs to the vehicle, the pretensioner can be activated to tighten the belt and reduce the relaxation of the belt, and thus provides better protection for the front occupants.

However, the pretensioners may not be activated in the event of a minor frontal impact, a side impact or a rear impact.

### ■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop and/or on impact. It may also lock the belt if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, smooth motion will allow the belt to extend, so you can move with ease.

### ■ Automatic locking retractor (ALR)

When the webbing of the rear belts is completely extended and then retracted, even slightly, the webbing is locked in that position and cannot be extended. This feature is used to hold the child restraint system (CRS) firmly. After the seat belt is fully retracted, pull out the webbing slowly and stably, thus the seat belt can be freely extended and retracted again.

### ■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle are designed for persons of adult size.

- Children should use appropriate child restraint system until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, they should also follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage for adults. ( → P. 26)

### ■ Replace the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

- The seat belt pretensioner can only be activated once and if multiple collisions occur to the vehicle, the seat belt pretensioner is activated during the first collision, but will not be activated on the second and subsequent collisions.
- After the pretensioner has been activated by a collision, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to replace the belt in time.

### ■ Seat belt regulations

If there are seat belt regulations in your country or region, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not clamp the seat belt, latch plate or buckle in the door, otherwise the belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belt system periodically. Check the seat belt parts for cuts, wearing, and looseness. Do not use a damaged seat belt and replace with a new one. Damaged seat belts cannot offer protection to the occupant, and thus may cause serious injury or death .
- Ensure that the latch plate and buckle are locked tight and the belt is not twisted.

If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

## ⚠ CAUTIONS

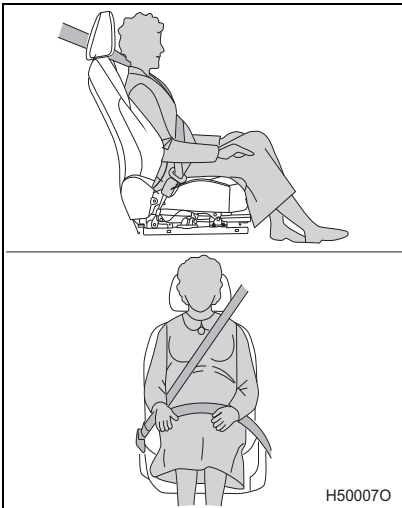
- Replace the seat belts along with the seat assembly if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts yourself. Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for necessary repair and maintenance.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of emergency braking, emergency steering or accidents, please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious injury, even death.

### ■ Wear a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear seat belts.
- Always wear seat belts correctly.
- FAW recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- Please do not tilt the seat excessively for comfort. Because only when the occupants sit upright and lean against the backrest, the seat belt offers maximum protection.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and stretch over your hips.

### ■ Pregnant women



- Follow doctors' orders and wear the seat belt in a proper way.
- Pregnant women should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and position the belt across the chest. The belt should be kept from the bulge on her abdomen.
- If the seat belt is not correctly tied, pregnant women and fetuses may be hurt severe or even dead at the time of emergency braking or collisions.

### ■ Patients

Follow doctors' orders and wear the seat belt in a proper way.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Correctly wear the seat belt

- It is very dangerous for the driver to take a wrong posture or wear a seat belt incorrectly. The seatbelt system does not provide adequate protection due to incorrect position of the seatbelt, which may result in serious personal injury.
- Wearing a seat belt incorrectly is very dangerous. During the collision, an occupant not wearing a seat belt may collide with other people or objects in the vehicle and may even be thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or even death. In the same collision, it will be safer for passengers wearing a seatbelt.

### ■ Do not wear the twisted seat belt

Twisted seat belts are very dangerous. During the collision, the twisted seatbelt will not be able to fully utilize the entire width to absorb the impact force, which allows more force to be exerted on the bone under the seatbelt, and thus cause serious injury or even death.

### ■ Do not share a seat belt among more than one occupant

It is hazardous for more than one occupant (including children) to share a seat belt. Because the seat belts cannot properly disperse the impact force, the occupants may hit each other and cause serious injury or even death.

### ■ Adjustable shoulder restraint device

Always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the shoulder. The seat belt should be kept away from the neck, but should not slip off the shoulder. Otherwise, it will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt during an accident. In the event of emergency braking, emergency steering, or an accident, it may cause serious injury or death.

### ■ Do not over-tilt the seat

To achieve a proper seating position, do not incline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and leaning against the backrest.

### ■ Do not drive the vehicle with a damaged seat belt

Using a damaged seat belt is very dangerous. An accident may result in damage to the seat belt. Damaged seat belts can not provide adequate protection during a collision. Before using the seat belt again after an accident, all seat belt systems must be thoroughly checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

### ■ Seat belt pretensioner

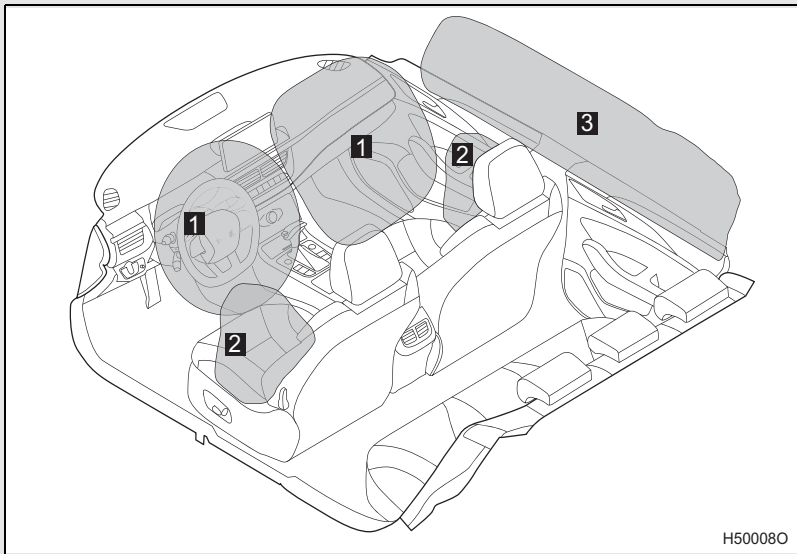
In case of any collision, please immediately contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to check the seat belt pretensioner and airbag. As with the airbag, the seat belt pretensioner and the load limiter can only be used once and must be replaced after being unfolded during collision. If they are not replaced, the risk of serious injury to the occupant will increase when a collision occurs again.

**NOTICES****■ Keep the seat belts clean**

A stained seat belt may be difficult to retract. Therefore, keep the seat belts clean.(Refer to P. 282)

# Airbag

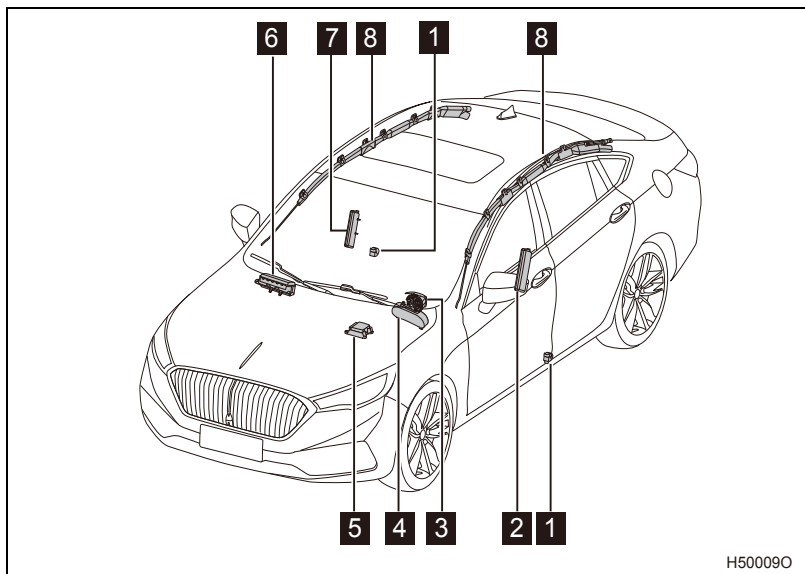
The airbags are the passive safety protection devices to reduce or avoid injury to the occupants when the vehicle is subjected to severe impacts that may cause serious injury to the occupants. When the vehicle is under some serious impacts, the airbag is activated. The vehicle is equipped with multiple airbags. The airbags are used in conjunction with seat belts to reduce the risk of serious injury or death to the occupants in the vehicle. (The shape of the inflated airbag is only for reference).



H50008O

- 1** Driver airbag/Front passenger airbag  
Help protect the heads and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact of interior components.
- 2** Driver seat airbag/Front passenger seat airbag  
Help protect the torso of the front seat occupants.
- 3** Curtain airbags\*  
Help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger and occupants in the side rear seats.

## Airbag system components



- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <b>1</b> Side collision sensor       | <b>2</b> Driver seat airbag              |
| <b>3</b> Driver airbag               | <b>4</b> Airbag malfunction warning lamp |
| <b>5</b> Airbag control unit         | <b>6</b> Front passenger airbag          |
| <b>7</b> Front passenger seat airbag | <b>8</b> Curtain airbags*                |

The main airbag system components are shown above.

In the event of severe frontal or side collisions, the airbag system triggers the airbag gas generator. The chemical reaction occurred in the gas generator should quickly fill the airbag with non-toxic gas to prevent the driver and occupants from being injured by a secondary collision with the interior components.

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions for airbags**

Observe the following precautions regarding the airbags.

Otherwise, it may result in serious injury or even death.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.

The airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.

- The driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and may cause serious injury or even death if the driver is too close to the airbag.
- Since the high risk zone for the unfolding driver airbag is the 50 - 75 mm segment of the unfolding area, place yourself 250 mm at least from your driver airbag. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm away, you can change your driving position in several ways:
  - Move your seat backwards as far as you can while still reaching each pedal with ease.
  - Slightly tilt the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm distance. Even with the driver seat at the most front position, the distance can be obtained simply by tilting the restback backwards slightly. If you cannot see the road conditions clearly in front with the backrest tilting backwards, a hard anti-skid seat cushion can be used to support your body or raise the seat.
  - Adjust the steering wheel and tilt it downward. Thus the airbag points toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

While adjusting the seat as recommended above, make sure that the pedals and steering wheel are under control of the driver, and the instrument panel controls within the driver's reach.

- The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag system and the pretensioned belt are scrapped.

**■ Always use a seat belt**

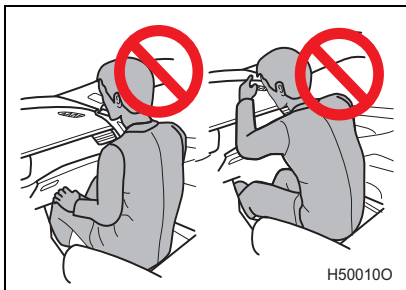
When driving a vehicle equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened. It is extremely dangerous to rely on the airbag alone in accident. Because the airbag alone cannot avoid serious injury. The corresponding airbags inflate only when they are encountered with front, near front or side impact at above moderate. Therefore, always wear a seat belt during a ride.



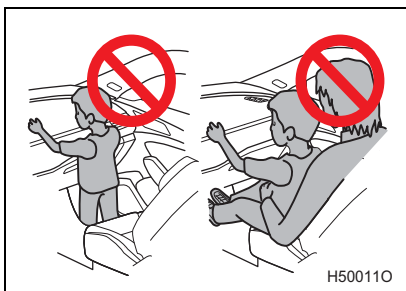
## CAUTIONS

### ■ Precautions for airbags

- The deployment of the front passenger airbag can generate considerable force, and may cause serious injury or death especially when the front passenger is too close to the airbag. The front passenger seat shall keep away from airbag as far as possible and adjust the backrest for a sit-upright posture.
- Infants with improper sitting posture and improper protection may be hurt seriously or even dead due to air bag unfolding. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system.. FAW strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat.



- Please do not lean against the edge of the instrument panel, A-pillar, roof side inner rail, doors and edge of the seat; otherwise, the unfolding of the front passenger airbags may cause strong impact on the head and result in serious personal injury or death. (especially noticeable for children.)



- Do not let children stand in the front of the front passenger airbag or sit on the legs of front passenger.
- Do not allow the front passenger to place items on the legs.

## ⚠ CAUTIONS

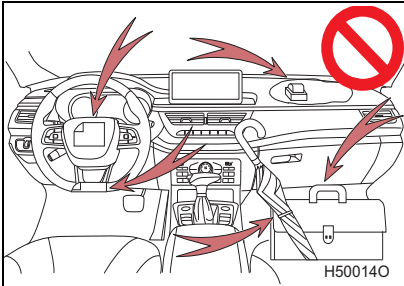


- Do not lean against the door, roof side inner rail or pillar A, B and C.

### ■ Precautions for airbags



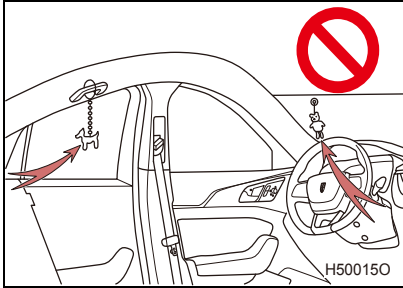
- Do not kneel on passenger seat with your face towards the door or do not extend your head or hands from the window.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas around the instrument panel or the driver airbag cover and so on. These items may fly out when the driver, front passenger airbags are deployed.



## CAUTIONS



- Do not attach anything to the areas around the door, windshield glass, side door glass, pillar A, pillar B, pillar C, roof side inner rail or roof grip.
- Do not put hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. If the curtain airbags deploy, these items may fly out and cause death or serious injury.

### ■ Precautions for airbags

- Do not use seat accessories which may block the unfolding parts of the seat airbags as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the airbag components; otherwise, it may lead to airbag malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the airbags are unfolded (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If it becomes difficult to breathe after the airbags have unfolded, please open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash any residue off your body as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the airbags are stored (the driver airbag cover and instrument panel) are damaged or cracked, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for replacement.
- Do not place anything (such as a cushion) on the front passenger's seat. Doing so will disperse the passenger's weight, which prevents the sensor from detecting the passenger's weight properly. As a result, the front passenger airbag may not deploy in the event of a collision.

### ■ After the airbag inflates during a collision

The airbag system can only be used for once, and after the airbag inflates during a collision, it is necessary to visit the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to replace the airbag, airbag control unit, related components and prohibited to continue to use the original part.



## CAUTIONS

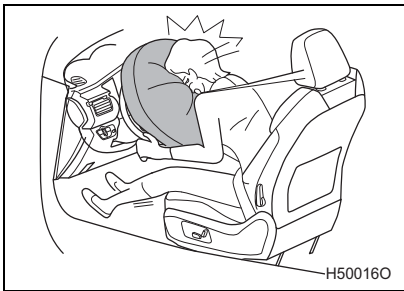
### ■ Modification and disposal of airbag system components

Do not scrap your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting a FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

Otherwise, the airbags may have a fault or deploy accidentally (inflate), which may result in serious hurt or even death.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the airbags.
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, instrument desk, seats or seat ornaments, pillar A, B and C or roof side inner rails.
- Repairs or modifications of the front wing, front bumper, or on sides of the occupant compartment.
- Installation of snow plows, winches, etc. to the front grille.
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system.
- Installation of mobile two-way radios.

### ■ If the airbags deploy (inflate)



- The airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is too close to the airbag.
- Airbag deployment is accompanied by a ignition noise and smoke, but it will not cause a fire. The people who suffer from respiratory diseases such as asthma may breathe with difficulty by inhaling the smog. In this case they shall exit the vehicle immediately. Open windows or doors to breathe fresh air in if they cannot get out.
- When the airbag is deployed at an extremely high speed, it may cause slight abrasions, scalds, congestion, etc.
- Wash with clean water as soon as possible if the residue (gas etc.) splashed into eyes or attached to the skin while the airbag is deployed. People with sensitive skin may have an allergic reaction.
- The airbag module components (steering wheel, airbag cover and gas generator) as well as the front seats, and the pillar A and roof side inner rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.

- The windshield may crack.

#### ■ **Airbag triggering factors**

- The triggering range of the airbag in various accident situations cannot be generalized, because the specific conditions vary a lot. For example, the properties of the objects colliding with the vehicle (hardness), the impact angle and the vehicle speed are important factors in airbag triggering.
- The decisive factor in the airbag triggering is the deceleration curve and pressure curve generated during a collision. The sensors fitted on the vehicle will detect the degree of the collision accident with the electronic control unit and thus trigger the airbags selectively and timely. If the vehicle deceleration value or pressure value generated and measured on collision is lower than the preset reference value within the control unit, the airbag will not be deployed even though the vehicle may have deformed to some degree in the accident.

#### ■ **Operating conditions (Driver airbag/front passenger airbag)**

- With the impact exceeding the set critical value in the event of severe head-on collision accidents, the driver/front passenger airbags will be deployed.

However, the airbags may not be activated if the vehicle strikes amovable or deformable object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, or if the vehicle is involved in an underride collision (e.g. a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides” or goes under the bottom of a truck, etc.).

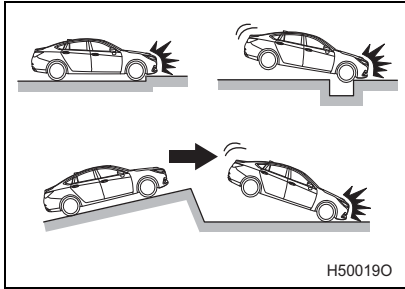
- It is possible that in some collisions where the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the set threshold, the front airbags and the seat belt pretensioners may not be activated.

#### ■ **Operating conditions (Seat airbags and curtain airbags)**

- With the impact exceeding the set critical value in the event of severe side collision, the side airbags and curtain airbags on the collision side will be deployed.
- Seat airbags and curtain airbags may be deployed together with the driver airbag/front passenger airbag in the event of some special accidents.

### ■ Other conditions under which the front airbags may inflate (except collision)

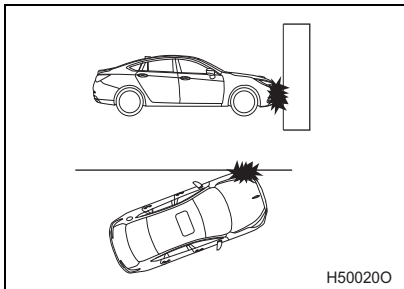
The driver airbag/front passenger airbag may also be deployed if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.



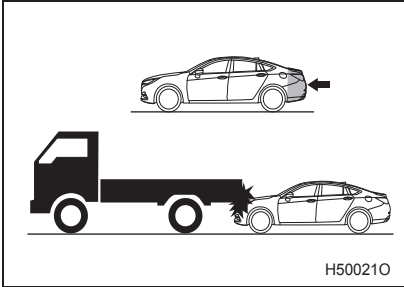
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Fall into or run across a deep pit
- Landing hard or vehicle falling

### ■ Conditions where airbags may not deploy (driver airbag/front passenger airbag)

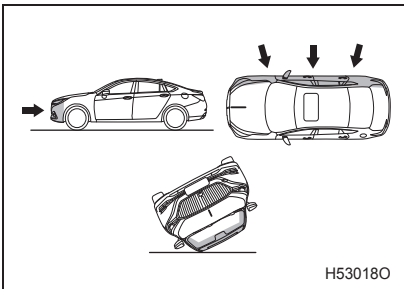
When the vehicle collides with a cylindrical object such as a pole or a tree, hits a wall or a highway barrier in a non-head-on way, sustains a rear-end collision, a pileup into the underside of the truck tail or runs into the bottom of the truck, or encounters a low speed frontal collision, a side collision, a rollover, the driver airbag / front passenger airbag may not be deployed. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the airbags may occur.



- Colliding with a cylindrical object such as a pole or a tree
- Hitting a wall or a highway barrier in a non-head-on way



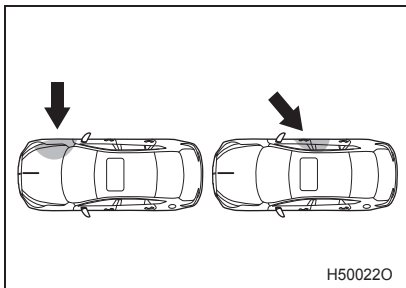
- Colliding with a cylindrical object such as a pole or a tree
- Hitting a wall or a highway barrier in a non-head-on way



- Rear-end collision
- Collision from the side
- Vehicle rollover

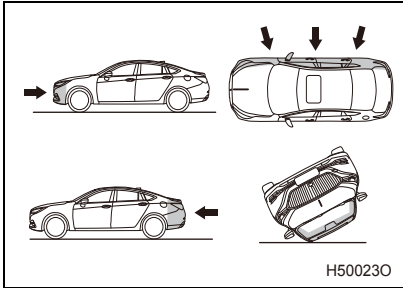
■ Conditions where airbags may not deploy (seat airbags or curtain airbags)

The seat airbag and curtain airbag may not be activated if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.



- Collision from the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at certain angles

## 1-1. Safety Instructions

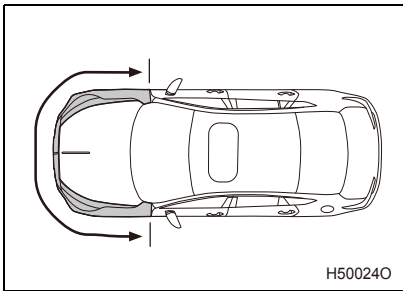


- Low-speed head-on collision
- Low-speed side collision
- Rear-end collision
- Vehicle rollover

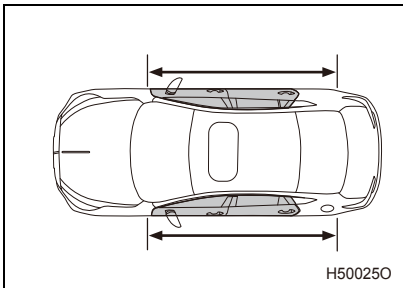
### ■ When should you contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle needs to be checked and/or repaired. Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible by then.

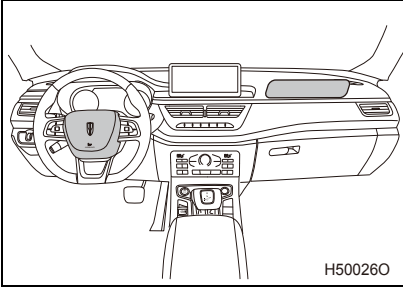
- Any of the airbags has been deployed.



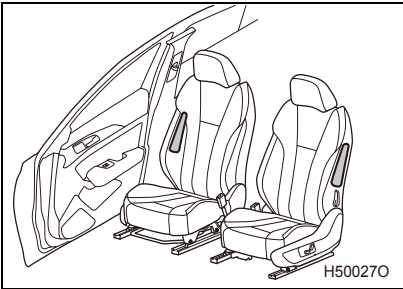
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the airbags to deploy.



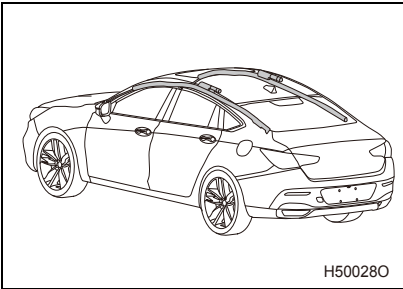
- A part of or around the door is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the seat airbags and curtain airbags to inflate.



- The dashboard near the driver airbag cover and the front passenger airbags is scratched, cracked, or damaged in other way.



- The surface of the seats with a airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged in other way.



- The curtain airbag part is scratched; pillar A, B and C guard plate is cracked or damaged in other way.

## 1-1. Safety Instructions

### Child safety information

**Observe the following precautions when there is a child in the car.**

**Children should use appropriate child restraint ..... until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.**

- It is recommended to seat the child in the rear seats to prevent them from accidentally hitting the shift lever, wiper switches, etc.
- During driving, apply the rear-door child locks and window lock switch to prevent the child from opening the doors and accidentally operating power windows.
- Do not allow the child to operate equipments (such as power windows, hood, trunk lids, seats, etc.) that may trap the body.



#### CAUTIONS

■ **Do not allow the child to carry the vehicle key or play unattended in the car**

- It is very dangerous for the child to play on the folded rear seats. Once the backrest returns to its original position, the child will be trapped in the closed trunk and cannot get out. To avoid this, please ensure the backrest is locked.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Never allow the child to carry or use the key.

The child can start the vehicle and operate the shift lever. The child may get injured when playing with windows, sunroof or other equipments. In addition, too high or low temperatures can be fatal to the child.

■ **It is necessary to lock the vehicle and keep the key in a safe place that the child cannot reach**

It is very dangerous to leave the car without locking it or placing the keys in a place accessible to the child. The child entering the open trunk can be unintentionally locked in it. Especially in summer, the child may suffer from heat exhaustion, resulting in brain damage and even death. Whether you have a child or not, you must lock the doors and trunk. In addition, to further ensure safety, please make sure the rear seat backrest is locked. When the child are in the vehicle, please observe the following precautions. Children should use appropriate child restraint system until they are grown to fit with the seat belts on the vehicle.

**FAW strongly recommends the use of child protector.**

## Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child protector on a rear seat is much safer than installing one to the front passenger seat.

- Please select the appropriate child restraint devices according to their weight and body shape.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child protector.  
General installation instructions are provided in this manual.
- FAW recommends you to use the child restraint devices complying with the GB 27887-2011 regulation.

## Types of child protectors

According to the GB 27887-2011 regulation, child restraint devices can be divided into the following 5 groups:

Group 0 : < 10 kg

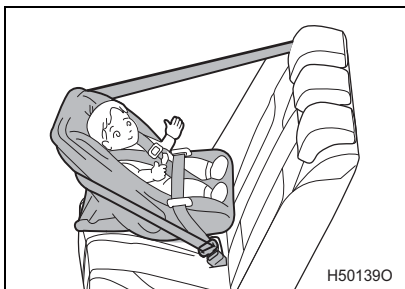
Group 0+ : < 13 kg

Group I : 9 kg - 18 kg

Group II : 15 kg - 25 kg

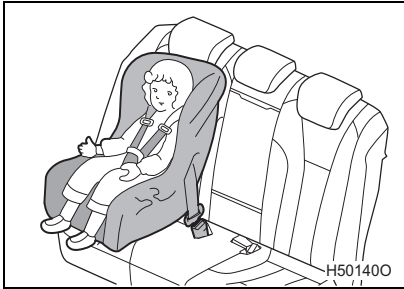
Group III : 22 kg - 36 kg

3 common child restraint devices are listed as following:



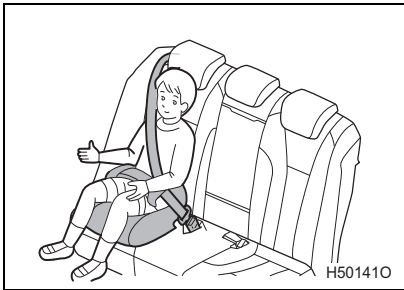
### ► Infant seat (baby seat)

Equivalent to Group 0 and Group 0+ in the regulation of GB 27887-2011.



► Child seat (convertible seat)

Equivalent to Group 0+ and Group I in the regulation of GB 27887-2011.



► Junior seat (booster seat)

Equivalent to Group II and III in the regulation of GB 27887-2011.

**Information on the adaptability of different sitting positions to child restraint systems fixed with seat belt**

Mass group	Seating position			
	Front passenger seat	Rear left seat	Rear right seat	Rear centre seat
Group 0 : < 10 kg	X	U	U	X
Group 0+: < 13 kg	X	U	U	X
Group I: 9 kg - 18 kg	X	U	U	X
Group II: 15 - 25 kg	X	U	U	X
Group III: 22 - 36 kg	X	U	U	X

The meaning of the letters in the above table:

U: Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for this mass group.

X: Not suitable for the use of child restraints of this mass group.

If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system and the head restraint is removable, remove it.

It is also possible to use a child restraint system different from the one described in the table, but it is necessary to carefully verify the suitability of the device with the relevant child restraint system manufacturer and the seat retailer.

### Information on the adaptability of different ISOFIX positions to ISOFIX child restraint systems

Mass group	Size class	Fixture module	ISOFIX position on the vehicle			
			Front passenger seat	Rear left Seat	Rear right Seat	Rear centre Seat
Portable baby crib	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X
		(I)				
Group 0: < 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X
		(I)				
Group 0+: < 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X
		(I)				
Group I: 9 - 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	IUF	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	IUF	X

The meaning of the letters in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for this mass group.

IL: Suitable for the special child restraint systems in the list. These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

X: The ISOFIX position is not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

It is also possible to use a child restraint system different from the one described in the table, but it is necessary to carefully verify the suitability of the device with the relevant child restraint system manufacturer and the retailer.

### ■ Selecting an appropriate child protector

- The child should use appropriate child restraint systems unless they are grown to fit in the seat belts.
- If the child is too large to use the child restraint system, the child should be seated in the rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Manufacturer's instructions for child restraint system

- Pay attention to the manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using the child restraint system, otherwise you may not be able to obtain the ideal effect.

### ■ Use the child restraint system

- Using a child restraint system not suitable for your car may not offer proper protection to the infant or child. This may result in serious injury or death (in the event of emergency braking or an accident).

### ■ Precautions for child restraint system

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and emergency braking, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on their weight and shape. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- We strongly recommend you to select the appropriate child restraint system according to the child's shape and install it in the rear seat. It is strictly prohibited to install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.



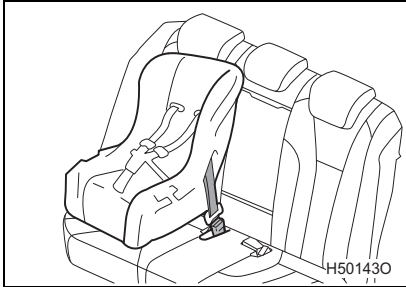
## CAUTIONS

- Vehicle with seat airbags and curtain airbags: Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side inner rails where the seat airbags or curtain airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child protector. It is dangerous if the seat airbags and curtain airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- It is necessary to follow the manufacturer's instructions and always ensure that the child restraint system is securely fastened.  
The unsecured child restraint system is very dangerous. In the event of an emergency brake or collision, the child restraint system will move, causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants.
- **When children are in the vehicle**  
Do not let children play with the seat belts. If the seat belt is wrapped around the child's neck, it may cause suffocation or other serious injuries even death.  
If this happens and the buckle can not be released, cut the seat belt with scissors.
- **When the child protector is not in use**
  - Keep the child protector properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use.  
Do not store the child protector unsecured in the passenger compartment.
  - If it is necessary to detach the child protector, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. If the head restraint is removed when installing the child protection device, be sure to install it before driving. This will prevent occupants from being injured in the event of an emergency brake or accident.

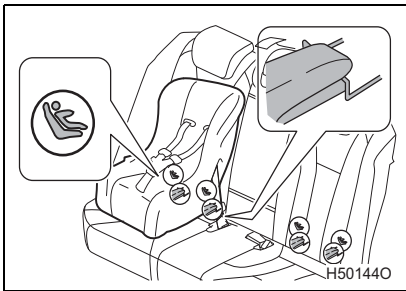
## 1-1. Safety Instructions

# Install the child restraint system

**Follow the instruction manual provided by the manufacturer. Use a seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchor to secure the child restraint system to the seat. Attach the top tether strap when installing the child restraint system.**

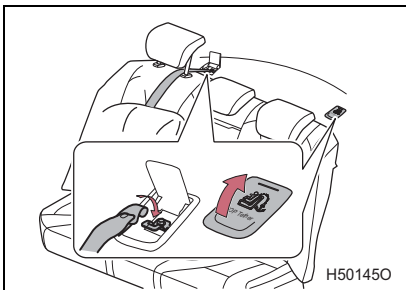


Seat belts equipped with a locking mechanism for child restraint system.



ISOFIX rigid anchor (ISOFIX children restraint device)

The rear side seats are equipped with lower anchors.  
(The label showing the anchor position is attached on the seat)

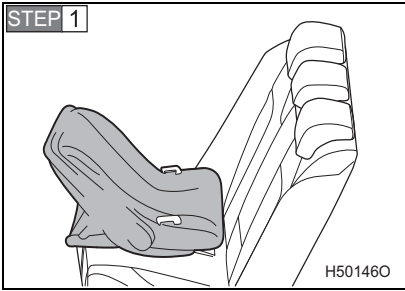


anchor support (for the top tether strap).

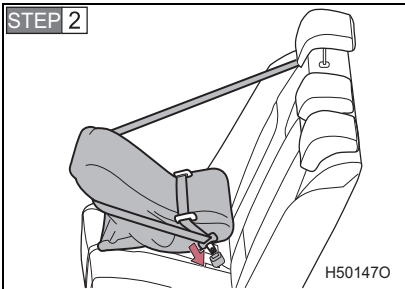
The rear side seats are equipped with anchor supports.

**Install the child restraint system with the seat belt**

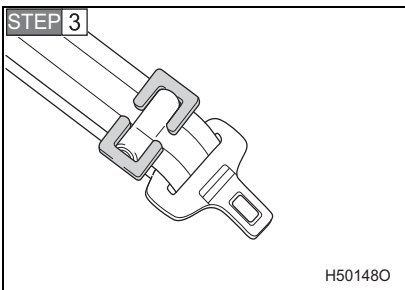
- Rear-facing - infant (baby) seat/child (convertible) seat



Place the child restraint device on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.



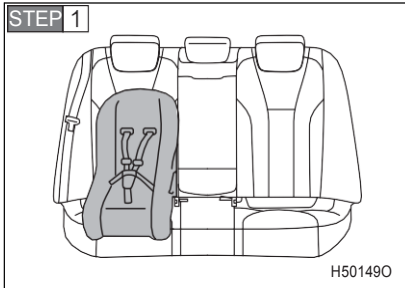
Run the seat belt through the installing hole in the specified position of the child seat and insert the latch plate into the buckle ensuring the belt not twisted.



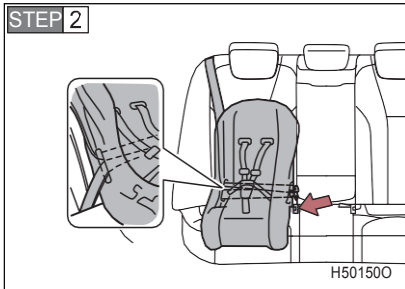
If the child restraint device has a locking clip, the waist and shoulder belts webbing should be passed through the recess of the locking clip and the locking clips should be fitted near the tabs of the waist and shoulder belts before buckling the safety belts again. If the seat belt is loose, release the lock and reinstall the locking clip.

After installing the child restraint device, shake it backward and forward to ensure it is securely installed.

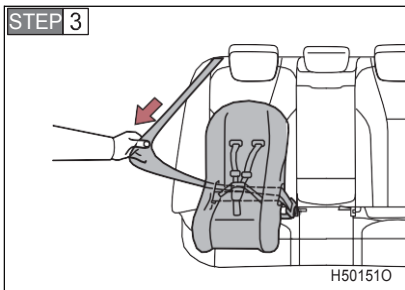
### ■ Forward-facing - Child seat (convertible seat)



Install the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

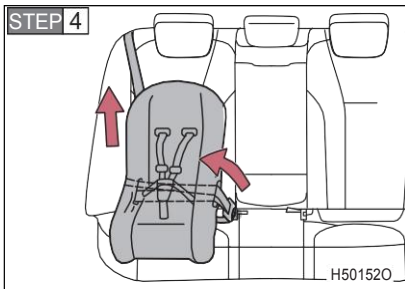


Run the seat belt through the child seat and insert the latch plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



Fully extend the shoulder belt and allow it to retract a little to put it in ALR lock mode.

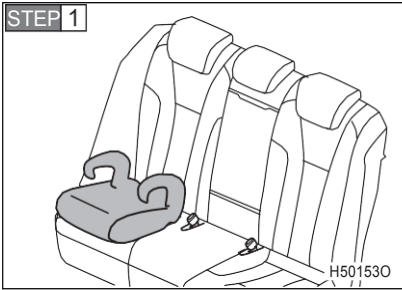
In lock mode, the belt only can retract.



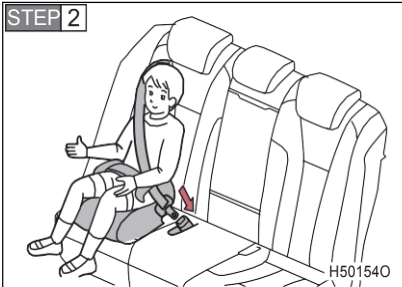
While securing the child seat into the rear seat, allow the shoulder belt to retract sufficiently until the child seat is securely in place.

After the shoulder belt has retracted to a point where there is no slack in the belt, pull the belt to check that it cannot be extended.

■ Junior seat (booster seat)



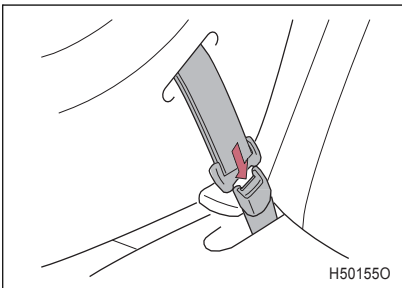
Place the junior seat (booster seat) on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.



Seat the child in the junior seat (booster seat). Fix the junior seat (booster seat) with the seat belt and insert the latch plate into the buckle according to the manufacturer's instruction manual. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.

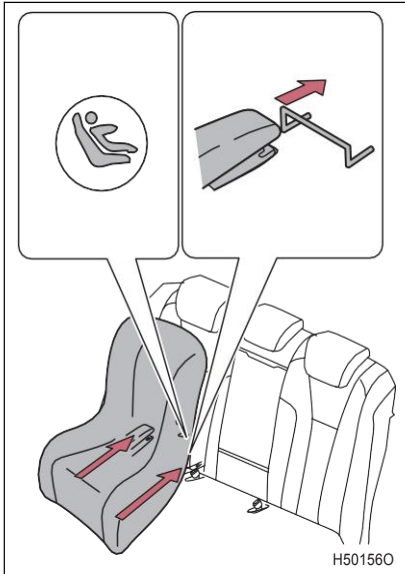
Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder, and that the lap belt is as low as possible.

**Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt**



Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

## Installing with the ISOFIX rigid anchor



**STEP 1** Enlarge the clearance slightly between seat cushion and backrest.

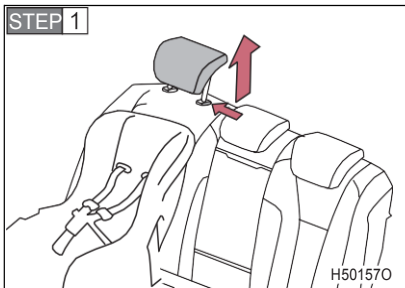
**STEP 2** Insert the striker into the special fixing rod.

If the head restraint hampers the correct installation of the child restraint system, remove it before install the child restraint system.

( → P.110)

If the child restraint system has a top tether strap, the top tether strap should be fixed onto the anchor support.

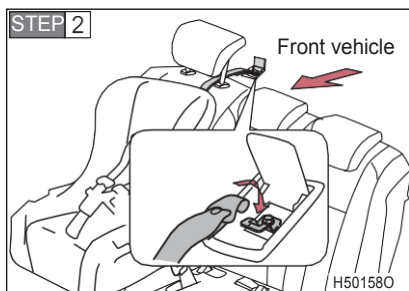
## Child restraint system with a top tether strap



Secure the child restraint system with the seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchor.

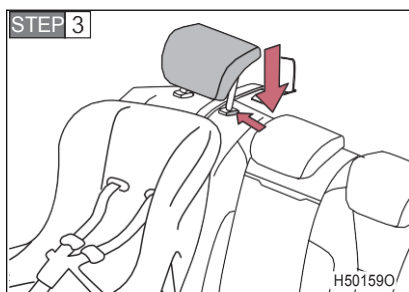
If the head restraint hampers the correct installation of the child restraint system, remove it before install the child restraint system.

( → P.110)



Open the anchor support cover, fasten the hook firmly to the anchor support, and fasten the top tether strap.

Make sure the top tether strap is securely latched.



Reinstall the head restraint.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

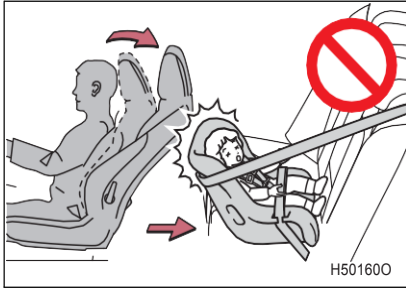
■ **When installing a junior (booster) seat**

To prevent the belt from going into ALR lock mode, do not fully extend the shoulder belt. The seat belt can only be retracted in ALR mode, which may result in injury or discomfort to the child.

■ **When installing the child restraint system**

Please observe installation manual attached to the children restraint system to fix children restraint system in right position. If children restraint system is not fixed in right position, children or other passengers may be hurt seriously or even dead at the time of emergency brake or an accident.

## ⚠ CAUTIONS



- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child protector to the right-hand rear seat.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not hamper the child restraint system.

### ■ When installing the child restraint system

Please observe installation manual attached to the children restraint system to fix children restraint system in right position. If children restraint system is not fixed in right position, children or other passengers may be hurt seriously or even dead at the time of emergency brake or an accident.

- If there are regulations regarding child restraint system in your country or region, please consult the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for child restraint system installation issues.
- When a junior (booster) seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Otherwise it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of an emergency braking, emergency steering or an accident.
- Ensure that the belt and latch plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Push and pull the child restraint system from side to side and forward to be sure it is secure.
- After installing children restrain system, do not adjust the seat. If the seat is adjusted, the safety of the child restraint system should be reconfirmed.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Do not sit on the rear middle seat when placing the child restraint system on the rear seat. The seat belt function can be adversely affected. Over positioned or unsecured protector may result in serious injury or death in the event of emergency braking, emergency steering, or an accident.

 CAUTIONS



- Labels are affixed inside and outside the front passenger side sun visor to remind you not to install a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. The details of the label are as shown in the illustration.

■ **Correctly fasten a child restraint system to the anchor device**

When using the lower anchor devices, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause serious injury or even death to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

## 1-1. Safety Instructions

### Cautions on exhaust gas

**Exhaust gas contains substances harmful to human.**

#### CAUTIONS

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO) that is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the exhaust gas can flow into the vehicle and cause dizziness resulting in accidents or serious harm even death to human.

##### ■ Important for driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If the exhaust gas can still be smelled in the vehicle even with a closed trunk lid, open the windows and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible for inspection.

##### ■ When parking

- If the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated or a closed place (e.g garage), be sure to turn off the engine.
- Do not allow a long running of the engine.  
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust gas does not enter the vehicle.
- Do not leave the engine running in a snow pack where it is snowing. If snow accumulates around the vehicle while the engine is running, the accumulated exhaust gas may enter the vehicle.

##### ■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system should be checked regularly. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, joint damage or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle checked and repaired by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

## 1-2.Immobilizer System

### Engine immobilizer system

In order to prevent the vehicle from being stolen, the smart key has a built-in password chip. If the smart key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's onboard computer, the smart key cannot start the engine. Different vehicles register different signals in smart keys.

Never leave the smart key in the vehicle when leaving the vehicle.

This system helps to prevent vehicle thefts, but it does not prevent all thefts or guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle.

**Carrying the registered smart key, press the engine “START STOP” switch to release the engine immobilizer system.**

#### ■ Conditions that may cause system malfunctions

- Strongly impacted smart key
- Place the smart key on the hot area, such as the instrument panel
- Use magnetic key chain
- Wash the smart key using ultrasonic cleaner
- If the key is close to or against a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

- **If the engine cannot be started with the correct method, the engine immobilizer system may have broken down. Please contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for check.**



#### NOTICES

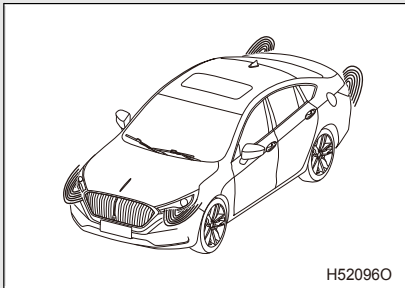
#### ■ Ensure normal operation of the system

Do not retrofit or remove the engine immobilizer system. If it is refitted or removed without permission, normal operating of the system can not be ensured.

## 1-2. Immobilizer System

# Vehicle body immobilizer system

The vehicle body immobilizer system mainly monitors the states of the four doors, engine hood and trunk lid. The system sounds the alarm and flashes the lights when a break in is detected.



Vehicle body immobilizer operation

Close doors, trunk lid and engine hood after exiting the vehicle.

### Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Perform any of the following operations:

- Unlock the doors or trunk by passive entry function or wireless control function.
- Start the engine (the alarm will be released or stopped in a few seconds).

#### ■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the vehicle theft alarm, make sure nobody, valuables and any other private property is in the vehicle and windows and sunroof are closed before the vehicle is locked.

#### ■ When the battery is disconnected

Be sure to cancel the alarm system.

The alarm may be triggered if the battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked.

#### NOTICES

#### ■ Ensure normal operation of the system

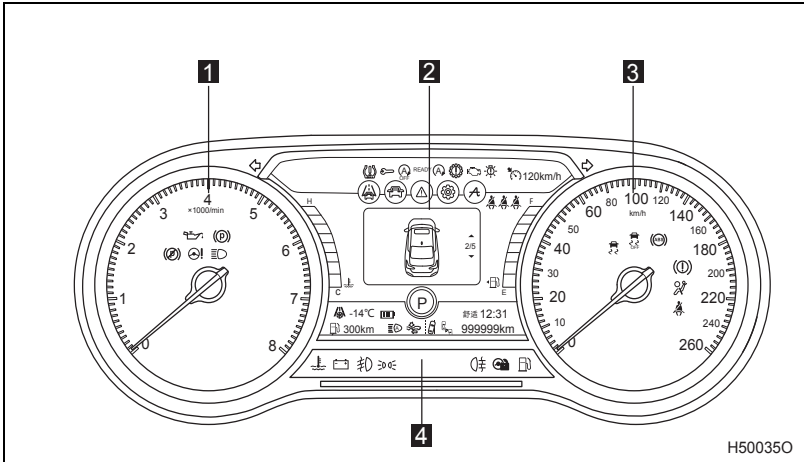
Do not retrofit or remove the system. If it is refitted or removed without permission, normal operating of the system can not be ensured.

---

## 2. Instrument Cluster

Combination instrument .....	62
Warning light.....	64
Indicator lamp.....	65
Combination instrument multifunction display .....	66

## 2. Instrument Cluster Combination instrument



Due to the different vehicle configurations, the contents displayed also vary.

### 1 Engine tachometer

Displays the revolutions per minute of the engine.

### 2 Multifunction display

Shows the navigation information, radio, call reminder, average fuel consumption, average speed, travel time, range, instantaneous fuel consumption, digital speedometer, speed alarm, tyre pressure, fuel range, fuel volume, coolant temperature, total mileage, clock, ambient temperature, gear, and various alarms and prompting messages, and also supports multi-function setup menus.

### 3 Speedometer

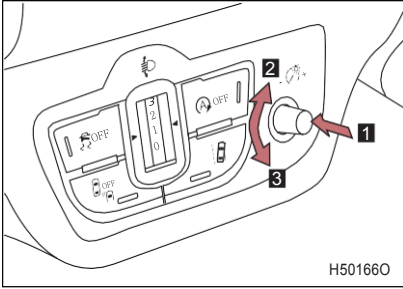
Displays the vehicle speed.

### 4 Tip/alarm icons display area

Shows coolant high temperature warning lamp, low fuel volume warning lamp, battery charging state indicator lamp, front fog light ON indicator lamp, rear fog light ON indicating lamp, position light ON indicator lamp and electronic steering column locking status indicator lamp, etc..

## Adjusting the backlight brightness in the vehicle

The brightness of the backlights can be adjusted.



**1** Press the knob (if not popped) to make the knob pop up.

**2** Turn brighter

Rotate the knob clockwise to increase the backlight brightness.

**3** Turn darker

Rotate the knob counter-clockwise to reduce the backlight brightness.

### ■ Adjust the backlight operating condition

The engine switch is in IG-ON mode. Turn on the position light.

### ⚠ CAUTIONS


























#### ■ Prevent damage to the engine and its components

- The engine revolution is nearly the maximum if the tachometer is in the red zone.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone. In this case, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely.

## 2. Instrument Cluster

### Warning light

The warning lights indicate the current status of the various vehicle systems or the current possible faults in the corresponding system. ( → P.395)

	Airbag system failure warning light		Brake system malfunction warning light
	Seat belt reminder light		ABS system malfunction warning light
	Abnormal oil pressure warning light		ESC system malfunction warning light
	Low fuel volume warning lamp		EPB system malfunction warning light
	Abnormal tyre pressure/system malfunction warning light		External light failure warning light
	Coolant high temperature warning lamp		Gearbox system malfunction warning light
	Engine control system malfunction warning light		Engine exhaust gas monitoring system fault warning light
	ACC system malfunction warning light		FCW/AEB system malfunction warning light (red)
	LDW system malfunction warning light (red)		LCDA system malfunction warning light
	IHC system malfunction warning light (yellow)		EPS system malfunction warning light
	Engine immobilizer system malfunction warning light		Hybrid system malfunction warning light
	Wireless charging malfunction warning light		Driving mode selection system malfunction warning light
	Idle start-stop system malfunction warning light (yellow)		

#### Notes:

There may be a malfunction in a system if the corresponding light does not turn on, or if the lights do not turn off. Contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for vehicle check.

## 2. Instrument Cluster

### Indicator lamp

Indicators inform the status of the vehicle's various systems.



Left turn indicator lamp



Right turn indicator lamp



High beam light ON indicator lamp



Rear fog light ON indicator lamp



Front fog light ON indicator lamp



ESC system working indicator lamp



12V battery charging state indicator lamp



Position light ON indicator lamp



ESC system OFF indicator lamp



SVS Indicator Lamp



Electronic steering column lock status indicator lamp



Idle start-stop system status indicator lamp (green)



Idle start-stop system OFF indicator lamp



Cruise control system status indicator lamp



Active speed limiting system status indicator lamp



ACC system status indicator lamp



FCW/AEB system status indicator lamp (yellow)



FCW/AEB system OFF indicator lamp



LDW system status indicator lamp (white/green)



LCDA system OFF indicator lamp



IHC system status indicator lamp (green)



Low ambient temperature warning light (icy road alert)



EPB/AUTO HOLD indicator lamp



"READY" indicator lamp



Wireless charging indicator lamp



ECO mode indicator lamp



Sport mode indicator lamp

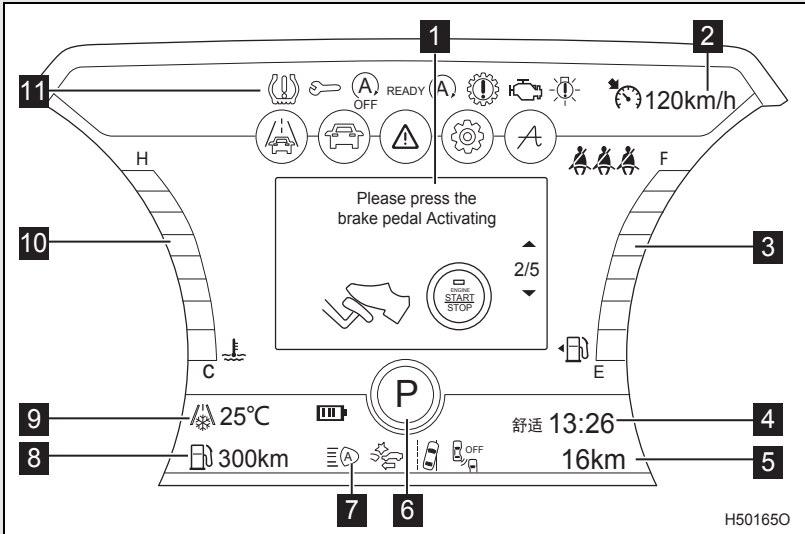


Comfort mode indicator lamp

## 2. Instrument Cluster

# Combination instrument multifunction display

The combination instrument multifunction display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related information including mileage, temperature outside the vehicle, vehicle status and gear position.



### 1 Multi-function display area

To operate/view the MCS multi-function control system, trip computer, status query, function setting, driver assistance system settings, navigation information, radio information.

### 2 Cruise display area

Displays the vehicle cruise information.

### 3 Fuel gauge display area

Displays the remaining fuel volume.

### 4 Clock display area

Displays the time information.

### 5 Total range display area

Displays the total mileage information.

**6** Gear display area

Displays the vehicle current gear position.

**7** Indicator lamp, warning light display area

Displays the IHC system status indicator lamp, IHC system failure warning light, FCW/AEB system status indicator lamp, FCW/AEB system failure warning light, FCW/AEB system OFF indicator lamp, LDW system status indicator lamp, LDW system failure warning light, LCDA system failure warning light, LCDA system OFF indicator lamp and other information.

**8** Fuel range display area

Displays the instrument estimated mileage.

**9** Ambient temperature display area

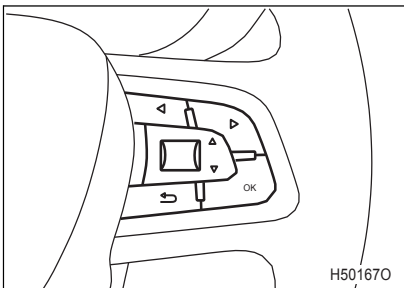
Displays the temperature information outside the vehicle.

**10** Engine coolant temperature display area

Displays the engine coolant temperature information.

**11** Indicator lamp, warning light display area

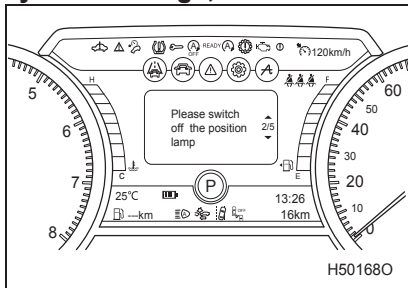
Displays the abnormal tyre pressure/system failure warning light, SVS indicator lamp, idle start-stop system OFF indicator lamp, idle start-stop system status indicator lamp, idle start-stop system malfunction warning light, gearbox system malfunction warning light, engine system fault warning light and External light failure warning light, etc..

**Display switch**

The display contents and functions can be operated by the left and right, up and down, OK and the return keys on the steering wheel.

Multi-function display area

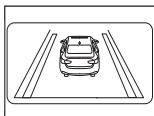
By using the left and right keys on the steering wheel, you can switch between the MCS multifunction control system, trip computer, status query, function settings, driver assistance system settings, radio information, navigation information.



- MCS multi-function control system
- Trip computer
- Status query  
Switch the current system failures via the up and down keys on the steering wheel.
- Function setting
- Drive assistance system setting
- Radio information
- Navigation information

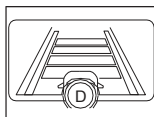
■ MCS multifunction control system\*

**LDW lane departure warning system**



LDW lane departure warning system information  
Specific operations. ( →P.200)

**ACC adaptive cruise control system**



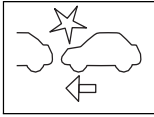
ACC adaptive cruise control system information  
Specific operations. ( →P.169)

**IHC intelligent high beam system**



IHC intelligent high beam system information  
Specific operations. ( →P.156)

**FCW forward collision warning system/AEB autonomous emergency**

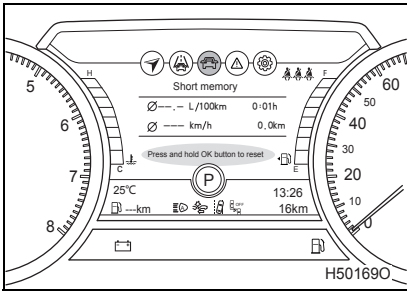


Information on FCW forward collision warning system/  
AEB autonomous emergency braking system  
Specific operations. (→ P203, 206)

**■ Trip computer**

By using the up and down keys on the steering wheel, you can switch between the memory information, instantaneous fuel consumption, current speed, speed alarm and tyre pressure.

● Short-term memory, long-term memory, after-refuelling



Press the OK button on the steering wheel to switch between the three display interfaces for short-term memory, long-term memory, and after-refuelling.

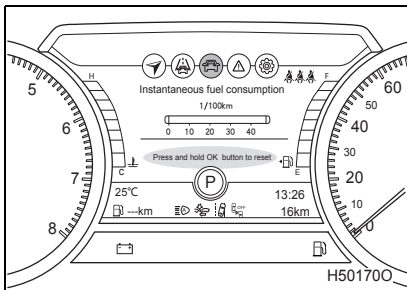
Press and hold the the OK button on the steering wheel in the short-term memory and long-term memory interfaces to reset the information.

Note: short-term memory: relevant data for a single driving cycle.

Long-term memory: Total accumulated data since the latest resetting.

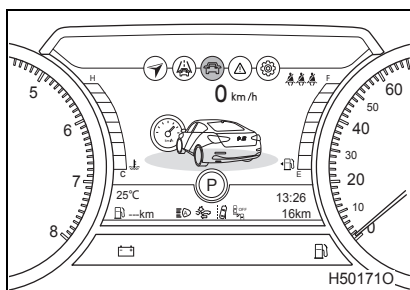
After-refuelling: the relevant data between the last two refuellings.

● Instantaneous fuel consumption



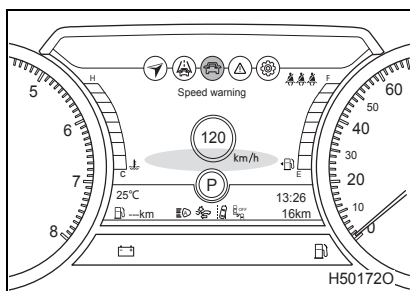
Displays the instantaneous fuel consumption of the current operating conditions.

### ● Current speed



Displays the current vehicle speed.

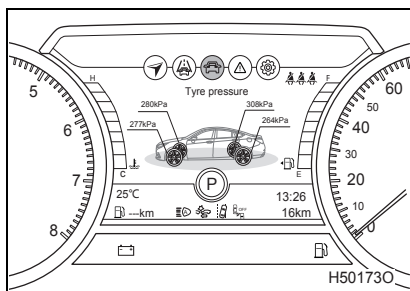
### ● Speed warning



Press and hold the OK button of the steering wheel to clear the speed alarm setting. After that, short press the OK button to enter into the speed alarm setting interface, then set the vehicle speed alarm value through the steering wheel up and down buttons. Press the steering wheel OK button after the value is set.

Note: When the speed alarm value is empty, short press the OK button to set value.

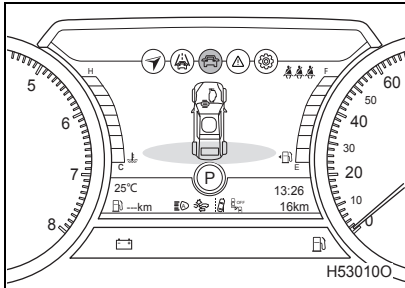
### ● Tire pressure



When one or more tires are under low pressure, the TPMS system fault warning light will be on. At the same time, the tire icon in the corresponding position of the combination instrument multi-function display will flash, and the value displayed is the current tire pressure value.

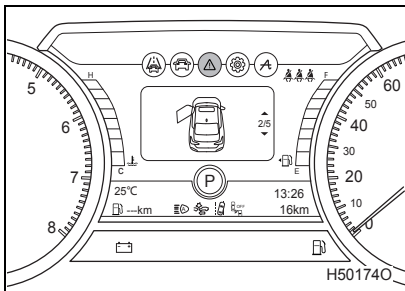
When one or more of the tyre position sensors fails, the multifunction display area of the combination instrument displays “---”, and the values of the other normal tyre positions are displayed normally.

● Energy flow \*



Display the current working status of the vehicle's 48V system.

■ Status query

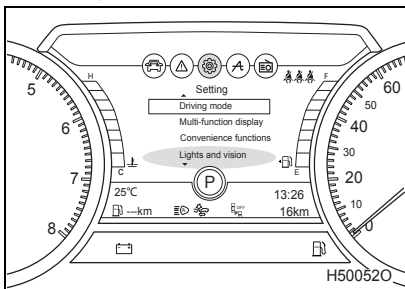


Use the up and down buttons on the steering wheel to view the current system alarm information.

■ Function setting

Use the up and down selection buttons on the steering wheel to switch between the Language/ , multi-function display, convenient functions, lights and vision, driving mode, maintenance and default settings.

● Driving mode



Short press the OK button on the steering wheel to enter the driving mode setting interface.

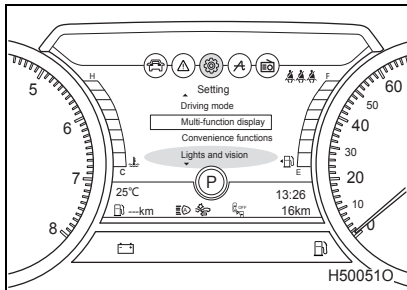
It can be set to comfort, ECO and sport mode.

In comfort mode, both the power and economy are considered, and the pedal responds normally.

In the ECO mode, the economy prevails, the air conditioner is in the energy-saving mode, and the pedal is a little slower to respond.

In the sport mode, the power prevails, and the pedal response is the fastest.

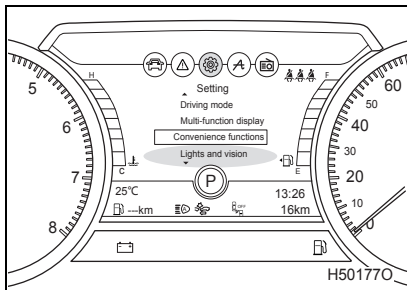
### ● Multi-function display



Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enter the multi-function display setting interface.

You can set whether the instantaneous fuel consumption, digital speedometer, vehicle speed alarm, tyre pressure and maintenance reminder displayed in the

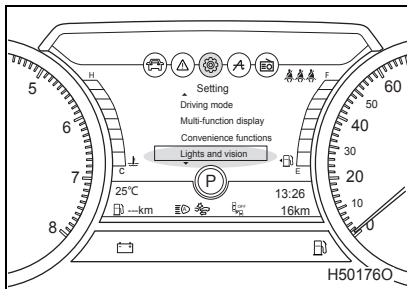
### ● Convenience functions



Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enter the convenient function setting interface to set the central lock, auto closing of sunroof, mirror auto folding and comfortable entry.

Central door: the automatic locking and unlocking function of the open/closed door; set all door/single door unlock modes.

### ● Lights and vision

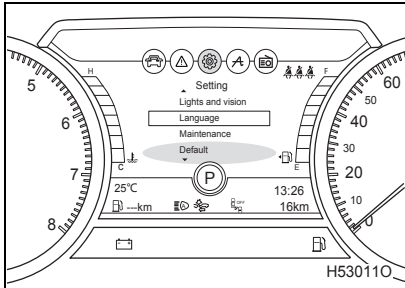


Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enter the lights and vision setting interface and set the “Follow Me Home” and “Entry Lighting” modes.

Follow Me Home: off, 10 seconds, 20 seconds, 30 seconds.

Entry Lighting: off, 10 seconds, 20 seconds, 30 seconds.

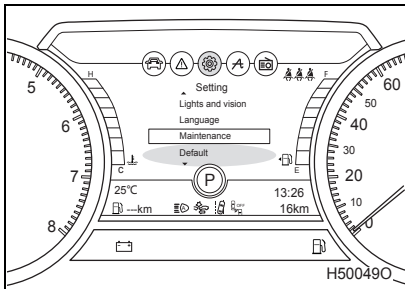
### ●Language




Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enter the language setting interface.

The language can be set to English or Chinese (" ").

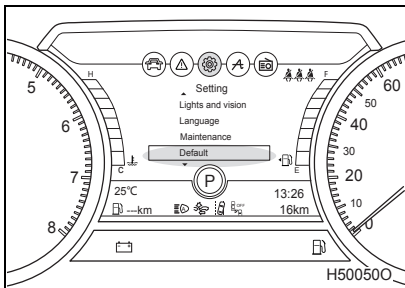
### ●Maintenance



Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enter the maintenance setting interface. After selecting and confirming the "information", enter the "information" interface to query the maintenance information.

When the maintenance mileage is reached, the SVS indicator lamp  on the instrument lights up.

### ●Default setting



Press the OK button on the steering wheel to enter the default setting interface.

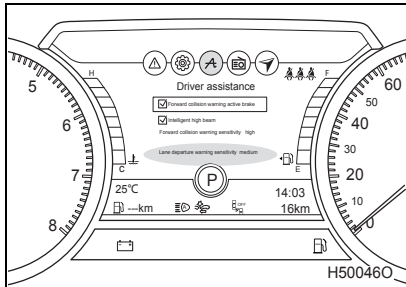
The selection can be made via the up and down buttons on the steering wheel. After that, press the OK button on the steering wheel to finish the setting.

**Note:** After the default setting, Language, multi-function display, easy window control, mirror auto-folding, comfortable entry, central door lock, Follow Me Home, and Entry Lighting will be reset to the factory setting.

### ■ Driver assistance system setting\*

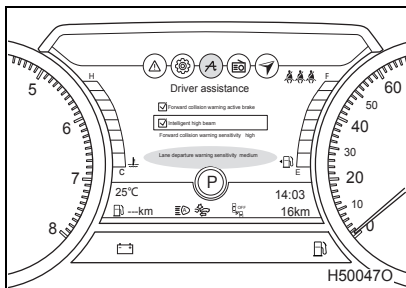
Use the up and down selection buttons on the steering wheel to switch between the forward collision warning system / active brake, intelligent high beam, forward collision warning sensitivity and lane departure warning sensitivity.

#### ● Forward collision warning/active brake



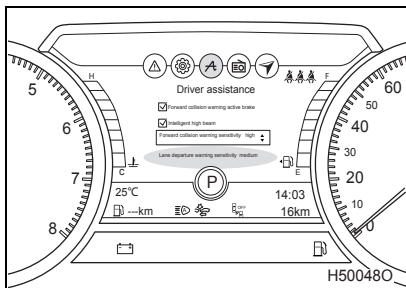
Press the OK button on the steering wheel to set the activation and deactivation of the “forward collision warning / active brake”.

#### ● Intelligent high beam



Press the OK button on the steering wheel to set the activation and deactivation of the “intelligent high beam”.

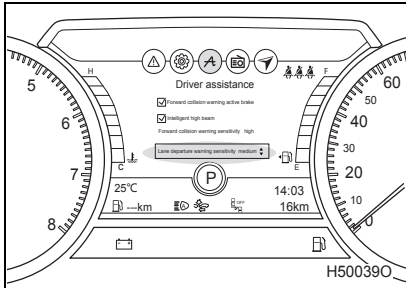
#### ● Forward collision warning sensitivity



Press the OK button on the steering wheel to set the forward collision warning sensitivity.

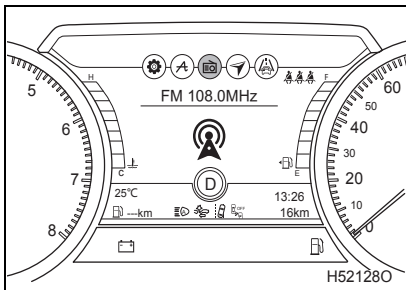
After selecting the sensitivity level as low, medium and high via the up and down buttons on the steering wheel, press the OK button to finish the setting.

### ● Lane departure warning sensitivity



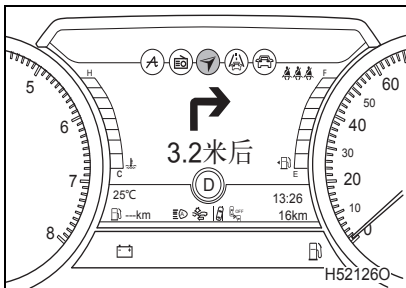
Press the OK button on the steering wheel to set the lane departure warning sensitivity. After selecting the sensitivity level as low, medium and high via the up and down buttons on the steering wheel, press the OK button to finish the setting.

### ■ Radio information



If the radio is playing now, the multi-function display area displays the current playing information.

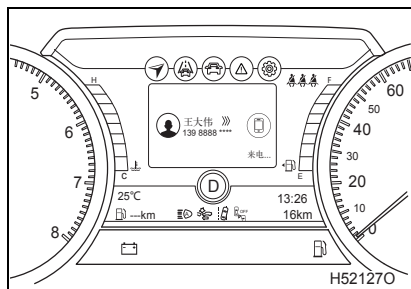
### ■ Navigation information



When the on-board navigation application is turned on, the multi-function display area displays the current navigation information.

The driving direction and the remaining distance to the next junction are displayed.

### ■ Call reminder



With the Bluetooth phone connected, if there is an incoming call, the incoming call information will be displayed.

In the navigation information interface and MCS multi-function control system interface, only call reminders are displayed.

**3-1.Information on the key**

Key .....78

**3-2.Opening, closing and locking the door and trunk lid**

Doors .....82

Trunk lid..... 86

Passive entry & start system\* ..... 90

**3-3.Adjusting the seats**

Front seats ..... 95

Rear seats..... 99

Head restraints ..... 102

Seat memory\* ..... 104

**3-4.Adjusting the steering wheel and rear-view mirrors**

Steering wheel..... 106

Interior anti-glare rear view mirror ..... 108

Exterior mirrors..... 110

**3-5.Opening and closing the windows**

Power windows ..... 113

Panorama sunroof\* . 116

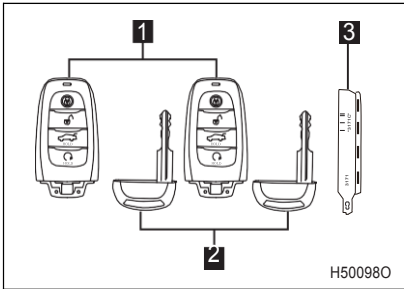
Common sunroof\* ... 119

## 3-1. Information on the key

### Key

#### Key

This car comes with the following smart keys.



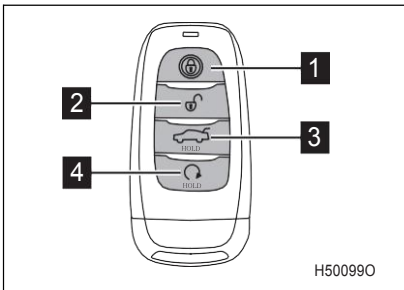
#### 1 Smart key

- Operating passive entry & start system. (→ P.96)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

#### 2 Mechanical key

#### 3 Key number plate

#### Wireless remote control



1 Lock the doors by pressing the button, while lock all the windows and sunroof by pressing and holding the button\*1

2 Unlock the doors by pressing the button, while open all the windows by pressing and holding the button\*1

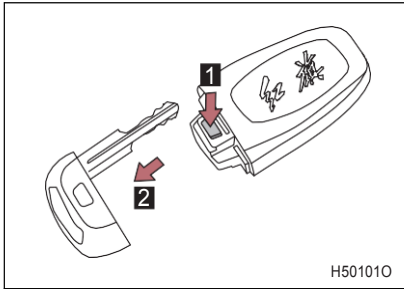
3 Press and hold the button to unlock and open the trunk lid

4 Remote controlled start

When the immobilizer is activated with the engine off, press the unlocking button on the remote controller within the effective range, then press and hold the remote controlled starting button within 1.5s to start the engine remotely; after that, press the remote controlled starting button twice within 1.5s to stop the engine.

\*1: if the remote controller button is released, the windows and sunroof will stop moving.

## Using the mechanical key



- 1 Press the unlock button
  - 2 Take out the mechanical key
- Put the mechanical key in the smart key after using it. Carry the mechanical key together with the smart key. If the smart key battery runs out and does not work properly, use the mechanical key. ( → P.415)

### ■ When needing parking service

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the smart key only.

### ■ Key number plate

Keep the key number plate in a safe place, not in the vehicle.

### ■ When taking an aircraft

When bringing a smart key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the smart key while inside the aircraft cabin. If the key is put in a bag, make sure that any button will not be pressed unintentionally. Pressing a button may cause the smart key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

### ■ Remote controlled starting

- Before the remote controlled starting, please ensure that all the doors, windows, sunroof, trunk lid and engine hood are closed.
- After the remote controlled starting and deactivation of the immobilizer system, the engine will stop.
- After the remote controlled starting, the engine will turn off automatically after running for about 15minutes.
- It is impossible to operate the wiper and lights when the remote controlled starting is activated.

### ■ Smart key battery level

- The standard lifecycle of the battery is 1-2 years.
- The battery may run out even if the smart key is not used. The following symptoms indicate a low level of or zero energy of the smart key battery. Replace the battery when necessary. ( → P.381)
  - The passive entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.

### 3-1. Information on the key

- The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED Indicator lamp is off on the key or flashes abnormally.
  - The multi-function display of the combination instrument shows a message of low battery power.
  - To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the key within 1 m of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
    - TVs
    - Personal computers
    - Mobile phones, cordless telephone and battery chargers
    - The charging cell phone or cordless phones
    - Table lamps
    - Induction cooker
- **Replace the battery**  
( → P.381)


**NOTICES**
**■ To prevent damage to the key**

- Do not make keys subject to strong shocks or expose the keys to high temperature (such as under direct sunlight) and wet environment.
- Do not wet the key or wash it in an ultrasonic cleaner or other units.
- Do not attach metal or magnetic items to the key, or place the key near such items.
- Do not disassemble the smart key.
- Do not stick labels or other items on the surface of the key.
- Do not place the key near the objects that generate magnetic fields, such as a TV, audio system, induction cooker or electronic medical devices (such as a low-frequency medical devices).

**■ When carrying the smart key**

When carrying the smart key, a distance of 10 cm or more should be kept from operating electrical appliances. The radio wave emitted by the electrical appliance less than 10cm away from the smart key can interfere with the key operation and disable the normal work.

**■ When the passive entry & start system fails or has other key related failures**

Please send the vehicle to the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer together with all the keys accompanied with the vehicle.

**■ When the key is lost**

If the key is lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Immediately bring all the other keys to the vehicle to the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

**■ When starting the remote control**

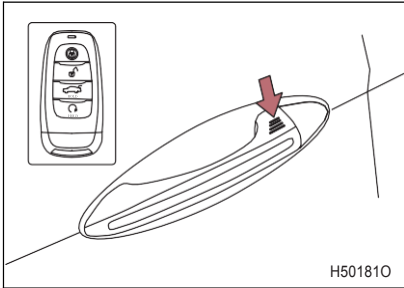
- Do not use remote controlled starting function in poorly ventilated areas. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases caused by the engine starting may accumulate and enter the vehicle.
- Do not use remote controlled starting function in places where snow is deep or where it is snowing. If the vehicle gets stuck in snow, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle.
- When activating the remote control starting, make sure that no flammable material is around the vehicle. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot, and may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the door and trunk lid

### Doors

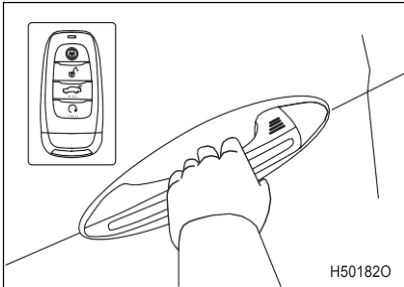
#### Unlock and lock the door from the outside of the vehicle

##### ■ Passive entry



Turn off the engineswitch, touch the door handle lock sensing area to lock the door.

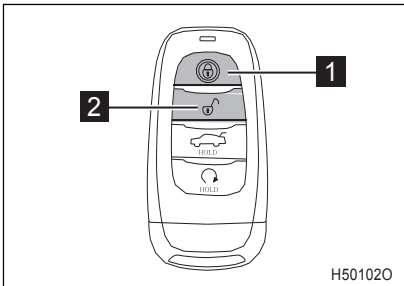
When any one of the doors is not closed, the door cannot be locked by doing so.



Hold the door handles on the driver side or front passenger side to unlock the door.

When the door is locked by touching the door handle lock sensing area, the door cannot be passively unlocked within 2s, but the remote unlocking function is not affected.

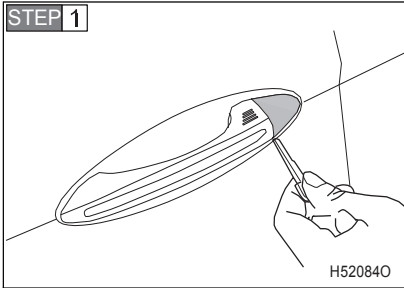
##### ■ Wireless remote control



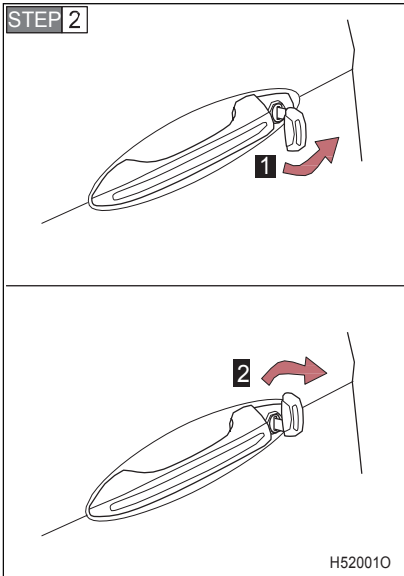
**1** Lock all the doors

**2** Unlock the driver door/all the doors

■ Mechanical key



Open the door keyhole cover using the mechanical key.



Lock and unlock the vehicle using the mechanical key.

- 1 Lock the door
- 2 Unlock the door

■ Operation signals

The hazard warning lamp flashes to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

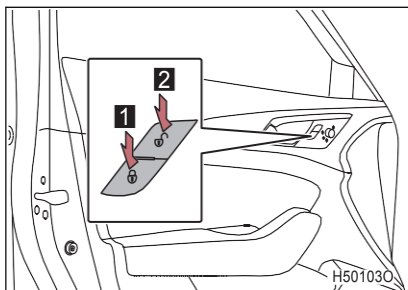
### ■ Exhausted smart key

If the smart key battery runs out, replace it with a new one. ( → P.381)

### Unlock and lock the door from interior

The door can be opened with the central door switch on the driver or front passenger door.

#### ■ Central door switch

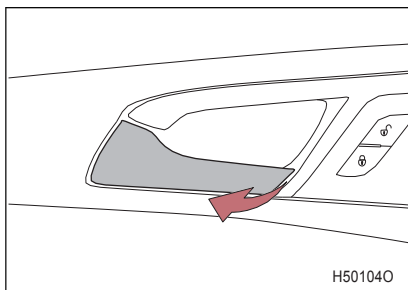


**1** Lock all the doors

**2** Unlock all the doors

Note: When the door is not closed, the central door switch can only be unlocked and cannot be locked.

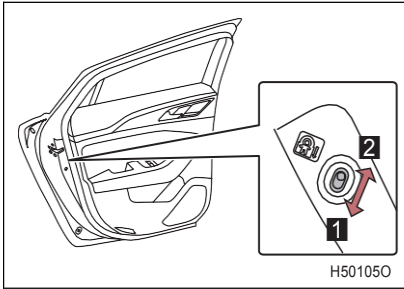
#### ■ Interior door handle



Pull the interior door handle inwardly to open the door.

After locking the door, pull the inner door handle once to unlock the door and pull it again to open the door.

## Child safety lock on the rear door



The door can not be opened from the inside of the door after the safety lock being activated.

- 1 Lock
- 2 Unlock

The activated safety lock can prevent the child from opening the door in the vehicle.

### Locking at certain speeds

- With all doors closed, one door not locked and the vehicle running, when the speed exceeds 20 km/h, the function of locking at certain speeds will be activated to lock all doors.
- After the doors are locked at certain speeds, they can be unlocked via the central door switch. When the speed exceeds 20km/h again from a stop, the doors will be relocked.
- All doors are unlocked automatically after they being locked at certain speeds and the engine turn-off.
- The function of locking at certain speeds can be activated and deactivated through the multifunction display of the combination instrument. ( → P.77)

### Remote vehicle locating function

With the car locked, press the locking button twice within 1.5s to activate the vehicle locating function, then the turning light, dipped beam will alternately flash 3 times, and the horn will sound 3 times.

### The conditions affecting the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control

( → P.98)

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.

Otherwise, the occupant in the car can be thrown out of the vehicle due to the unintentionally opened door, resulting in serious injury or death.

- Always use a seat belt.
- Always lock all the doors.
- Make sure all the doors are closed properly.
- Do not pull the inside handles of the doors while driving.  
Otherwise, the door can be opened and the passenger can be thrown out of the car, leading to serious injury or even death.
- Always set the rear door child safety lock when children are seated in the rear seats.
- When you get out of the car with nobody in it, please carry the keys, close all the windows and sunroof and lock all the doors to prevent others from entering or stealing the car.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Never allow children to have or use the key, as they may start the vehicle or operate the shift lever, causing potential safety hazard.
- Never enable children reach or play with the cigarette lighter, the windows, the sunroof, or other equipments of the vehicle which may result in injury.
- Make sure the temperature in the vehicle is favorable, because the heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.
- Always make sure the surrounding area is safe before opening the car.  
It is extremely dangerous to suddenly open the door, because the door may hit the other car or pedestrians passing by resulting in accidents.
- After closing the doors, verify that they are closed tight.

Failure to close the door tight is dangerous. If the vehicle is driven in this case, the door may open unintentionally, causing an accident.

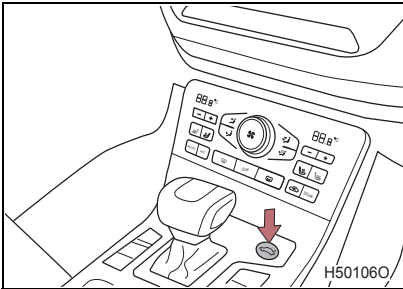
## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the door and trunk lid

### Trunk lid

The trunk lid can be opened using the trunk lid open button or wireless remote control.

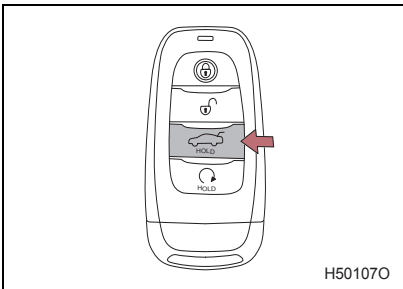
#### Opening the trunk lid

- Opening the trunk lid from the inside of car



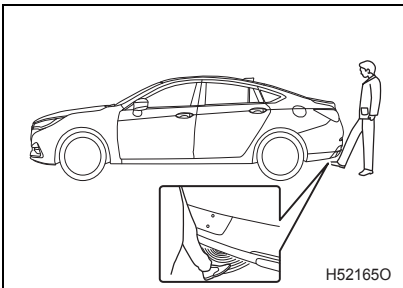
When the vehicle is stationary, press the trunk lid open button to open the trunk lid.

- Wireless remote control



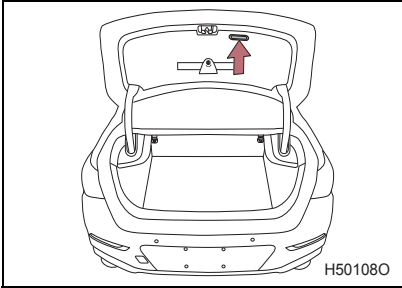
Press and hold the unlocking button to open the trunk.

- Kick-on \*



With the engine switch placed in the "IG-OFF" mode, carry the smart key with you and make a kick under the rear bumper to unlock and open the trunk lid.

## Closing the trunk lid



Use the trunk lid handle to lower the trunk lid, then press the trunk lid downward from the outside to close it.

### ■ Trunk lamp

The trunk lamp turns on when the trunk lid is opened.

### ■ Reminder of the key left in trunk

When you open and close the trunk lid alone from the outside of car with the engine switch in “IG-OFF” mode and car locked, the reminder function of the approved key left in trunk will be activated (the trunk lid pops open automatically).



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Be careful to open and close the trunk lid to avoid being pinched by it.

### ■ Before driving

- Make sure the trunk lid is completely closed. If the trunk lid is not completely closed, it may open accidentally hitting nearby objects or making the luggage in it thrown out during driving.
- Do not let children play in the trunk. If the child is accidentally locked in the trunk, it may suffer heat stroke, suffocation or other injuries.
- Do not allow children to open or close the trunk lid. Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unintentionally or cause the closing trunk lid to trap the child's hand, head, or neck.

### ■ Precautions when driving

Make sure to close the trunk lid to prevent from belongings dropping off and prevent from the exhaust gas entering into the cabin.

### ■ When children are in or around the vehicle

Never leave the child play in or around the vehicle unattended, especially when the trunk lid is open. The child may enter the trunk and trapped themselves in it. The over high or low temperature in the closed car may cause serious injury or death.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

■ **Important for driving**

Never seat anyone in the trunk. Otherwise, during emergency braking or a crash, it is likely to cause serious injury even death.

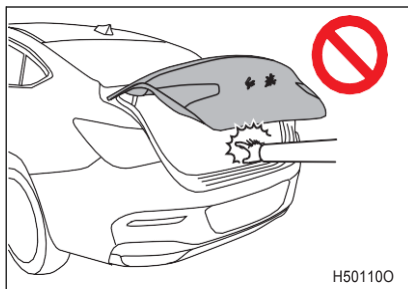
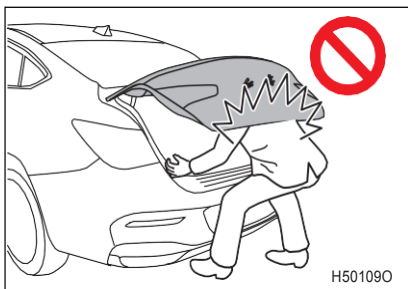
■ **Trunk usage**

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, some part of the body may be trapped and cause serious injury.

- Before opening trunk lid, first remove load on it, such as snow and ice. Otherwise, the trunk lid may suddenly close again.
- When opening or closing trunk lid, please make a thorough check to ensure the peripheral region is safe.
- If there is someone nearby, please ensure their safety and inform them that trunk lid will be opened or closed.
- On a windy day, be careful when opening or closing trunk lid, because it may move suddenly in strong wind.
- Never install any accessories on the trunk lid. Otherwise, the extra weight on the trunk lid may cause the trunk to open and close suddenly.

- It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on a slope than that on a flat road. Therefore, be careful to prevent it from being opened or closed automatically. Before using the trunk, please confirm the trunk lid is fully opened and fixed.

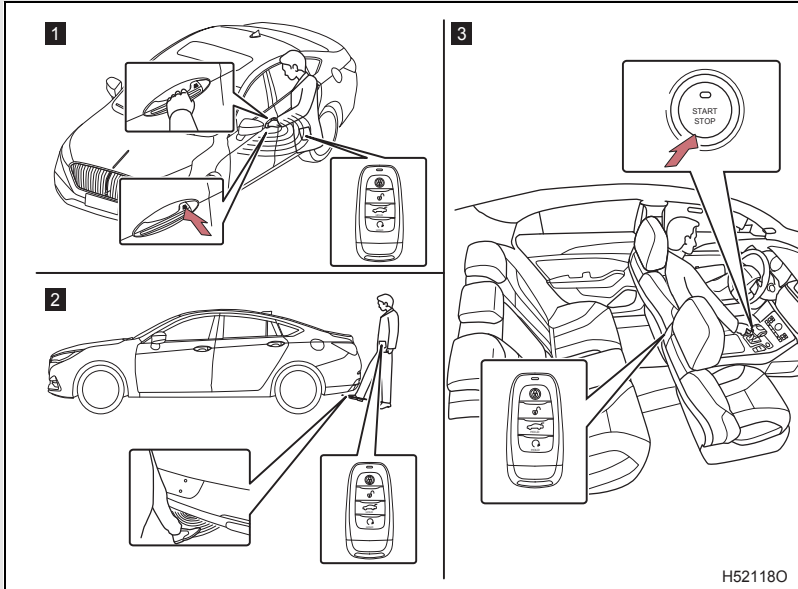


- Be careful to close the trunk lid to avoid the finger or other body part being trapped.
- When closing the trunk lid, press it down gently on the external surface. If you close the trunk lid completely with the trunk handle, you may trap your hands or arms.

### 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the door and trunk lid

## Passive entry & start system\*

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the smart keys with yourself (in pocket). (The driver should always carry the smart key.)

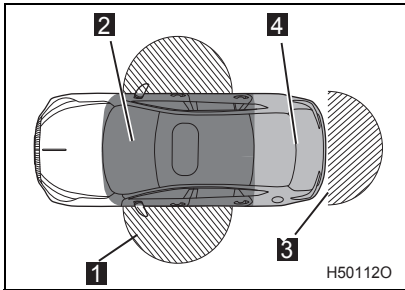


**1** Lock and unlock the doors. ( → P.88)

**2** Unlock the trunk lid. (See P.82)

**3** Start the engine. ( → P.142)

### ■ Effective range (areas within which the smart key can be detected)



Effective range of the smart key antenna:

Hemispheric area with the antenna as the center and the radius of 1.0m.

- 1** When locking or unlocking the doors  
The door can be locked or unlocked when the smart key is within the exterior induction areas.
- 2** When starting the engine or changing the engine switch modes  
The engine can be started or the switch mode can be changed if the smart key is within the interior induction
- 3** When unlocking the trunk  
If the smart key is in the induction area outside the trunk, the trunk can be kicked open. When the smart key is left in the trunk
- 4** If the trunk is closed with the smart key placed in the induction area inside the trunk, it will activate the key-left-in-trunk reminder function.

### ■ Warning and prompting function

The system warning and prompting functions can be achieved via the multi-function display on the combination instrument and the buzzer, hazard warning lights and engine switch status indicator.

- When any warning light is on

Adopt corresponding measures according to the li up warning lights.

( → P.395)

- When the warning information is displayed

Adopt corresponding measures according to the warning information displayed on the multi-function display of the combination instrument.

( → P.399)

### ■ Operation signals

The flashing turning light indicates that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice).

### ■ Conditions affecting operations

The passive entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the smart key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control from operating properly.

- When the smart key battery is insufficient.
- When the smart key battery is depleted.
- Near a TV tower, power plant, filling station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- When carrying portable radio, mobile phone, cordless telephone or other wireless telecom equipments.
- When the smart key is in contact with, or is covered by metal objects.
- When multiple smart keys are in the vicinity.
- When carrying or using the smart key together with the following devices that emit radio waves.
  - Another vehicle's smart key
  - Wireless remote control key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers
- If sunvisor with metal contents or metal objects are attached to the rear windshield.
- When the following metal objects touch or cover the key.
  - Cards with aluminium foil
  - Cigarette case with aluminium foil on the inside
  - Metallic wallet or bag
  - Coins
  - Metallic hand warmer
  - Media such as CD and DVD
- Another vehicle's smart key (emitting radio waves) is used near the vehicle.
- When the smart key is near a battery charger or an electronic device.

### ■ To operate the system properly

- Make sure to carry the smart key when operating the system. Do not get the smart key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
- Depending on the specific positions and holding gestures of the smart key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly.
- Do not place the smart key in the areas with weak inductive signals such as on a package rack.

### ■ Security features

- With remote unlocking, the car can be automatically locked about 30s later if the door is not opened.
- With passive unlocking, the car can be automatically locked about 30s later if the door is not opened and the smart key remains in the induction area; the car can be immediately locked if the door is not opened and the smart key leaves the induction area.

### ■ When the vehicle is not driven for a long period

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not place the smart key too close to the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is not driven for a long period, it must be locked. Otherwise, the battery may be discharged.

### ■ If the passive entry & start system does not operate properly

- Lock and unlock the doors: using the mechanical key. (→ P.415)
- Start the engine. (→ P.416)

### ■ Remarks of passive entry function

- Even when the smart key is within the effective range (induction areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases.
  - The smart key is too close to the window or outside the door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The smart key is placed on the instrument panel, rear package rack or floor, or in the glove box when the engine switch modes are operated.
- As long as the smart key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by any one. Please keep the smart key properly.

## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the door and trunk lid

- The passive entry may become inoperable if large amount of water splashes on the door handle (such as in a car wash or in heavy rain).
- The doors may not be unlocked when gripping the door handle wearing a glove.
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the smart key is near the vehicle, the door may not be unlocked by the passive entry system (in such case, please unlock the door by the wireless remote control).
- A sudden approach to the effective range or a quick pulling of the door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. At this time, please return the exterior door handle to its original position and pull it again.
- The doors may not be locked in the following situations.
  - When locking the door using the door lock button with the smart key inside the door.
  - When locking the doors by carrying the smart key outside the vehicle without turning off the engine switch.
  - When one door is not completely closed.
  - When the shift lever is not in “P”.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Notes regarding the electronic devices interference

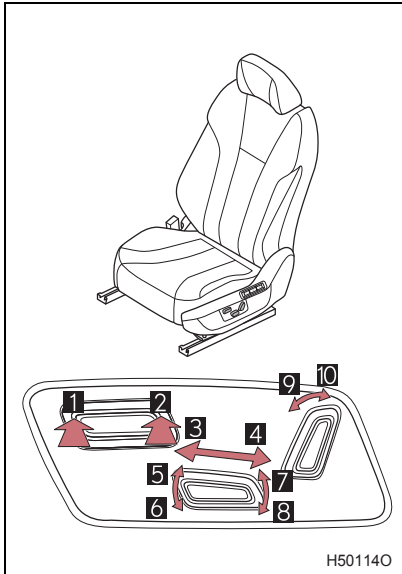
- People with implanted pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implanted cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a proper distance from the passive entry & start system antennas.
- The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. For the details of the radio waves frequency and emitting time, please consult the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer. Then consult your doctor about whether it can be normally used.
- People with other electronic medical devices, rather than implanted pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implanted cardioverter defibrillators, should consult the device manufacturer about the effects of radio waves on the device operation.
- Radio waves could have unpredictable effects on the operation of such medical devices.
- For details of the passive entry & start system, please consult the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

### 3-3. Adjusting the seats

## Front seats

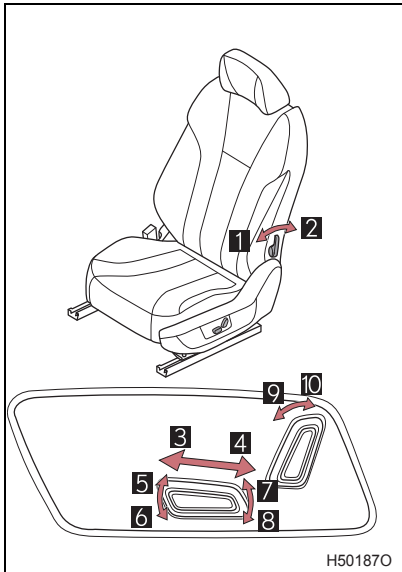
#### Adjustment steps:

- Driver seat (eight-way electric adjustment with electric lumbar support)



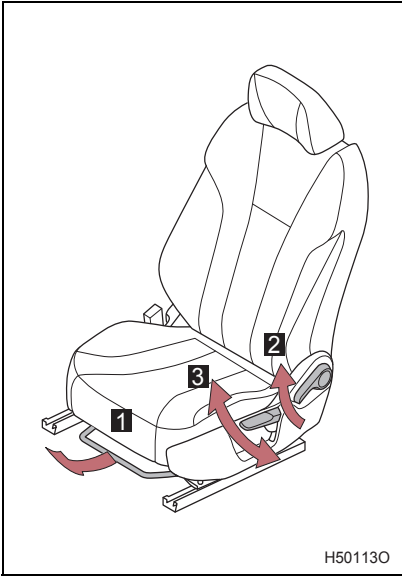
- 1 Lumbar support convexed
- 2 Lumbar support concaved
- 3 Seat moving forward
- 4 Seat moving backward
- 5 Front end of seat going up
- 6 Front end of seat going down
- 7 Seat going up
- 8 Seat going down
- 9 Backrest erecting upright
- 10 Backrest inclining backwards

- Driver seat (eight-way electric adjustment with manual lumbar support)



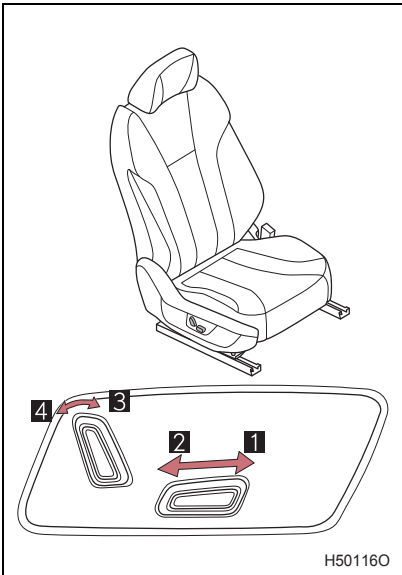
- 1 Lumbar support convexed
- 2 Lumbar support concaved
- 3 Seat moving forward
- 4 Seat moving backward
- 5 Front end of seat going up
- 6 Front end of seat going down
- 7 Seat going up
- 8 Seat going down
- 9 Backrest erecting upright
- 10 Backrest inclining backwards

► Driver seat (six-way manual adjustment)



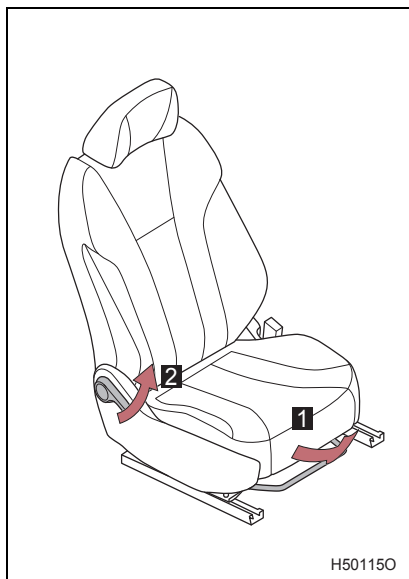
- 1** Seat longitudinal adjustment lever
- 2** Backrest inclining angle adjustment handle
- 3** Seat vertical height adjustment handle

► Front passenger seat (four-way electrical adjustment)



- 1** Seat moving forward
- 2** Seat moving backward
- 3** Backrest erecting upright
- 4** Backrest inclining backwards

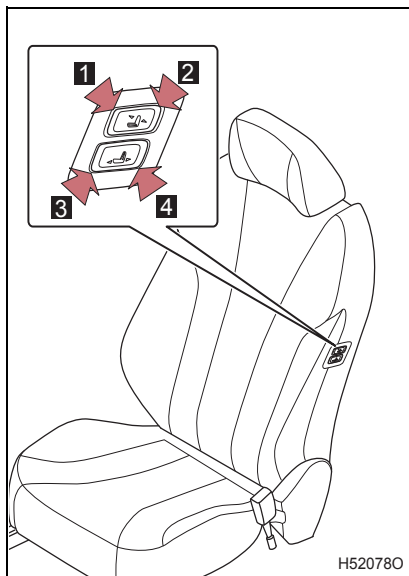
► Front passenger seat (four-way manual adjustment)



H501150

- 1 Seat longitudinal adjustment lever
- 2 Backrest inclining angle adjustment handle

► Front passenger seat (rear control buttons) - for the operation of rear seat passengers



H520780

- 1 Backrest erecting upright
- 2 Backrest inclining backwards
- 3 Seat moving forward
- 4 Seat moving backward

**CAUTIONS****■ Seat adjustment**

- When the vehicle is moving, do not over-tilt the seat to prevent the body from slipping out of the lap belt. If the seat is over tilted, the lap belt may slide over the hip and directly squeeze the stomach or the shoulder belt may also strike the neck. This increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.
- Make sure the adjusting components of the seat are locked in place. Failure to secure the adjustable seat and backrest is extremely dangerous. It may cause unexpected movement of the seat or the backrest in the event of emergency braking or a collision, resulting in personal injuries. Try to slide the seat forward and backward and shake the backrest to ensure it is locked in place.
- Do not place your hand under the seat or near the moving part to avoid injury. Otherwise the finger or hand may be trapped by the seat mechanism.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure other occupants will not be injured in this process.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat. This is very dangerous. It may cause serious injuries once the child's hand or foot is trapped.
- It is necessary to stop the vehicle properly before adjusting the driver seat. It is very dangerous to adjust the driver seat while the vehicle is moving. It may cause a loss of vehicle control, resulting in an accident.

**■ Seat retrofitting**

- Retrofitting or replacing the front seat may damage the airbag components in the seat, resulting in the improper airbag deployment in the event of a collision.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

**■ Seats under damage**

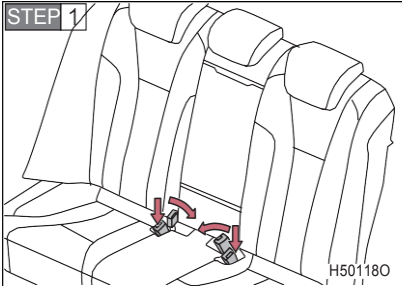
- It is extremely dangerous to drive a vehicle with a damaged seat.
- After a collision, the seat may be damaged even if the seat airbag is not deployed. Therefore you need to contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to check the seat, seat belt pre-tensioner and airbag after each collision.

### 3-3. Adjusting the seats

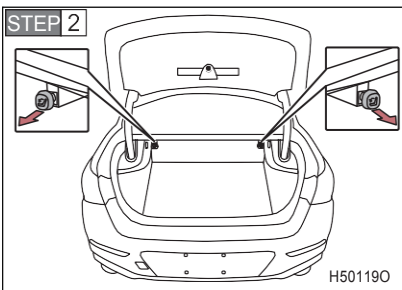
## Rear seats

The rear backrest can be folded.

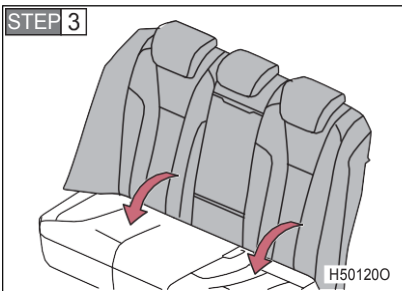
#### Fold the rear backrest



Retract the rear seat belt buckle.

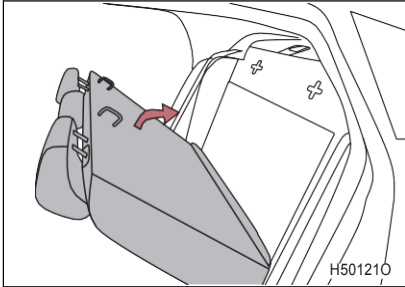


Pull the left and right seat release handles backwards in the trunk.



Fold the backrest.

## Restore the backrest to the vertical position



Restore the backrest to the vertical position until it clicks, then slightly shake the backrest forward and backward to ensure it is firmly locked.

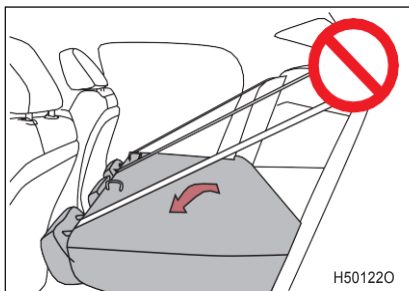
Check and confirm that all seat belts are properly handled for the occupants.

**⚠ CAUTIONS**

■ **When folding the rear backrest**

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, it may result in serious hurt or even death.

- Do not fold the backrest while driving.
- Park the vehicle on a flat surface, move the shift lever to P and apply parking brake.
- Be careful to fold the rear backrest to avoid being trapped.
- Before folding the rear backrest, adjust the front seat position so that the front seat does not hamper the rear seat back folding.



- Before folding down the rear backrest, it's necessary to release the seat belt buckle and restore the seat belts on both sides to the original positions. Otherwise, the seat belt, buckle and backrest may be damaged.

■ **After the rear backrest being folded down**

- Do not allow anyone to sit on the folded backrest or in the trunk while driving.
- Do not allow a child to enter the trunk.

It is very dangerous to leave a child play in a car with a backrest folded. If the child enters the trunk and the backrest raises, the child may be trapped in the trunk, resulting in unexpected conditions.

- Secure the objects firmly in the trunk.

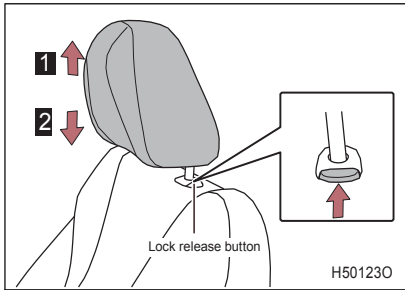
The unsecured objects and luggage can be dangerous while driving. They may move around and hamper the driving operations during an emergency braking or an accidental collision.

■ **After the backrest being restored to the upright position**

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, it may result in serious hurt or even death.

- Slightly shake the backrest forward and backward to ensure it is firmly locked into position.
- Check and confirm that the seat belt is not twisted or stuck under the seat.

### 3-3. Adjusting the seats Head restraints



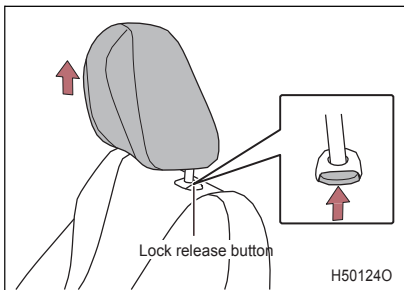
#### 1 UP

Press and hold the lock release button while pulling the head restraint upwards

#### 2 Down

Press and hold the lock release button while pushing the head restraint downwards.

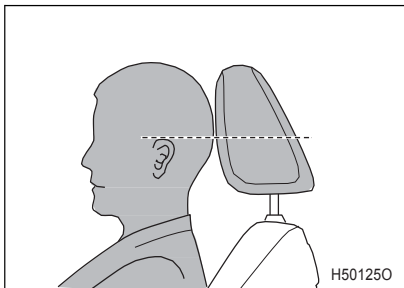
#### ■ Removing the head restraint



Press and hold the lock release button while pulling the head restraint upwards.

If the head restraint removal is hampered by the roof, you can incline the backrest to conduct the removal.

#### ■ Adjusting the height of the head restraint



When adjusting the head restraint, make sure its centre flushes with ear top.

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions for head restraint**

Please observe the following cautions about the head restraint. Otherwise it may lead to serious personal injuries, or even death.

- Use the head restraints specially designed for each seat.
- Always adjust the head restraints to the correct position.
- After the head restraint is removed, do not drive the vehicle.

Whenever driving the vehicle, the head restraint should be installed properly and adjusted to a suitable position. Driving a vehicle with the head restraint too low or not mounted is very dangerous. The absence of head support can cause injuries to the neck in the event of a collision.

- **The seat head restraints can weaken the whiplash effect on the seat occupant, and reduce the injury on the neck of the driver or the passengers.**

### 3-3. Adjusting the seats

## Seat memory\*

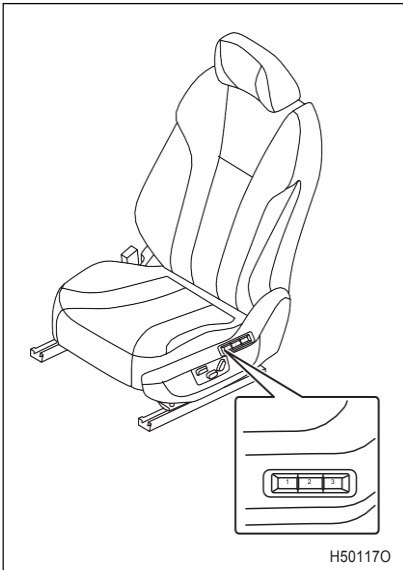
**It can store the information of seats, exterior mirrors and the key.**

### Seat memory setting

#### ■ Self-study setting

By operating the seat adjustment switch, adjust the seats to the utmost positions in 8 directions (front and rear, front height, seat height, backrest) and hold these positions for more than 1s, then the self-study of the system will be completed. If the self-study on a motor fails, the seat system will not support the memory function.

#### ■ Seat memory setting



**Set the memory content:** After adjusting the positions of the seats and the exterior mirrors, press and hold any memory button until the instrument sounds prompt tone, indicating the position information and current key information has been stored in this button.

**Call up the memory content:** press the memory button to make the seats and the exterior mirrors automatically move to the stored positions in this button.

Each key corresponds to three sets of memory positions.

#### ■ When setting the memory

- The memory setting for the seats and the rear-view mirror positions should be performed while the vehicle is stationary and the engine switch is set to the "IG-ON" mode.
- Manually adjusting the positions of the seats and the rear-view mirrors during memory setting will automatically exit this function.

- If the current memory button has already stored some data, the existing data will be overwritten by the new data during the memory setting.
- After the battery is disconnected, the stored information is lost and self-study setting and seat memory setting need to be re-performed.
- The system only supports 2 remote key for this seat position memory storage function.

■ **When calling up the memory**

- The memory cannot be called up while the vehicle is moving or braking.
- If the engine is started during the memory calling up, the calling up will be terminated.
- If the positions of the seats and the rear-view mirrors are manually adjusted during the calling up, the system automatically exits this function.

## Seat greeting

The greeting function consists of automatic back-off and return.

Automatic back-off: after the engine is switched off and the front left door opened, the seat automatically moves backwards to the utmost for the driver to get off.

Automatic return: after the engine is switched on and the front left door closed, the seat automatically returns to the position before the automatic back-off.

Note: If the seat forward and backward self-study fails, the greeting function will not work.

■ **When automatically backing off:**

If the driver operates the seat adjustment switch or seat memory switch during seat automatic back-off, this back-off will be terminated.

■ **When automatically returning:**

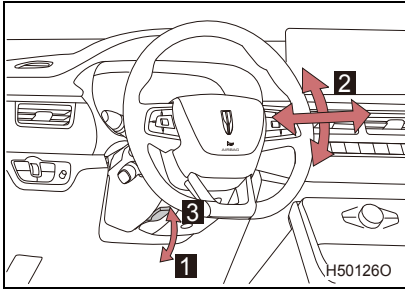
If the driver operates the seat adjustment switch or seat memory switch during seat automatic return, this return will be terminated.

If the engine is started during seat automatic return, the return will be at pause. After the starting finishes, this return will be proceeded.

## Steering wheel

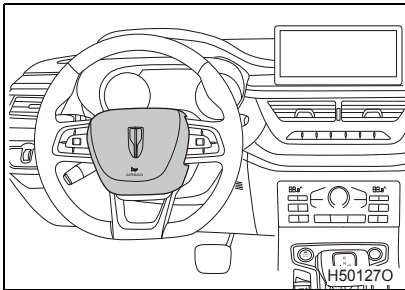
### Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.



- 1 Release the steering wheel adjustment lever.
- 2 Adjust the steering wheel to a comfortable position.
- 3 Lock the steering wheel adjustment lever.

### Horn



To sound the horn, press on the horn mark or its surrounding area.

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions when driving**

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving. Otherwise, it may cause false driver operations, potentially resulting in an accident and leading to serious or fatal injuries.
- Put hands on 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions on the outer side of the steering wheel rim when driving. Do not put both hands on 12 o'clock position or grip the steering wheel by other gestures. Otherwise, the unfolding of the air bag may result in injury to the arms and/or head of the driver.

**■ When adjusting the steering wheel**

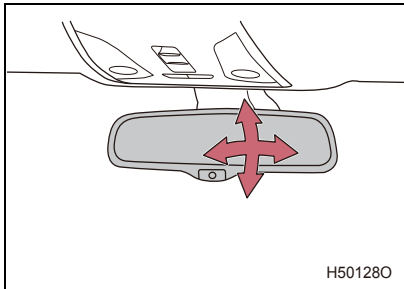
During the steering wheel adjustment, the adjustment lever should be fully opened and slowly pushed and pulled at a uniform speed to a proper position; never quickly push, pull or impact the steering wheel; otherwise, the interior parts are extremely prone to damages. Keep the driver's chest at least 250 mm away from the steering wheel; never adjust the steering wheel to face the driver's face. Otherwise, the driver airbag will not provide effective protection in the event of an accident.

**■ After adjusting the steering wheel**

Make sure the steering wheel is firmly locked; otherwise accidents may occur due to the sudden movement of the steering wheel, resulting in serious injuries or even death. In addition, the horn will not sound if the steering wheel is not locked firmly.

## Interior anti-glare rear view mirror

### Adjusting the interior mirror



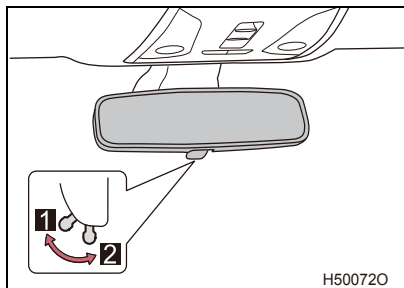
H50128O

According to the driving posture, the interior mirror can be adjusted upwards, downwards, leftwards and rightwards.

The driver must adjust the mirror to a suitable position so that a good rear view can be achieved through the rear windshield.

### Dimming function

- Manual dimming\*

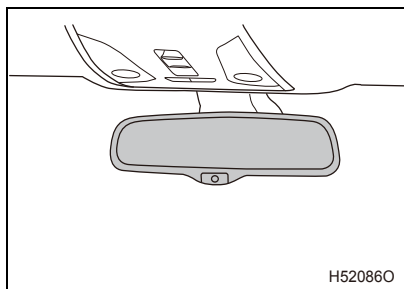


H50072O

If necessary, the dimming function can be turned on or off by the adjustment handle.

- 1 Turn on the dimming function
- 2 Turn off the dimming function

- Auto-dimming\*



H52086O

The interior mirror features auto-dimming function and can automatically weaken the reflect light based on the light intensity detected by front and rear sensors.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ When driving

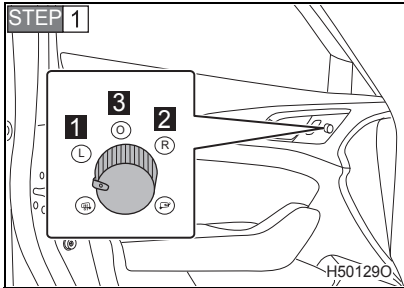
- Never adjust mirror positions when driving. Otherwise, accidents may occur due to false operations, resulting in serious injuries or even death.
- If objects stacked on the rear seat is higher than the backrest, the vision in the interior mirror can be blocked, potentially resulting in traffic accidents. Therefore, the height of the stacked objects should not exceed the backrest.

## 3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and rear-view mirrors

### Exterior mirrors

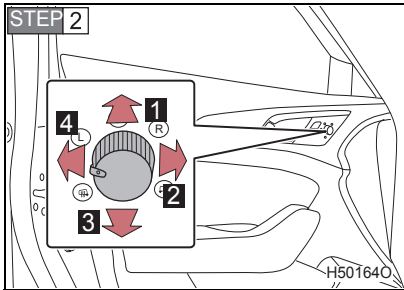
#### Adjusting the exterior mirrors

The exterior mirror angles can be adjusted when the engine switch is in "IGNITION ON" mode.



Rotate the adjustment knob to select the mirror to be adjusted.

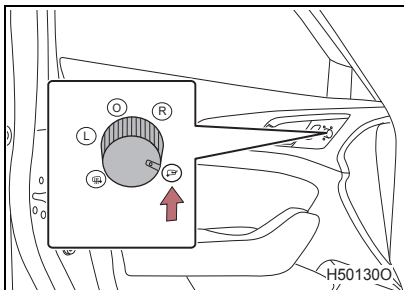
- 1 Left
- 2 Right
- 3 OFF



Adjust the mirror.

- 1 Move upward
- 2 Move rightward
- 3 Move downward
- 4 Move leftward

#### Folding the exterior mirrors\*

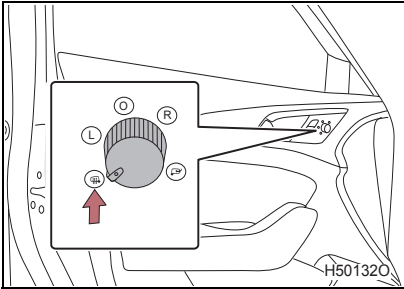


As the figure shows, rotate the adjustment knob to the mirror-folding position to fold the mirror, and rotate the knob to other positions to return the mirror to the original position.

The exterior mirrors will be automatically folded as the door locked and be unfolded as the door unlocked.

Setting methods of exterior mirror auto folding. (→ P.77)

## Exterior mirror heating\*



When the mirror fogs up, rotate the adjustment knob to the position with a heating label to heat the mirror.

If it is not manually turned off, the heater will automatically turn off after 10 minutes.

### ■ Adjustment conditions for exterior mirror angles

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode and the vehicle is in parking status.

### ■ Operating conditions for the exterior mirror folding and heating

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

### ■ Activating electric mode in cold weather

The exterior mirrors can freeze in cold weather. In such case, the mirrors may fail to be automatically folded and unfolded in the electric mode. In this case, remove the ice and snow from the exterior mirrors first and then manually operate the mirrors.

### ■ Exterior mirror memory\*

The exterior mirror memory activates in conjunction with the seat memory. The current mirror position is stored/called up at the same time when the seat position is stored/called up. (→ P.112)

### ■ Mirror turning down when reversing\*

Turn the exterior mirror adjustment knob to the right to enable this function. Selecting Reverse (R) gear causes the right exterior mirror to turn down, providing a reversing view for the driver. When the lever is moved from R, the mirror returns to the previous position. The driver can adjust the right mirror to a proper angle at the R gear, and store it as the target turning down position.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ When driving

Observe the following precautions while driving. Otherwise, it may cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle and accidents to occur, resulting in serious injuries or even death.

- Always watch the surroundings before changing lanes.

It is very dangerous to change the lane without considering the actual distance to the vehicle in the exterior mirror. As the actual distance to the object is smaller than the one you see through the mirror, it may cause serious accidents.

- Do not drive when the exterior mirror is folded. Before driving, ensure to return the exterior mirror to the unfolded position.

### ■ When the exterior mirror moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to trap the hand with the moving mirror.

### ■ When the exterior mirror heaters are operating

- Do not touch the exterior mirror surface, as the mirror may become very hot and cause a scald.
- When heating is not required, turn the mirror adjustment knob to “OFF”.

### ■ Precautions while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

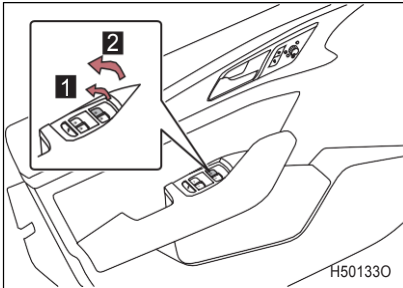
## 3-5. Opening and closing the windows

### Power windows

#### Opening and closing the power window

##### ■ Power window switch on the driver side

The power window switch on the driver side regulates other windows



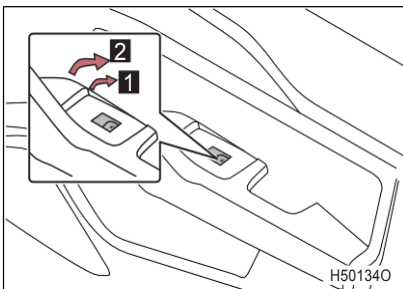
##### 1 Manually up/down

Pull/press the level 1 on the corresponding window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/down manually.

##### 2 Automatically up/down

Pull/press the level 2 on the corresponding window switch (release after pulling/pressing), the window will move up/down automatically.

##### ■ Power window switch on the front passenger side



##### 1 Manually up/down

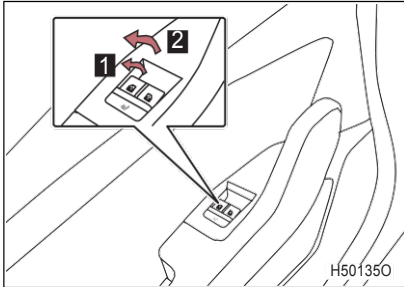
Pull/press the level 1 on the window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/down manually.

##### 2 Automatically up/down

Pull/press the level 2 on the window switch (release after pulling/pressing), the window will move up/down automatically.

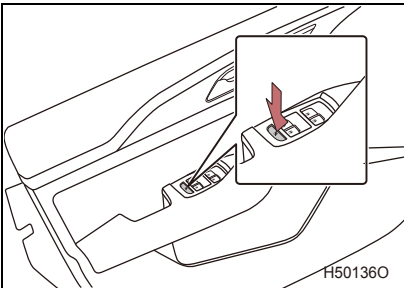
##### ■ Power window switches for rear occupants

The power window switch for rear occupants on either side regulates the rear windows on both sides



- 1 Manually up/down**  
Pull/press the level 1 on the corresponding window switch (keep pulling/pressing), the window will be regulated up/down manually.
- 2 Automatically up/down**  
Pull/press the level 2 on the corresponding window switch (release after pulling/pressing), the window will move up/down automatically.

### Power window lock switch



Press this switch to disable the power window switches for rear occupants.

The power window switches on driver and front passenger sides are not regulated by the lock switch.

#### ■ Operating condition for power windows

The engine switch is in "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode.

#### ■ Operating power windows after turning off the engine

Within about 60 seconds after the engine switch is turned off, the power windows can still be closed.

#### ■ Initialization

When the automatic up/down function fails, the window needs to be initialised. The initialization method is as follows:

- With the door window at any position of the anti-pinch effective area (more than 4 mm from the window frame), keep pulling the switch on the window to be initialized until the window is fully closed and keep this pulling for more than 2 seconds, then the initialization process finishes.

Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if necessary.

### ■ **Anti-pinch function**

When the power window is operated to rise and is interfered by obstacles, the power window will automatically move down.

### ■ **Automatic closing function when raining**

When the engine switch is placed in the "IG-OFF" mode, and the window is not closed, the light rain sensor determines the rainfall size to automatically close the window.

### ■ **Remote elevating**

When all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the locking button on the smart key within the effective range to close all the windows.

### ■ **Smart elevating**

When all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" mode and a smart key carried with you, you can close all the windows by touching and holding the lock induction area of the door handle.

### ■ **Mechanical key elevating**



## **CAUTIONS**

### ■ **Observe the following precautions when closing windows to avoid serious injury or even death:**

- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies pinched when a window is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.

### ■ **Anti-pinch function**

- Never try to activate the anti-pinch function intentionally by having any body part pinched.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if something gets pinched (4 mm) just before the window fully closes.
- The initialisation is required if the power window or anti-pinch function is inoperable.

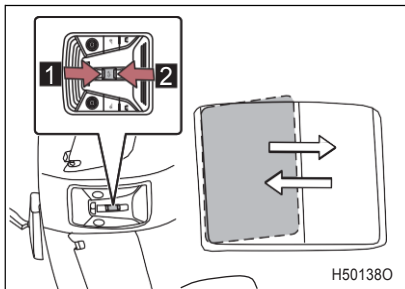
### ■ **When the window is elevated with the remote elevating, smart elevating or mechanical key elevating, the turning light will flash once after windows and the sunroof are completely closed. Please confirm the windows are completely closed**

### 3-5. Opening and closing the windows

## Panorama sunroof\*

The sunroof switch can be used to open and close the sunroof.

### Opening and closing



#### 1 Opening

Press the switch when the sunroof is closed, the rear part of the sunroof is tilted up and the sunshade curtain opens partially. Press the switch when the sunroof is at a tilt-up position, the sunroof opens synchronously with the sunshade curtain.

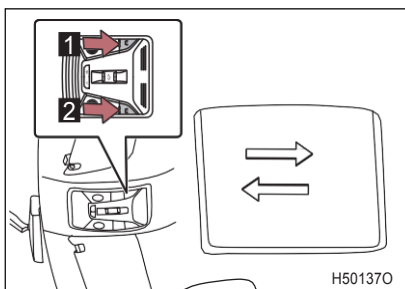
#### 2 Closing

Press the switch when the sunroof is open, the sunroof closes.

Note: When the sunroof is opening or closing automatically, pressing the sunroof switch will stop the movement.

Press and hold the sunroof switch to manually open and close the sunroof, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

### Electric sunshade curtain



#### 1 Opening

Press the sunshade curtain opening button to fully open the blind.

#### 2 Closing

Press the sunshade curtain closing button to fully close the blind.

Note: When the sunshade curtain is opening or closing automatically, pressing the sunshade curtain button will stop the movement.

Press and hold the sunshade curtain button to manually open and close the blind, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

---

**■ Operating condition for sunroof**

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

**■ Initialization****● Sunroof initialization**

When the sunroof is at incorrect positions, or the sunroof automatic function is invalid, or the conjunction function of the panorama sunroof and the sunshade curtain is valid, initialization is needed. The initialization steps are as follows: set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode and fully close the sunroof, then press and hold the sunroof switch forward for about 7s and release the switch as the sunroof knocks the mechanism blocking point; within the following 5s, re-press and hold the switch until the sunroof completes the tilt-up opening, slide opening and slide closing. The initialization is completed.

**● The sunshade curtain initialization**

When the sunshade curtain is at incorrect positions, or the sunshade curtain automatic function is invalid, initialization is needed. The initialization steps are as follows: set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode and fully open the sunshade curtain, then press and hold the sunshade curtain opening button for about 7s and release the switch as the sunshade curtain knocks the mechanism blocking point; within the following 5s, re-press the switch to allow the blind to perform forward closing and backward opening, and release the switch as the blind stops. The initialization is completed.

**■ Anti-pinch function**

If the sunroof encounters obstacles during closing, it will return to the maximum open position.

If the electric sunshade curtain encounters obstacles during closing, it will return to the half-open position.

**■ Automatic closing function when raining**

When the engine switch is placed in the "IG-OFF" mode, and the window is not closed, the light rain sensor determines the rainfall size to automatically close the window.

**■ Closing the sunroof with remote control**

When all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key within the effective range to close the sunroof.

**■ Closing the sunroof with the smart key**

When all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" mode and a smart key carried with you, you can close the sunroof by touching and holding the lock induction area of the door handle.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ **Precautions when opening the sunroof**

Observe the following precautions when opening the sunroof to avoid serious injury or death:

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.

#### ■ **Precautions when closing the sunroof**

Observe the following precautions when closing the sunroof to avoid serious injury or death:

- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies pinched when the sunroof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

#### ■ **During the initialization**

- If the sunroof switch is released during initialization, then this initialization operation fails and a new initialization operation is needed.
- Confirm all functions of the sunroof after initialization.
- If unable to finish the initialization, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

#### ■ **Anti-pinch function**

- Never try to activate the anti-pinch function intentionally by having any body part pinched.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if something gets pinched just before the sunroof fully closes.

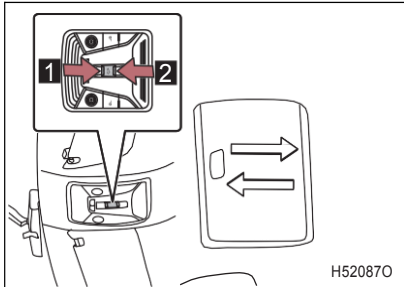
#### ■ **When the window is elevated with remote elevating, smart elevating or mechanical key elevating, the turning light will flash once after windows and the sunroof are completely closed. Please confirm the sunroof is completely closed**

### 3-5. Opening and closing the windows

## Common sunroof\*

The sunroof switch can be used to open and close the sunroof.

### Opening and closing



#### 1 Opening

If you press the switch when the sunroof is closed, the sunroof opens.

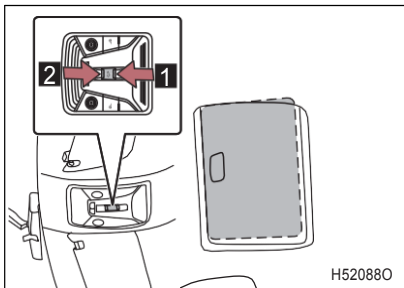
#### 2 Closing

If you press the switch when the sunroof is open, the sunroof closes.

Note: When the sunroof is opening or closing automatically, pressing the sunroof switch will stop the movement.

Press and hold the sunroof switch to manually open and close the sunroof, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

### Tilt-up opening and closing



#### 1 Tilt-up opening

If you press the switch when the sunroof is closed, the sunroof fully tilts up.

#### 2 Closing

If you press the switch when the sunroof is tilt up, the sunroof fully closes.

Note: When the sunroof is tilt up automatically, pressing the sunroof switch will stop the movement.

Press and hold the sunroof switch to manually tilt up and close the sunroof, and the movement will stop with the switch released.

---

- **Operating condition for the sunroof**

The engine switch is in "IG-ON" mode.

- **Initialization**

When the sunroof is at incorrect positions, or the sunroof automatic function is invalid, initialization is needed. The initialization steps are as follows: set the engine switch to "IG-ON" mode and operate the sunroof to the tilting point, then press and hold the sunroof switch forward for about 7s and release the switch as the sunroof knocks the mechanism blocking point; within the following 5s, re-press and hold the switch until the sunroof completes the closing, slide opening and slide closing. The initialization is completed.

- **Anti-pinch function**

If the sunroof encounters obstacles during closing, it will return to the maximum open position.

- **Automatic closing function when raining**

When the engine switch is placed in the "IG-OFF" mode, and the window is not closed, the light rain sensor determines the rainfall size to automatically close the window.

- **Closing the sunroof with remote control**

When all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key within the effective range to close the sunroof.

- **Closing the sunroof with the smart key**

When all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" mode and a smart key carried with you, you can close the sunroof by touching and holding the lock induction area of the door handle.

- **Closing the sunroof with the mechanical key**

When all the doors, engine hood and trunk lid are closed with the engine switch at "IG-OFF" mode, you can close the sunroof by locking the door with the mechanical key and holding the motion.

- **Manual sunvisor**

The sunvisor can be opened and closed manually. When the sunroof is being opened, sunvisor is being opened automatically.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Precautions when opening the sunroof

Observe the following precautions when opening the sunroof to avoid serious injury or death:

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.

#### ■ Precautions when closing the sunroof

Observe the following precautions when closing the sunroof to avoid serious injury or death:

- Check and make sure that all passengers would not have any part of their bodies pinched when the sunroof is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

#### ■ During the initialization

- If the sunroof switch is released during initialization, the initialization operation fails and a new initialization operation is needed.
- Confirm all functions of the sunroof after initialization.
- If unable to finish the initialization, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

#### ■ Anti-pinch function

- Never try to activate the anti-pinch function intentionally by having any body part pinched.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if something gets pinched just before the sunroof fully closes.

#### ■ When the window is elevated with remote elevating, smart elevating or mechanical key elevating, the turning light will flash once after windows and the sunroof are completely closed. Please confirm the sunroof is completely closed

**4-1. Before Driving**

Driving a vehicle.....	123
Goods and luggage .	131
Trailer towing .....	132

**4-2. Driving specifications**

Engine (start) switch.....	133
Transmission .....	137
Turn signal light control handle .....	142
EPB Electronic Parking Brake .....	143
Auto hold* .....	145

**4-3. Operating lights and wipers**

Headlight switch.....	146
IHC intelligent high beam control* .....	149
Fog light switch .....	152
Front windshield wiper and washer .....	153

**4-4. Fuel filling**

Opening the fuel tank lid.....	156
-----------------------------------	-----

**4-5. Using other driving systems**

Constant speed cruise control* .....	159
---	-----

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Function* .....	163
LIM (Limited System)* .....	172
Front and rear parking radar* .....	174
Rear view camera system* .....	182
Panoramic camera system * .....	188
Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS) .....	193
LDW (Lane Departure Warning)* .....	195
Forward collision warning (FCW) * .....	198
AEB (Autonomous Emergency Brake) system * .....	201
LCDA Lang Change Decision Aid * .....	205
Idling start/stop system * .....	209
PSC semi-automatic parking system * .....	214
Driver assistance .....	225

**4-6. Driving information**

Key points for driving in inter.....	229
---	-----

## 4-1. Before Driving

# Driving a vehicle

**The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving.**

- Starting the engine ( → P.142)
- Driving

**STEP 1** Depress the brake pedal to shift the shift lever to D.  
( → P.146 )

**STEP 2** Release the electronic parking brake. ( → P.149)

**STEP 3** Gradually release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

- Stopping

**STEP 1** When the shift lever is at D, depress the brake pedal.

**STEP 2** When necessary, apply the electronic parking brake.  
( → P.149)

When parking intended for a long time, always shift the shift lever to P or N. ( → P.146)

- Parking

When the shift lever is at D, depress the brake pedal.

**STEP 1** Press the P button to shift the gear to P. ( → P.146)

**STEP 2** Apply the electronic parking brake. ( → P.149)

**STEP 3** Press the engine switch to turn off the engine.

**STEP 4** Lock the door and make sure to carry the smart key with

**STEP 5** you.

### Moving off on a steep uphill

If the uphill is too steep, EPB slope assist would not apply. The following procedures should be observed:

**STEP 1** Depress the brake pedal firmly and change the shift lever to D.

Make sure the gear indicator displays D.

**STEP 2** Release the electronic parking brake.

**STEP 3** Release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

#### ■ Driving in the rain

- When it rains, please drive carefully because of poor visibility, foggy windows and slippery roads.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an express way in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, hampering the steering and brakes from operating properly.

#### ■ ESS emergency brake reminder function

When the vehicle speed reaches the design speed, if an emergency brake is applied, the brake light flashes quickly to remind the vehicles behind until the brake pedal is released.

#### ■ Running in your new vehicle

- Avoid sudden stops.
- Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
- Avoid sudden acceleration.
- Do not drive continuously in low gears.
- Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

#### ■ Driving your vehicle in a foreign country

Comply with the relevant regulations of the country and make sure of the availability of the correct fuel.

( → P.444)

**CAUTIONS****■ When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle stops with the engine operating for vehicles with automatic transmission.

This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

**■ Precautions during driving**

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the locations of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident that could result in serious injury or death.
  - Drive with caution when reversing although the vehicle is equipped with reversing camera system and radar ranging system.
  - When reversing, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Even if you move the vehicle slightly, you must maintain the correct driving posture in order to accurately depress the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. In case of emergency, the response may be delayed if your left foot is used to step on the brake pedal, potentially resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot, and may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- Do not move the vehicle backward when the shift lever is in the forward gear or the P gear or forward when the shift lever is in Gear R or P, otherwise it may cause accidents or damage to the vehicle.
- If exhaust gas is smelt inside the vehicle, open the windows. Large amounts of exhaust gas in the vehicle can result in a serious health hazard, and even cause an accident.
- Do not change the shift lever to P while the vehicle is running, otherwise it will seriously damage the transmission and may cause the vehicle out of control.
- Do not change the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward, otherwise it will seriously damage the transmission and may cause the vehicle out of control.
- Do not change the shift lever to D while the vehicle is moving backward, otherwise it will seriously damage the transmission and may cause the vehicle out of control.

**CAUTIONS**

- Do not change the shift lever to N while the vehicle is running, otherwise the engine braking function may not work properly, resulting in accident.
- Do not turn the engine off while driving.

If the engine is not running, the brake booster etc. will not work normally.

- Please use the engine brake (downshift) function to maintain a safe vehicle speed when going down a steep slope.

Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness.

- When the vehicle is parked on an inclined road surface, please confirm that the slope is suitable for the EPB function, otherwise please depress the brake pedal and apply the electronic parking brake to prevent the vehicle from moving forward or backward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of the steering wheel, the seat, or the interior or exterior rear view mirrors while driving. Doing so may result in an accident.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their bodies are not outside the vehicle, as this may result in serious injury or death.

**■ When driving on slippery road surfaces**

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire spinning and reduce your ability to control the vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Due to changes in engine braking or engine speed caused by gear shifting, sudden acceleration may cause the vehicle to spin, thus causing an accident.
- After driving past a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brake is functioning properly. Wet brake linings may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brake linings on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may also be affected, resulting in an accident.

**■ When operating the shift lever**

Be careful not to operate the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

- This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not run the engine at high speeds.  
If the vehicle is in a gear other than P or N, the vehicle may suddenly speed up unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine on for a long time.  
If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and check if exhaust gas enters the interior of the vehicle.
- Make sure the electronic parking brake functions normally. Otherwise always keep a foot on the brake pedal while the engine is operating to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle creeping.

### ■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, lighters, sprayers or soft drink cans in the car at high temperature, otherwise the following accidents may occur.
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electronic components.
- Always apply the electronic parking brake, change the shift lever to P, turn off the engine, and lock the vehicle.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is operating or immediately after turning the engine off. Doing so may cause burns.
- Do not leave the engine operating in an area with snow pack, or where it is snowing.

If the vehicle gets stuck in snow pack while the engine is operating, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle.

This may lead to a serious health hazard.

- Avoid engine idling at a high speed.  
Running the engine at a high speed when the vehicle is stopped may lead to overheating of the exhaust system, thus leading to a fire if there are inflammable material near the vehicle.

**CAUTIONS****■ Exhaust gas**

The exhaust gases contain colorless and odorless harmful carbon monoxide (CO). Inhaling exhaust gases may lead to a serious health hazard.

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area, stop the engine. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle. This may lead to serious health hazard or even death.
- The exhaust system should be checked from time to time. If there are small holes or cracks due to corrosion, damaged joints or abnormal exhaust noise, please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for check and repair.

**■ When taking a nap in the vehicle**

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally change the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may accumulate and enter the vehicle.

**■ When braking the vehicle**

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.  
Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side.
- If the power brake assist function does not operate properly, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid long downhill or sharp turns.  
In this case, depressing the brake pedal requires more force than usual. The braking distance may also increase.

**NOTICES****■ When driving**

- Do not simultaneously depress accelerator pedal and the brake pedal, otherwise the engine output may be limited.
- Do not depress the accelerator pedal or simultaneously depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal to stop on a ramp.

**■ When parking the vehicle**

Always apply the electronic parking brake and change the shift lever to P when parking the vehicle for a long time. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to creep or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

**■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts**

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and keep it in the utmost positions for a long time, otherwise the power steering system will be damaged.
- When driving on a bumpy road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

**■ When you hear a sharp or scraping sound when braking**

Please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible for check and replacement of the brake linings. If the brake lining is not replaced when required, this will lead to a damage on the brake disc.

It is very dangerous to drive when the wear limits of the brake lining and/or the brake disc are exceeded.

**■ If you get a flat tire while driving**

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Please hold on to the steering wheel and slowly depress the brake pedal to reduce the speed of the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle will behave abnormally.

Replace the flat tire with a new one. (→ P.403)

**■ When encountering flooded roads**

Please do not drive on roads with deep water, otherwise the vehicle may suffer the following serious damages.

- Engine stalling.
- Short circuit in electrical components.
- Engine damage caused by water immersion.



## **NOTICES**

- Brake function.
- Engine oil and transmission oil.
- Wheel hub bearing, propshaft, drive shaft and suspension.

## 4-1. Before Driving

# Goods and luggage

### **Take notice of the following information about storage precautions for goods and luggage.**

- Try your best to store the goods and luggage in the trunk.
- Be sure all items are secured in place.
- Be careful to keep the vehicle level. Place the weight in the front of the vehicle as much as possible to help maintain vehicle balance.
- For better fuel economy, do not carry unnecessary weight.



### **CAUTIONS**

#### **■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- A container containing petrol.
- Aerosol cans.

#### **■ Storage precautions**

Observe the following precautions to avoid serious injury or even death:

- Do not put goods or luggage in the following positions, otherwise the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal may not work normally due to the goods jamming, and they may block the driver's view or hit the driver or passengers, thus causing an accident.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - Co-driver's seat or rear seat (when stacking items)
  - Instrument panel
  - Dashboard
  - Auxiliary storage box or uncovered tray
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment, as they may move and injure someone in the event of an accident or sudden braking.
- Do not store poorly sealed liquid containers in the trunk.

## 4-1. Before Driving Trailer towing

**FAW recommends you not to tow the trailer by your vehicle, neither install towing device or tow wheel chair, small motorcycle and bicycles via towing device. Your vehicle is not designed as a towing trailer, or the carrier installing the towing device.**



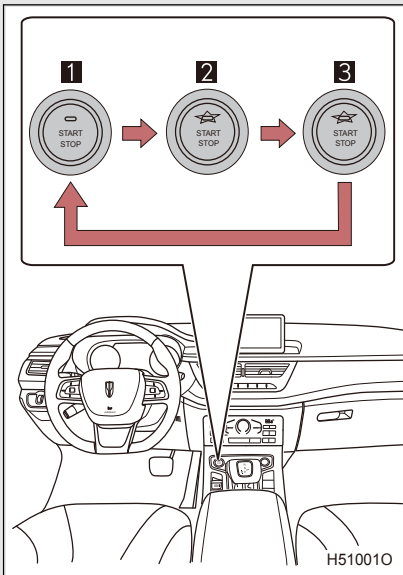
## 4-2. Driving specifications

# Engine (start) switch

**Start the engine or switch the engine (start) switch mode when carrying the smart key with you.**

- Switch the engine (start) switch power supply mode.

When the brake pedal is released, the power supply mode can be switched by pressing the engine (start) switch. (each time the switch is pressed, the mode will be switched accordingly)



### 1 OFF Mode\*1

Light horns, position lights and hazard warning lights can be used.

### 2 ACCESSORY Mode

Some electrical components (e.g. audio system) can be used.

The engine (start) switch indicator turns yellow.

### 3 IGNITION ON Mode

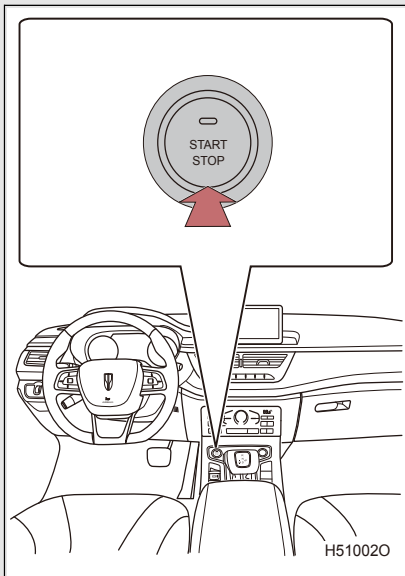
All electronic components can be used.

The engine (start) switch indicator turns yellow.

\*1: Before turning off the engine, it is necessary to change the gear position to P.

### ■ Starting the engine

- STEP 1** Check and confirm that the electronic parking brake has been applied.
- STEP 2** Check and confirm that the shift lever is at P.
- STEP 3** Sit in the driver's seat and firmly depress the brake pedal (the indicator light of the engine (start) switch is green).



Press the engine (start) switch to start the engine.

The engine can be started under any mode.

### ■ Stopping the engine

- STEP 1** Stop the vehicle completely.
- STEP 2** Change the shift lever to P.
- STEP 3** Apply the parking brake. (→P.149)
- STEP 4** Press the engine (start) switch to stop the engine and the switch indicator goes out.

- Stopping the engine when the shift lever is placed in a gear other than P.

If the engine is stopped when the shift lever is placed in a gear other than P, the engine (start) switch will not turn off but will switch to the ACC mode. Perform the following procedures to switch the engine (start) switch to the "IG-OFF" mode:

**STEP 1** Check and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.

**STEP 2** Release the brake pedal and press the engine (start) switch to the "IG-ON mode; Press the engine (start) switch again to switch to the "IG-OFF" mode.

**3**

Note: When the gear is in N, the engine switch can only be switched to the "ACC" mode, and it cannot be switched to "IG-OFF" mode, which can only be done when you manually switch to P before switching.

---

■ **If the engine does not start**

The engine immobilizer system may have not been deactivated. (→ P.63)

■ **When the engine "START STOP" switch indicator flashes**

There may be a problem with the system. Please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for a check of the vehicle.

■ **Smart key battery energy loss**

(→ P.98)

■ **When the smart key battery is low**

(→ P.381)

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

(→ P.98)


**CAUTIONS**
**■ When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. When starting the engine under any circumstances, do not depress the accelerator pedal, otherwise it may cause accidents, causing serious injuries or even death.

**■ Stopping the engine in an emergency**

When driving the vehicle, if you want to forcibly shut down the engine in case of emergency, press the engine switch for a long time until the engine stops.

Do not touch the engine switch while driving unless in an emergency. If the engine stops while driving, this could lead to an accident.


**NOTICES**
**■ Preventing low battery power**

- Do not place the engine switch in mode "ACC" or "IG-ON" mode for a long time without the engine running.
- When the driver leaves the vehicle, he/she should lock the vehicle and carry the smart key with him. Do not leave the smart key in the car to prevent the continuous operating of passive entry and the starting system, resulting in insufficient battery power.
- If the engine is stopped when the shift lever is placed in the gears other than P, the engine start switch will not turn off but will switch to the ACC mode. If the engine switch is in ACC mode, the battery may run out.

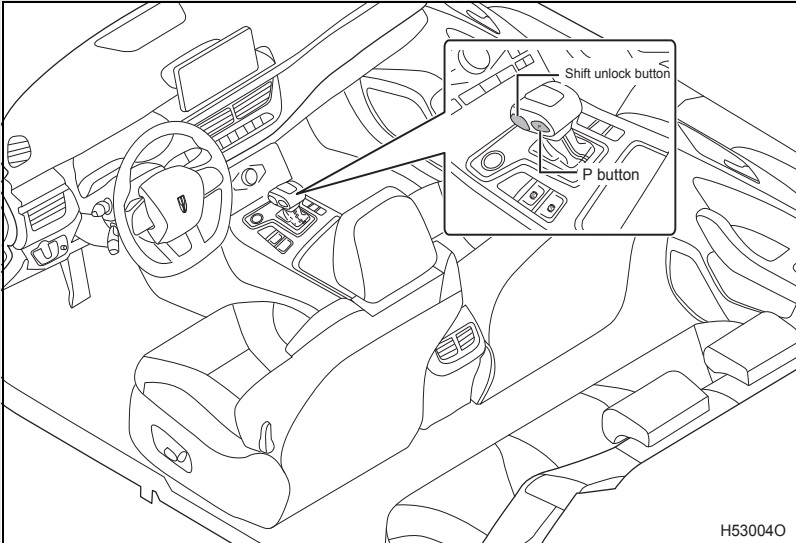
**■ When starting the engine**

- Do not make the cold engine run at high speeds.
- If the engine is difficult to start or flames out frequently, please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer to check the vehicle immediately.

## 4-2. Driving specifications

# Transmission

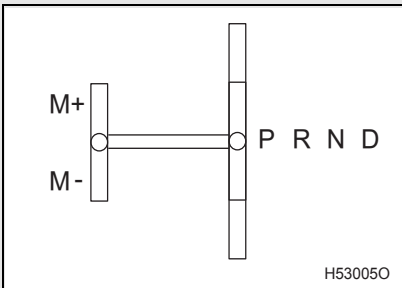
Select a gear position appropriate for driving conditions.



Operate the shift lever gently and make sure that the shifting operation is correct.

After each shift operation, release the shift lever to reset it.

### ■ Moving the shift lever



The right track is for the automatic mode, with two strokes in each side. The left track is for the manual mode, with one stroke in each side.

Move the shift lever left and right to switch between the left and right tracks, and only when the gear is in D, can it be switched to manual mode.

**Note:** If the shift lever is in a gear other than D, it cannot be shifted when the shift lever is in the manual position, you need to move the shift lever to the automatic position as prompted by the instrument cluster.

### ■ Gear shifting

When the engine started, shift gears as follows.

- P to D: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and move the shift lever down to the first or second stroke.
- P to N: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and move the shift lever up to the first stroke.
- P to R: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and move the shift lever up to the second stroke.
- N to D: When the vehicle is stationary, move the shift lever down to the first or second stroke\*.
- N to R: When the vehicle is stationary, press the unlock button and move the shift lever up to the first or second stroke\*.

\* : If the shift lever stays in N for longer than 1 second, you need to depress the brake pedal to shift gears. And if the shift lever stays in N less than 1 second, you do not need to depress the brake pedal to shift gears.

- D to N: Move the shift lever up to the first stroke.  
For the vehicles equipped with a 7-speed dual-clutch automatic transmission, it cannot shift when the vehicle speed is greater than 50km/h.  
For the vehicles equipped with a 6-speed automatic transmission, it cannot shift when the vehicle speed is greater than 60km/h.
- D to R: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle stops, press the unlock button, and move the shift lever up to the second stroke.
- D to M: Move the shift lever left to the left track.
- M to D: Move the shift lever right to the right track.
- R to N: Move the shift lever down to the first stroke.
- R to D: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle stops, and move the shift lever down to the second stroke.
- N/D/R to P: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle stops, and press the P button.

When selecting a gear, make sure that the desired gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

■ Gear functions

Gears	Functions
P	Parking
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Driving
M+	Manually up-shifting
M-	Manually down-shifting

Gear description

- ▶ Gear P (parking)  
The gear P can lock the transmission and prevent the wheels from turning.

 CAUTIONS

- **Operating the shift lever for the first time**  
The vehicle adopts an electronic shift mechanism, which needs to be operated according to the gear information displayed on the instrument cluster and the information display screen and the above gear operation instructions. Never perform the operations on the basis of sensory awareness to avoid danger.
- **Be sure to shift the gear to gear P and apply the parking brake**  
It is very dangerous to only shift the gear to P without applying the parking brake. If the gear P fails to completely hold the vehicle, it will move off, causing an accident.

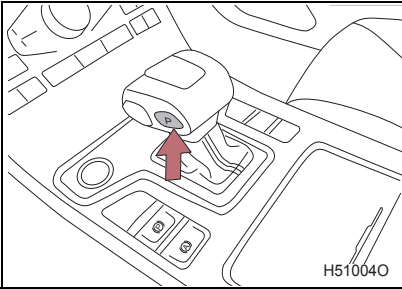
- ▶ Gear R (reverse)  
When the shift lever is in gear R, the vehicle can only move backwards.
- ▶ Gear N (neutral)  
When the shift lever is in gear N, the transmission is not locked. And thus, when parking on a gentle slope, please depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake, otherwise the vehicle will coast freely.
- ▶ Gear D (drive)  
Gear D is the gear usually used when driving, which controls the vehicle to move forward.

▶ Gear M (manual)

Gear M is a manual shift mode. You can shift to M only from gear D. When the gear is in D, move the shift lever left to enter the gear M range. By moving the shift lever, you can shift up or down between M1-M6/M7.

## P P button

■ When shifting to P



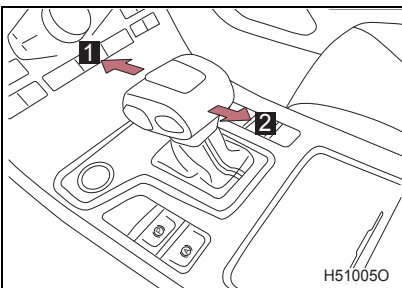
You may shift the gear to P by using the P button. When the vehicle is stationary, press the P button.

When shifting to P, the gear information is displayed as P on the instrument cluster. If the vehicle speed is higher than 3km/h, it will not be possible to shift to gear P.

■ When shifting from P to other gears

- Press the unlock button while firmly depressing the brake pedal to operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, the shift operation is prohibited.
- When shifting gears, make sure that the desired gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

## Shifting gears in manual mode



1 Up-shifting

2 Down-shifting

The selected gear will be displayed on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster.

- **If the current gear is D/R and the vehicle speed is less than 3km/h, the vehicle will automatically shift to P under the following conditions**
  - When the engine switch is pressed, the vehicle automatically shifts to gear P.
  - When the driver unfastens the seat belt, releases the brake pedal and opens the door, the vehicle automatically shifts to gear P.
- **If the current gear is N, press the engine switch and the vehicle still stays in N**

■ **Gear limit (in manual mode)**

In order to protect the engine and transmission, the gear will be limited during manual shifting according to the engine speed. Therefore, under certain operating conditions, it may not be possible to upshift or downshift even if the shift lever is operated, or automatically upshift or downshift even if the shift lever is not operated.

■ **Thermal mode**

When the transmission enters the thermal mode, it will reduce the number of gear shifting to slow down the increase in oil temperature. At this time, the engine speed will increase and the shifting smoothness may change slightly.

■ **When stopping the vehicle with the shift lever in M**

- Once the vehicle stops, the transmission will automatically downshift to M1 or M2.
- In gear M, you can select M1 or M2 to start.



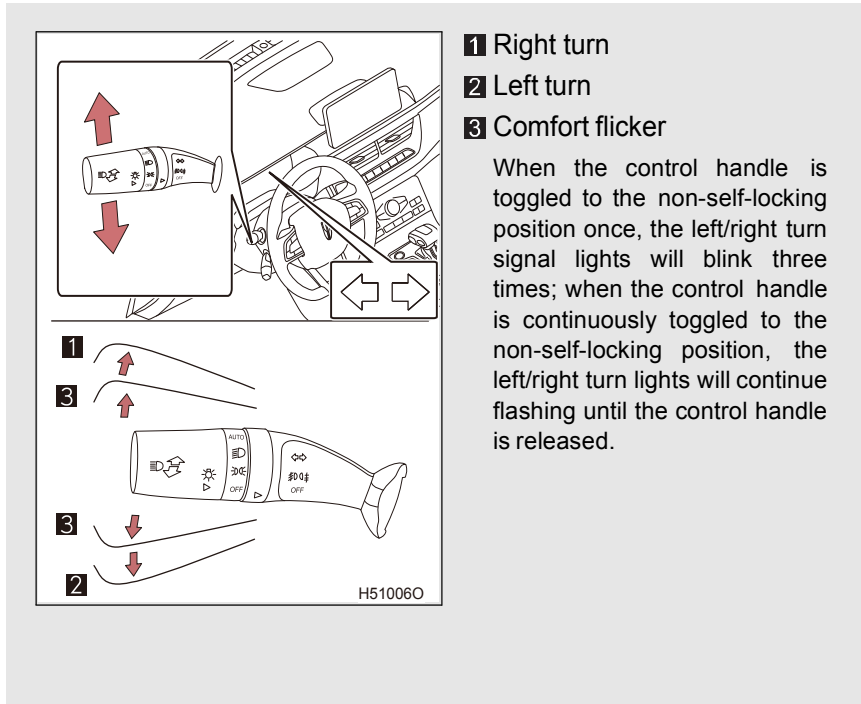
**CAUTIONS**

■ **When driving on slippery roads**

Be careful when accelerating and decelerating suddenly, otherwise it may cause the vehicle to skid or the wheels to spin

## 4-2. Driving specifications

### Turn signal light control handle



- 1** Right turn
- 2** Left turn
- 3** Comfort flicker

When the control handle is toggled to the non-self-locking position once, the left/right turn signal lights will blink three times; when the control handle is continuously toggled to the non-self-locking position, the left/right turn lights will continue flashing until the control handle is released.

#### ■ Turn signals can be operated when

The engine switch is placed in the "IG-ON" mode.

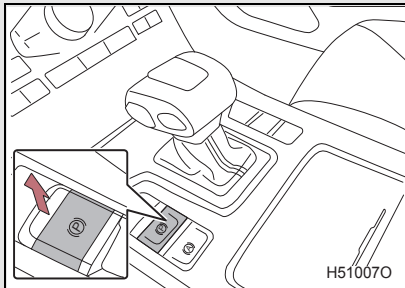
#### ■ Turn signal light and hazard warning lamp control

When the turn signal light is on, press the hazard warning lamp switch and the turn signal lights on the left and right sides will flash at the same time. Press the hazard warning lamp switch again to return to the working state as the turn signal lights.

When the hazard warning lamp is on and the engine switch is placed in the "IG-ON" mode, turn on the turn signal light and the turn signal light will work, and the hazard warning lamp will stop working. Turn off the turn signal lights and return to the working state as the danger alarm lights.

## 4-2. Driving specifications

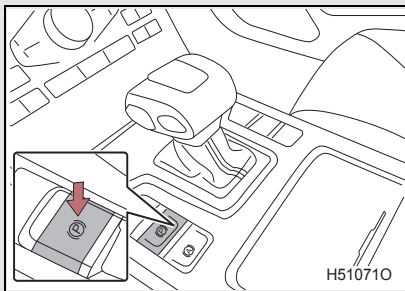
# EPB Electronic Parking Brake



Applying the EPB electronic parking brake (the indicator illuminating)

After depressing the brake pedal to confirm that the vehicle is stationary, lift the electronic parking brake switch upward and apply the electronic parking brake.

The system will automatically apply the electronic parking brake after the vehicle is parked and the engine is stopped.



Release the EPB electronic parking brake (the indicator off)

After the engine switch is placed in the "IG-ON" mode, depress the brake pedal and press the electronic parking brake switch to release the electronic parking brake.

### ■ Other functions of EPB

- Slope moving-off assist: When the electronic parking brake is applied, the driver fastens the seat belt, and when the vehicle moves off, the system will automatically release EPB according to the torque balance principle, so that the vehicle will not slide on the slope and start smoothly.
- Electronic deceleration control: When the vehicle is running, lift up the EPB switch and the vehicle will brake until it stops.



### NOTICES

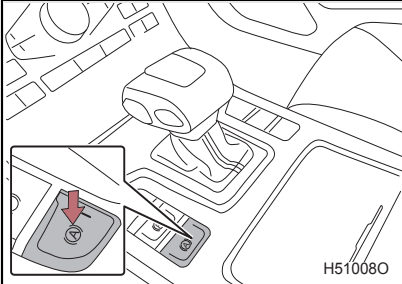
#### ■ Precautions before driving

- Release the electronic parking brake completely. In the event of a failure (e.g. an electrical failure), the rear brake disc locked by the EPB can only be unlocked mechanically. It is recommended that you contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for the operation.
- When the EPB is not released, the red indicator lights up. Driving the vehicle now will cause the brake components to overheat, which will affect the brake performance and aggravate the brake wear.
- If the road condition is not suitable for parking, the multi-function display of the combination instrument will prompt "Too steep to park".

## 4-2. Driving specifications

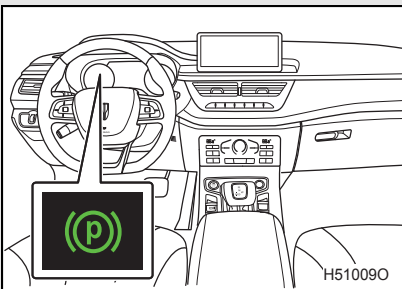
### Auto hold\*

When the Auto Hold function is ready, the automatic parking function will be activated when the brake pedal is depressed with the shift lever at D or N. Release the brake pedal, and the vehicle will remain braked. When the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever at D, the system will release the Auto Hold to realize a smooth move-off.



#### Auto Hold ready state

Press the Auto Hold button, and the Auto Hold function will be ready and the button indicator will light up.



#### Activating the Auto Hold

When you depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and release the brake pedal afterwards, the Auto Hold will be activated. At this time, the Auto Hold indicator lights up on the multi-function display of the combination instrument.

#### ■ Auto Hold\*

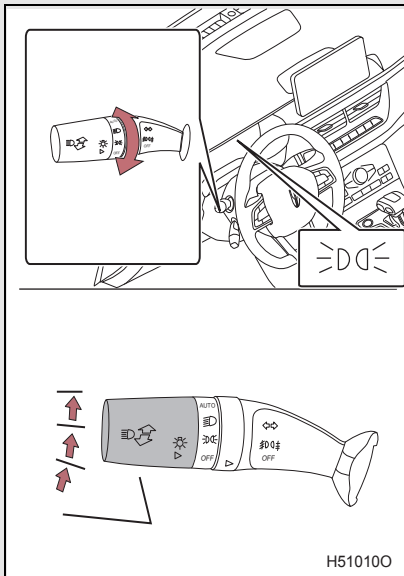
- Step down the brake pedal and press the Auto Hold button again to turn off the Auto Hold function of the vehicle.
- The automatic vehicle hold function may not stop the vehicle when on a steep slope. In that case it is necessary to apply manual braking.
- Auto Hold can also serve as a slope moving-off assist function.



#### ■ Operating conditions

Conditions for activating the Auto Hold:

- Close all doors.
- Driver wears the belt.
- Start the vehicle and press the Auto Hold.
- Driver depresses the brake pedal until the vehicle is stopped, and then releases the brake pedal.

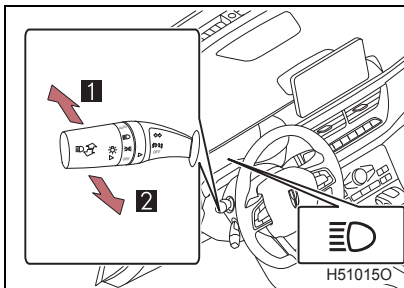
## 4-3. Operating lights and wipers Headlight switch



-  Front position light, rear position light, license plate lights and dash panel backlights illuminate.
-  Headlights (dipped beam) and all the above lights illuminate.
- AUTO** Headlights (dipped beam) and position lights and license plate lights automatically turn on and off (engine switch at "IG-ON").
- OFF** Daytime running lights illuminate.

Note: when the switch is at Auto, if headlights, position lights and license plate lights are off, the daytime running lights will turn on.

### Turning on the high beam

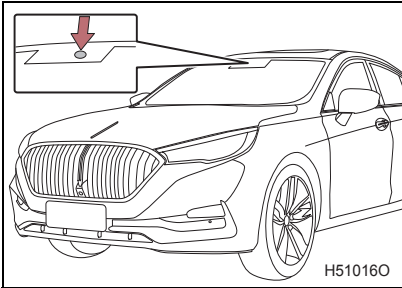


- 1** When the headlight (dipped beam) is turned on, push the light control handle forward to turn on the high beam; Pull the handle back to its original position to turn off the high beam.
- 2** Pull backward the light control handle to turn on the high beam; Releasing the light control handle to turn off the high beam, thus realizing the "light horn" function.

#### ■ Daytime running light system

During daytime driving, in order to make it easier for other drivers to see your car, as long as the engine is started and the position light is turned off, the daytime driving light will automatically turn on.

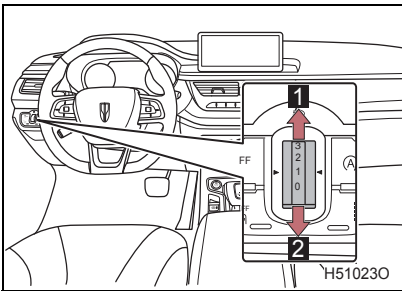
### ■ Rain & light sensor



The sensor may not function properly if an object blocks the sensor, or anything affixed to the windshield blocks the sensor. Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the ambient light intensity and may cause the automatic headlight system and automatic wiper malfunctions.

### ■ Headlight beam height control system

After turning on the headlight, the headlight beam height (Level 0 -4) can be adjusted according to the number of passengers and the load of the vehicle.



- 1 Turn up the headlight beam.
- 2 Turn down the headlight beam.

### Coming home mode

The engine switch is in the IG-ON mode and the low beam is illuminated. At this time, the doors are locked after switching to the IG-OFF mode, and the light continues to illuminate for a period of time and then automatically goes out.

It can be set in the “Coming Home Mode” of the multi-function display of the combination instrument. ( → P.77)

### Leaving home mode

The engine switch is in the IG-ON mode and the low beam is illuminated. At this time, the doors are locked after switching to the IG-OFF mode, and the light continues to illuminate for a period of time and then automatically goes out when unlocking the doors again.

It can be set in the “Leaving Home Mode” of the multi-function display of the combination instrument. ( → P.77)

### Corner lights\*



When steering, the front fog light on the steering side will be lit up to expand the illumination range.

■ Operating conditions of corner light \*

- The left/right corner lights will illuminate when all of the following conditions are met:
  - The engine switch is placed in the IG-ON mode.
  - The front fog light is off.
  - The dipped beam is on.
  - Toggle the left/right turn signal control handle or turn the steering wheel.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 40km/h.
- The left/right corner lights will go out when one of the following conditions are met:
  - The engine switch is placed in the IG-OFF mode or the ACC mode.
  - The front fog light is on (via fog light switch).
  - The dipped beam is off.
  - Left/right turn signal control handle is reset or the steering wheel is back to its original position.
  - The vehicle speed is higher than 40km / h.
- The left/right corner lights will illuminate simultaneously when all of the following conditions are met:
  - The engine switch is placed in the IG-ON mode.
  - The front fog light is off.
  - The dipped beam light is on.
  - The shift lever is at R.

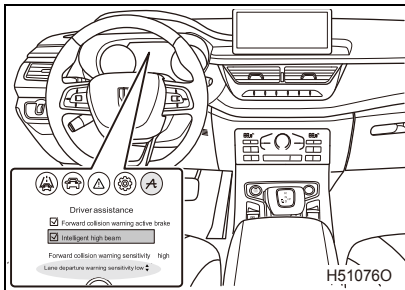
## 4-3. Operating lights and wipers

# IHC intelligent high beam control\*

The intelligent high beam control system can automatically turn on and off the high beam according to the judgement of the multifunctional camera. When the vehicle speed is greater than 40km/h, the intelligent high-beam control is activated, and the intelligent high-beam indicator of the combination instrument lights up  ; When the vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h, the intelligent high-beam control stands by and the intelligent  high-beam indicator goes out.

### IHC On and Off\*

It can be set to turn on and off the intelligent high beam in the driver assist systems via the multi-function display of the combination instrument. (→P.79)



Select this option to switch on the IHC function.

The system automatically turns on each time the engine switch is switched to the IG-ON mode.

### Operating conditions of IHC

Start the engine, place the headlight switch to AUTO, the high beam switch handle to High Beam Off, and the automatic light control turns the dipped beam on, then the IHC system is started.

Conditions under which the high beam is automatically turned on or off

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beam will automatically turn on:
  - The vehicle speed is higher than 40 km/h.
  - The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
  - There is a car in front without headlights completely on or tail lights completely on.

- Few street lights are turned on ahead.
- When any one of the following conditions are met, the high beam will automatically turn off:
  - The vehicle speed is lower than 25 km/h.
  - The area in front of the vehicle is not dark.
  - There is a car ahead with its headlights completely on or tail lights completely on.
  - A number of street lights are turned on ahead.
- Under the following circumstances, the system may not be able to accurately detect the ambient brightness level, which may cause the intelligent high-beam control system not to work properly. In this case, please switch between high beam and dipped beam manually.
  - The windshield is blurred by moisture, ice, dirt, etc.
  - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
  - Due to fog, heavy rain, snow and other reasons, the horizon ahead is not clear.
  - The camera becomes deformed or dirty.
  - The camera temperature is extremely high.
  - The ambient brightness is equivalent to the brightness of the headlight, tail light or fog light.
  - Headlights or taillights of the front vehicle are off, dirty, decolored, incorrect in alignment, or there is only one bulb working.
  - When driving through an area with intermittent changes in brightness.
  - Frequent or repeated driving on uphill and downhill roads, bumpy roads or uneven roads (e.g. stone paved roads, gravel roads, etc.).
  - Frequent or repeated turning operations or driving on winding roads.
  - There is a highly reflective object, such as a sign or mirror, in front of the vehicle.
  - The back end of the vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
  - The headlight of the vehicle is damaged, dirty, or misaligned.
  - When the opposite car turns off its headlights and turns on the fog lights.
  - The vehicle tilts due to flat tires, towing a trailer, etc.
  - The high beam and the low beam are repeatedly switched in an abnormal way.
  - There is a light in front of the vehicle similar to a headlight or taillight.

- When there is light reflection on the road such as wet, snow and ice roads.



### CAUTIONS

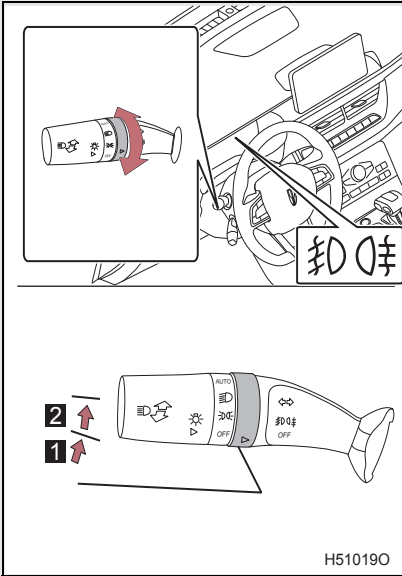
#### ■ Limitations of automatic high beam

Don't rely on automatic high beam. Be sure to drive safely and observe the surrounding environment. If necessary, turn the high beam on or off manually.

## 4-3. Operating lights and wipers

### Fog light switch

The fog lights improve visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in the rain and fog.



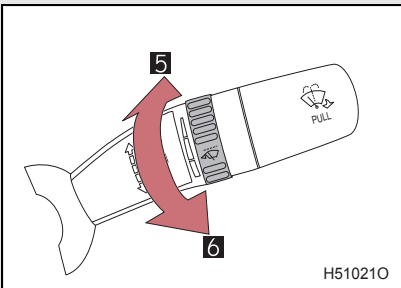
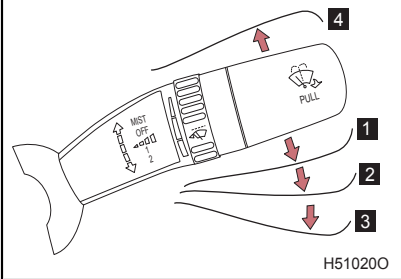
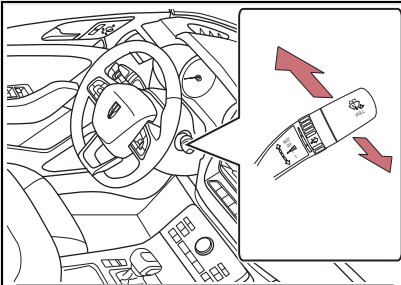
- 1 Turn off
- 2 Turning on both front and rear fog lights

#### ■ Operating conditions of fog lights

The engine switch is placed in the IG-ON mode, and the headlights are turned on.

## 4-3. Operating lights and wipers Front windshield wiper and washer

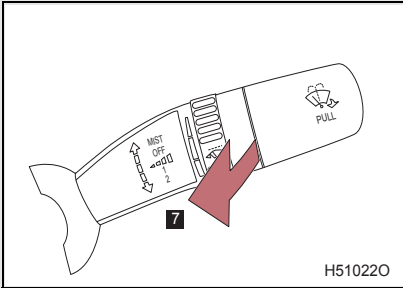
When the wiper control handle is at Auto, if the rain is detected by the light & rain sensor, the wiper will automatically function. The system automatically adjusts the wiper speed according to rain volume and vehicle speed.



- 1 Auto - automatically adjusts the wiper speed based on rainfall.
- 2 Position 1- low speed.
- 3 Position 2- high speed.
- 4 MIST- one wiping cycle at low speed.

When the hood is opened, the wipers will not operate even if the control lever is pulled manually.

- 5 Rain sensing sensitivity. (the automatic wiping interval becomes shorter)
- 6 Rain sensing sensitivity. (the automatic wiping interval becomes longer)

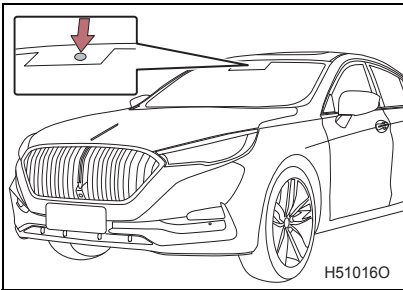


- 7** Cleaning/wiping operation. Pull back the wiper control lever for cleaning the front windshield.

■ **Operating conditions of front windshield wiper and washer**

The engine switch is placed in the IG-ON mode.

■ **Light & rain sensor**



The light & rain sensor identifies the amount of rain.

■ **AUTO mode**

Switch the wiper switch to AUTO when the engine switch is placed in the IG-On mode.

■ **Windshield cleaning**

The wiper arm is integrated with a washer nozzle. In order to prevent sight obstruction and save washer liquid, only a section of the wiper will spray water during the movement.

■ **Windshield heating**

The electrically heated windshield can heat the wiper stop area.

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprayed out**

Check if there is wash fluid in the windshield washer fluid tank.

Check and confirm if the washer nozzle is not blocked.



### CAUTIONS

■ **Warnings regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode**

At the AUTO mode, if you touch the sensor, forcibly pull the interior rearview mirror, or the windshield bears strong shake (for example, by forcibly striking the windshield), the windshield wiper may accidentally move. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become pinched in the windshield wipers.



### NOTICES

■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ **If no washer fluid sprays from the nozzle**

It may cause damage to the washer fluid pump if the lever is pulled and held toward you.

■ **When a nozzle blocked**

Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

## 4-4. Fuel filling

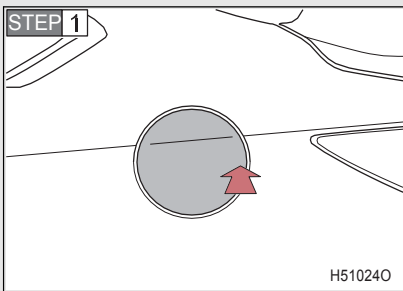
### Opening the fuel tank lid

**Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank lid.**

■ **Before filling fuel**

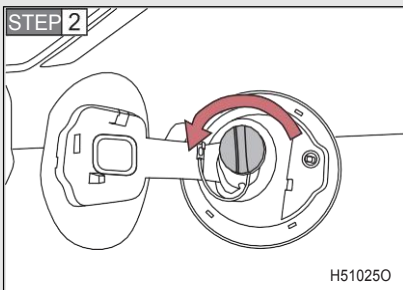
Depress the brake pedal, place the shift lever to the P position, apply parking brake, close the engine switch, and ensure that all doors and windows are closed.

■ **Opening the filler cap.**

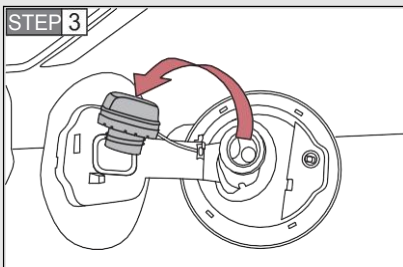


Press the filler cap and open it.

The filler cap can only be opened when the entire vehicle lock is unlocked.

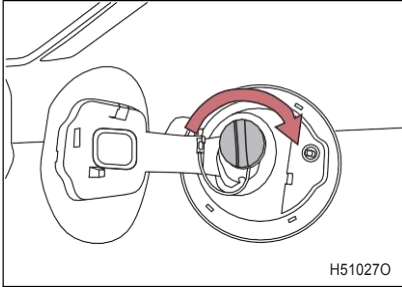


Turn counterclockwise to open the fuel tank lid.



Hang the fuel tank lid on the back of the filler cap.

## Closing the fuel tank lid



When reinstalling the fuel tank lid, it should be screwed until you hear a “click” sound.

### ■ Fuel type

Use only RON 95 and above unleaded petrol.

### ■ Fuel tank capacity

About 58L.

### ■ When failing to open the filler cap.

In the event of failure to open the filler cap due to low battery power or other reasons, please contact the FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Filling fuel

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle:

- Before opening the filler cap and the fuel tank lid, discharge any static electricity from your body. The sparks resulting from static electricity may cause fire resulting in burns.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- When opening the fuel tank lid, hold tight the lid and turn it slowly to remove it. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound vanishes before removing the cap.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel because the fuel contains harmful substances.
- Do not smoke or use cell phone while refueling the vehicle, or else it may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not touch other people or objects with static electricity, otherwise it may cause static electricity to accumulate and ignite the fuel.
- Observe all CAUTIONS announced in the gas station.

### ■ Precautions when replacing the fuel tank lid

Do not use products other than the original fuel tank lid provided by FAW, otherwise it may lead to poor sealing and further resulting in accidents.



## NOTICES

### ■ Filling fuel

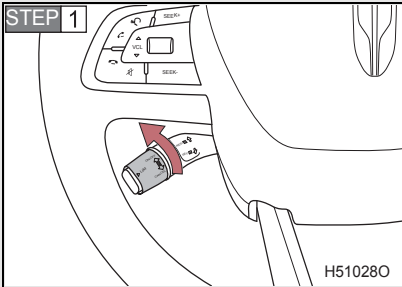
When filling, do not spill the fuel, otherwise it may damage the vehicle, for example, causing the exhaust system failure or damaging the fuel system components or body paint.

## 4-5.Using other driving systems

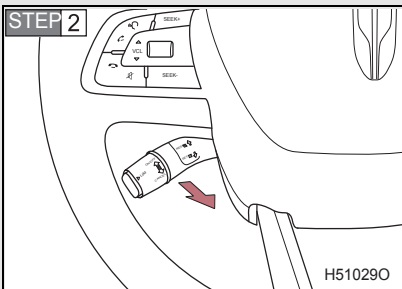
### Constant speed cruise control\*

Use the constant speed cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal. The maximum set speed is no greater than 180km/h. ).

#### ■ Setting the vehicle speed

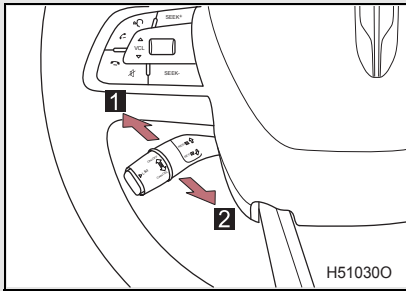


Turn the control lever counterclockwise and then release it to activate the cruise control. The cruise control indicator light is lit.



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed, and press the lever down and then release to set the speed.

### ■ Adjusting the vehicle speed

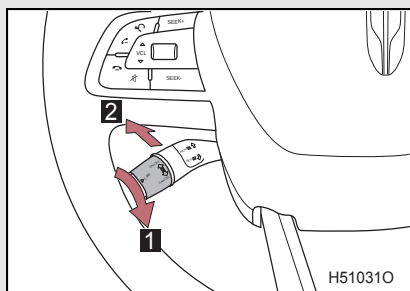


**1** Increasing the speed  
Short push once to increase the speed by 5 km/h.  
Long pushing the lever increases the vehicle speed rapidly. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is the target speed.

**2** Decreasing the speed  
Short push once to decrease the speed by 5 km/h.  
Long pushing the lever reduces the vehicle speed rapidly. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is the target speed.

Note: If the current set speed is not the multiple of 5, it automatically becomes a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

### ■ Cancelling and resuming the constant speed control



- 1 Cancel**  
Turn the control lever clockwise and then release it to cancel the cruise control. The cruise control could also be cancelled when
  - The brake pedal is depressed.
  - The shift lever is shifted to N.

### ■ Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h.

### ■ If the cruise control indicator light flashes

Deactivate the constant speed cruise function, and then reactivate it again. If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have your vehicle checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D.
- Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h.

■ **If the cruise control indicator light flashes**

Deactivate the constant speed cruise function, and then reactivate it again. If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have your vehicle checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



**CAUTIONS**

■ **To avoid activating the cruise control by mistake**

If this function is disabled, the cruise control system (CCS) is deactivated.

■ **When adjusting the speed**

Drive with caution when long pressing cruise control lever to adjust the speed.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills

■ **The driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the constant speed cruise control system. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals while in constant speed cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle.**

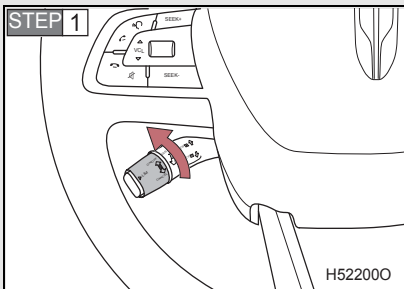
■ **The constant speed cruise control system is only a driving assist system. Do not depend on it more than necessary. Drive with caution if necessary.**

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Function\*

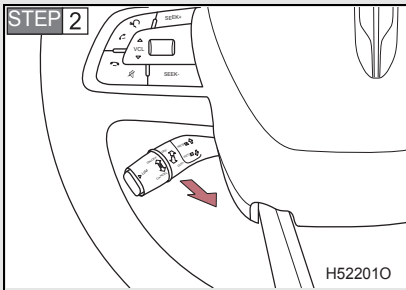
**ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) can comprehensively control speed and distance of target vehicle to lighten the burdens and increase the comfortableness of the driver within a speed range of 30~140km/h. In addition, the system can also automatically switch between CCS and ACC (Adaptive Control System) depending on whether there is a moving vehicle in front. Due to complicated actual driving environments, under certain circumstances the driver can intervene at any time as required, actively control the distance with the target vehicle. If necessary ACC will remind the driver by sound and light warning.**

When ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) detects that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance becomes shorter than the set value, the vehicle automatically decelerates; when the vehicles ahead accelerate or drive away, the vehicle accelerates to the set cruise speed.

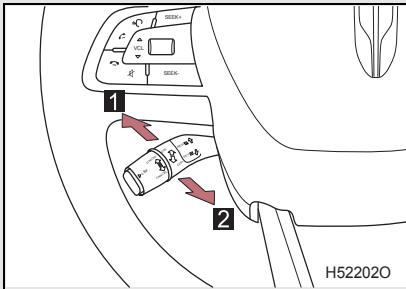
### ■ Setting the vehicle speed



Rotate the control lever counterclockwise to the ON/OFF position and then release it to activate the ACC function. As a result, the ACC indicator light is lit. Turn the control lever to the ON/OFF position and then release it again to cancel the ACC function. As a result, the ACC indicator light goes out.



### ■ Adjusting the vehicle speed



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed, and press the lever down to SET-position and then release to set the speed.

#### 1 Increasing the speed

Short pushing: Pushing the lever once increases the speed by 5 km/h.

(km/h);

Long pushing: After the system confirms the long pushing is valid, the speed continues to increase by 1 km/h.

#### 2 Decreasing the speed

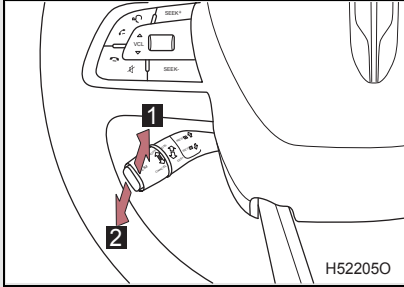
Short pushing: Pushing the lever once decreases the speed by 5 km/h.

(km/h);

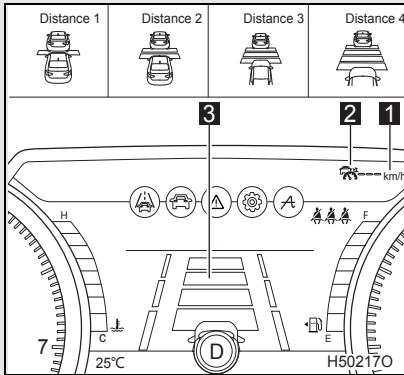
Long pushing: After the system confirms the long pushing is valid, the speed continues to decrease by 1 km/h.

Note: If the currently set vehicle speed does not meet the multiple of 5 in the case of short pushing, the speed will automatically become a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

■ Setting the following distance

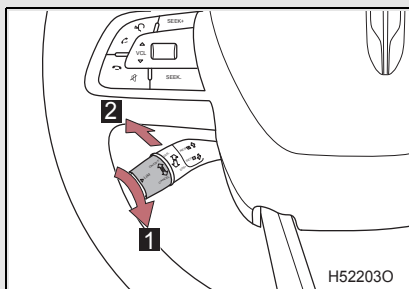


- 1 Increasing headway
  - 2 Decreasing Headway
- The system offers 4 distance modes. The mode changes each time the lever is pulled.



- 1 The set cruise speed
  - 2 ACC activation symbol
  - 3 The set following distance
- The default following distance is "Distance 4".

### ■ Cancelling and resuming ACC



- 1** **Cancel**  
Rotate the control lever clockwise to the CANCEL position and then release it to cancel ACC.
- 2** **Resume**  
To resume the cruise control and return to the set speed, push the lever up to "RES/+" position and then release. When the vehicle speed is above 5km/h, resetting operation is valid. The system uses the previously set speed to resume ACC.

### ■ Noise of ACC automatic deceleration

It is normal that noise will be generated when the ACC is applying automatic deceleration.

### ■ Headway

The default headway is "Distance 4".

### ■ Cruise control can be set when

- ESC function is activated.
- Close all the doors, hood and trunk lid.
- Driver wears the belt.
- Shift lever is in D.
- Vehicle speed is above 30 km/h.
- The brake pedal is not depressed by the driver.

### ■ Conditions for cancelling ACC

ACC is canceled directly when:

- The driver sets the ACC lever to CANCEL position.
- The driver depresses the brake pedal or apply the electronic parking brake.

ACC is canceled indirectly when:

- The driver opens any door, hood or trunk lid.
- The driver unfasten the seat belt.
- The shift lever is moved to the position other than D.
- ESC/TCS/ABS is activated.
- EPB is activated.
- Semi-automatic parking function is activated.
- The system detects the vehicle is rolling backwards.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal all the way down (more than 90%).
- The front target followed by your vehicle is lost abnormally.
- Your vehicle has parked for 3 minutes and above.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 140 km/h.

One of the above indirect operations will cause cancellation of ACC. As a result, the combination instrument will give the prompt message "ACC Has Been Cancelled".

### ■ **ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) malfunctions**

Have the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer check the vehicle if a malfunction has occurred.

### ■ **After turning the IGNITION switch OFF**

When turning the IGNITION switch OFF, the set cruise speed or headway will be deleted.

### ■ **Adjusting or calibrating ACC system**

Adjust or calibrate the ACC in the following situations. Otherwise ACC may not function properly.

- Front windscreen is damaged or replaced.
- Remove and install the multifunctional camera unit.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

**CAUTIONS****■ To avoid activating the ACC system by mistake**

If this function is deactivated, ACC is cancelled.

**■ Situations unsuitable for adaptive cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic.
- When in more complex road conditions.
- On roads with sharp bends.
- On winding roads.
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
- On steep hills.
- Static obstruction is in the front of the driving vehicle.
- Snow, rain, ice, fog and other weather.
- When the road lighting is insufficient at night.

**■ Driver is the leading operator of the vehicle, who is superior to the adaptive cruise control. When the driver depresses the accelerator and brake pedals in cruise state, the driver will control the vehicle. The driver shall maintain the control to the vehicle and bear full responsibility.****■ ACC is only a driving assist system. If necessary, the driver shall immediately cancel ACC and drive independently. Observe local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions when using ACC.****■ ACC may malfunction if the front windscreen is modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment.****■ Make sure to turn ACC OFF if leaving the driver seat for an extended period of time to avoid an accident.****■ When following the target vehicle, ACC mainly controls the headway. The actual speed may be lower than the set cruise speed.****■ If ACC is activated, when your vehicle is too close to the preceding vehicle (for example, due to emergency braking of the preceding vehicle), the system will send a sound and light alarm message to you through the combination instrument. As a result, you should pay attention to the inter-vehicle distance and control your vehicle.**



## CAUTIONS

- It is normal that the cruise speed icon displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display (MFD) flashes when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal.
- ACC may lose or misrecognize the target vehicle when the vehicle is in bends, lane-changing or when the front vehicle stops.
- Exercise greater caution to drive since the ACC cannot detect other sides, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects but rear of the vehicle or apply the brakes.
- Due to the ACC's limited braking capacity, there may be no time to decelerate to avoid collision with the vehicle ahead. This may happen when the vehicle ahead suddenly slows down, stops or enters your lane. In case of danger, please depress the brake pedal for braking actively.
- Focus all of your attention on driving and get ready to take actions and to apply the brakes.
- You need to adjust the safe interval and set the ACC system reasonably according to the front traffic volume and the current weather conditions (e.g., rain and snow). Whenever, you need to ensure that your vehicle can be decelerated to standstill within your field of vision.
- ACC can only identify the motor vehicles (such as cars and trucks) that are installed with legal license plates and allowed to travel on highways. If the preceding vehicle is irregular in shape, modified and/or covered by painting, it may not be identified by the ACC, and the pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) may not be identified, either. In this case, you should get ready to control your vehicle according to the actual situation.
- The ACC system cannot accurately determine the width of the front lane that can be passed. Therefore, when the lane in front of your vehicle's moving direction becomes narrow and you feel your vehicle cannot pass it normally, you should deactivate the ACC system immediately through braking intervention and control the vehicle by yourself.
- Do not activate ACC on a long steep slope. ACC may not detect the vehicle ahead in the same lane on a long steep slope. You usually need to control the acceleration and braking of your vehicle by yourself on a long steep slope. If the brakes are applied, ACC is cancelled.

**CAUTIONS**

- The preceding vehicle icon on the combination instrument will be displayed if the vehicle travelling in the same direction on the same lane is detected. If the icon display does not match the actually observed situation, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle and driving it based on the actual situation.
- If you rest your foot on the accelerator pedal, ACC may not automatically apply the brakes, resulting in a collision with the preceding vehicle. In this case, exercise extreme caution.
- If a vehicle in the adjacent lanes enters the front of the direction in which your vehicle moving but it is not covered by the sensor monitoring area, the sensor may not detect it, resulting in sluggish response of ACC. Pay close attention to the vehicle movement in the adjacent lanes. Control your vehicle actively if necessary.
- If the preceding vehicle's brakes are applied suddenly (emergency stop), the ACC may not respond at all or may respond slowly to the preceding vehicle, resulting in a risk of late braking. In this case, you may not receive a request of controlling your vehicle. Exercise extreme caution and control your vehicle actively if necessary.

 **NOTICES**

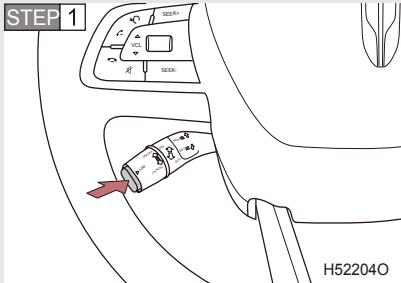
- **ACC will maintain the preset distance to follow the target object. ACC will automatically stop the vehicle if the target vehicle decelerates or stops.**
- **The vehicle will automatically start under the control of ACC if the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane within 3s after stopping.**
- **If the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after 3s yet within 3 min after stopping, the instrument cluster MFD will remind the driver to resume cruise. The driver can gently depress the accelerator pedal or pull cruise control lever to RES+ to resume ACC function, so as to achieve the vehicle automatic starting.**
- **ACC will automatically be cancelled if the vehicle stops for over 3 min.**
- **The ACC cannot stop your vehicle for a long time. Do not leave your vehicle while the ACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Be sure to shift the selector lever in the P position before leaving your vehicle.**
- **Observe the following precautions when cornering with the ACC activated:**
  - **In a sharp corner, the ACC may be cancelled or limit the vehicle speed.**
  - **On a curve, the ACC may respond to the vehicle in another lane or may not have time to respond to the vehicle in the same lane. Your vehicle may collide with the vehicle ahead or may be uncontrolled. Especially when driving in a ramp, the vehicle may be accelerated since the sensor loses its target due to an excessive curve. Exercise extreme caution on a curve and get ready to apply the brakes if necessary. When driving on a curve, choose the right vehicle speed.**
- **When your vehicle follows the preceding vehicle to pass through the intersection with traffic lights, observe the change of the traffic lights and intervene actively if necessary to avoid violating the traffic rules.**
- **When driving in heavy fog, rain, snow or other weather conditions, or there is frost and/or dirty trace in the multi-function camera window area, or when your vehicle is moving in the direction toward the sun (or strong light source), the "ACC Has Been Cancelled due to Unsatisfied External Conditions" prompt may appear on the combination instrument due to limited visual field of the multifunctional camera. As a result, the ACC cannot work.**

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

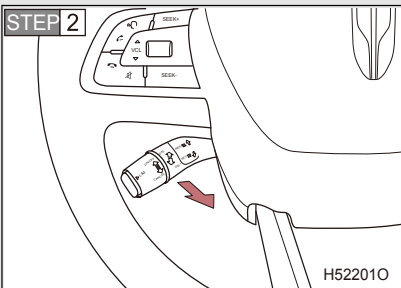
### LIM (Limited System)\*

The vehicle can maintain a set speed with the accelerator pedal depressed after setting the active limit speed. The maximum set speed is no greater than 130km/h.

- Setting the vehicle speed

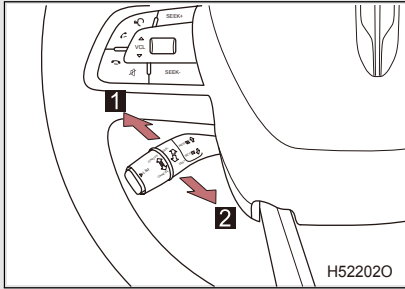


If the LIM button is pressed, the LIM indicator light on the combination instrument is lit. If it is pressed again, the LIM is deactivated and the LIM indicator light goes out.



Accelerate or decelerate to the desired speed, and press the lever down and then release to set the limit speed.

### ■ Adjusting the vehicle speed

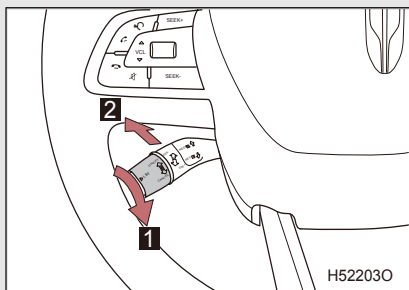


**1** Increase the limited speed  
Short push once to increase the speed by 5km/h.  
Long pushing the lever increases the vehicle speed rapidly. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is the limit speed.

**2** Decrease the limited speed  
Short push once to decrease the speed by 5km/h.  
Long pushing the lever reduces the vehicle speed rapidly. If the lever is released, the speed shown on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is the limit speed.

**Note:** If the currently set vehicle speed does not meet the multiple of 5 in the case of short pushing, the speed will automatically become a multiple of 5 first when adjusting.

### ■ Cancel and resume LIM



#### 1 Cancel

Turn the control lever clockwise and then release it to cancel the LIM.

#### 2 Resume

Turn the control lever upwards to resume the LIM.

If the current vehicle speed is higher than the previous setg value, the LIM cannot be resumed.

### ■ Fine adjusting the set speed

Fine adjustment of the set speed can be made by lightly pushing the lever up or down and releasing it immediately (increasing or decreasing the speed by 5 km/h).

### ■ Setting conditions for LIM system

- Vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h.
- Vehicle speed is less than 130 km/h.



### NOTICES

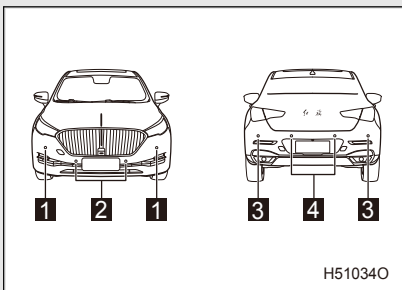
- If the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way down to the end, the vehicle will no longer be constrained by the LIM but accelerate normally. If the vehicle is decelerated to the set speed, the LIM is automatically resumed. The LIM system won't be cancelled during operation.
- Under special conditions (e.g., going downhill), if the vehicle speed exceeds the set value, the LIM is kept.
- The LIM and the ACC or CCS cannot be activated simultaneously. The other function is allowed to be activated only if the current function is deactivated.
- If there is a trouble in the LIM, the MIL will not be lit. If failure to activate any function is detected, contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer .
- You are the most important controller of your vehicle. The LIM system is only a driving assistance system. You should control your vehicle based on the actual road conditions and drive it with caution.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Front and rear parking radar\*

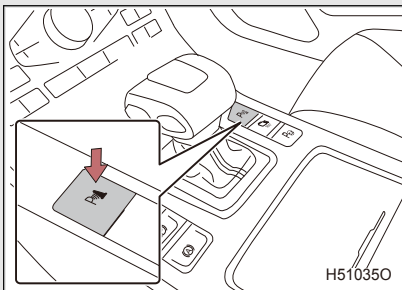
The front and rear parking radar system comprises controller and ultrasonic sensor. The ultrasonic sensor can measure the distance between the vehicle and the obstructions. The audio speaker sounds with various frequencies according to the distance changes of the obstructions in the detection area. Meanwhile, the audio MFD will display the distance and direction of the obstruction. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

- Sensor types



- 1 Front side radar sensor
- 2 Front middle radar sensor
- 3 Rear side radar sensor
- 4 Rear middle radar sensor

- Parking Distance Control (PDC) button

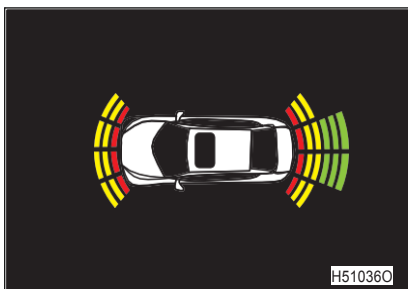


If the Parking Distance Control (PDC) button is pressed, the indicator light on the button is lit and the front PDC is activated. If the PDC button is pressed again, the indicator light on the button goes out and the PDC is deactivated.

- If the selector lever is shifted to the R position, the PDC is activated. At the moment, pressing the PDC button deactivates the PDC for the vehicles equipped with PDC button.
- If the PDC is activated and the selector lever is set in the R position, the PDC is deactivated when the vehicle speed is higher than 12 km/h, and the PDC is activated again when the vehicle speed is lower than 8 km/h. If the selector lever is set in a position other than R, and the vehicle speed is higher than 12 km/h, the PDC is deactivated and cannot be automatically resumed.

## Display

- When the obstruction is detected



If the PDC sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the multimedia display screen according to the obstacle position and the distance from the obstacle.

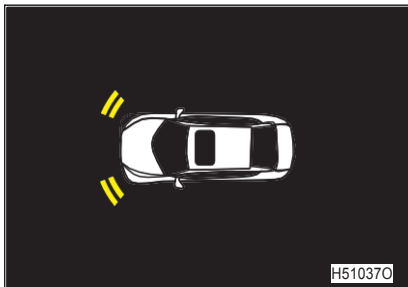
The slow-driving zone, warning zone and danger zone are displayed in green, yellow and red, respectively.

## Obstacle distance alarm

If an obstacle is detected, the color bar corresponding to the sensor will continue to be lit.

The parking information displayed on the multimedia display screen with the selector lever in R is different from that with the selector lever in the other gear position, but their display principle is the same. The following is an example of the parking information displayed on the multimedia display screen when the selector lever is set in a gear position other than R.

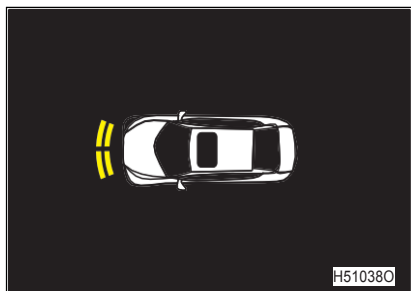
- Information display on parking warning area for front side radar sensors



$35 \text{ cm} < \text{distance to obstacle} \leq 60 \text{ cm}$

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a discontinuous harsh warning.

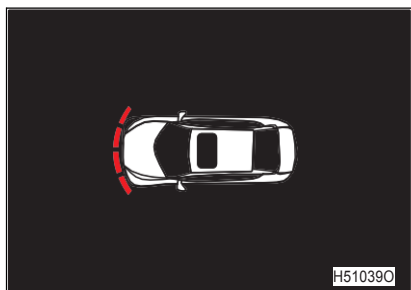
- Information display on parking warning zone for front center sensor



$35\text{ cm} < \text{distance to obstacle} \leq 90\text{ cm}$

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a discontinuous harsh warning.

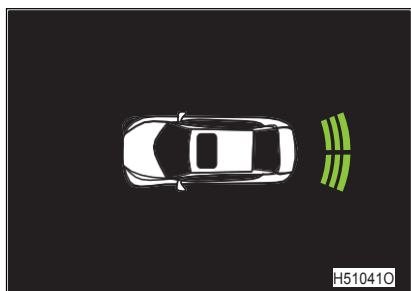
- Information display on parking danger zone for front sensor



$\text{Distance to obstacle} \leq 35\text{ cm}$

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the red color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning.

- Information display on parking slow-driving zone for rearsensor



$90\text{ cm} < \text{distance to obstacle} \leq 150\text{ cm}$

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the green color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a discontinuous soft warning.

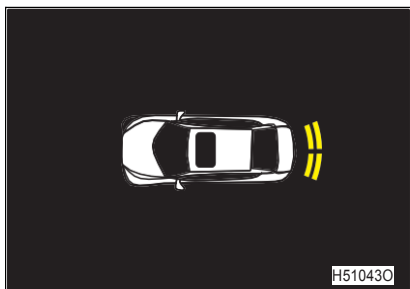
■ Information display on parking warning zone for rear side sensor



$35\text{ cm} < \text{distance to obstacle} \leq 60\text{ cm}$

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a discontinuous harsh warning.

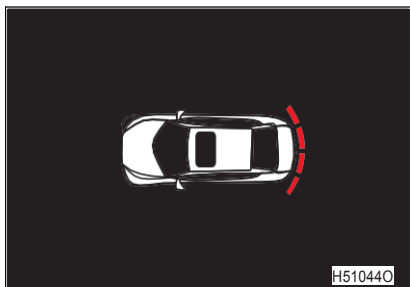
■ Information display for parking warning zone for rear center sensor



$35\text{ cm} < \text{distance to obstacle} \leq 90\text{ cm}$

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the yellow color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a discontinuous harsh warning.

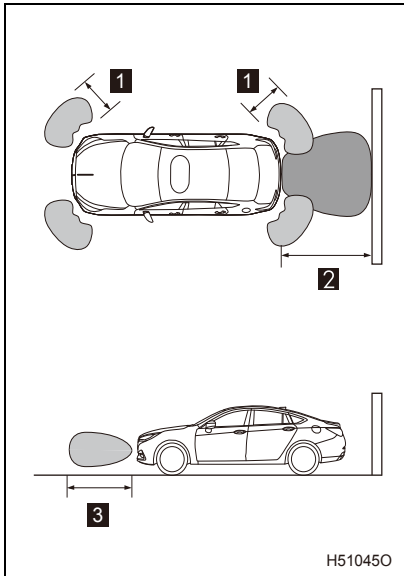
■ Information display on parking hazard zone for rearsensor



$\text{Distance to obstacle} \leq 35\text{ cm}$

If an obstacle is detected in this range, the red color bar on the multimedia display is lit and the speakers sound a warning.

**Longest distance detected by the sensor**



- 1** About 60cm
- 2** About 150cm
- 3** About 90cm

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. (Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.)

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the obstacle.

**■ Sensor detection information**

- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. For example:
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor.
  - A sensor is covered in any way.
  - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
  - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
  - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity, and the sensor of this vehicle is in working.
- The vehicle is equipped with fender antenna pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or bended curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Watch out the following obstacles especially:
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Sharply-angled objects
  - Low obstacles
  - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

#### ■ **Speaker sound alert**

- One of the systems detect obstacles.

If two or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the speakers respond according to the nearest obstacle. If the obstacle appears in front, the front speaker will sound a warning. Otherwise, the rear speaker will sound a warning.

- Front and rear systems detect obstacles.

If the front obstacle is nearer, the front speaker will alarm. Otherwise, the rear speaker will alarm. If the obstacles detected by the front and rear systems are all in the danger zone, the front and rear speakers alternately sound a warning.

- Speaker sound alert OFF

- If the EPB is activated, the sound alert will be turned off.

- If the PDC is activated, when the system detects that the relative position of distance to the obstacle no longer changes (the position of the obstacle is non-hazardous zone), the system will turn off the sound alert after 6 seconds, but the image warns only. If the system detects the distance to the obstacle changes again, the sound alert starts warning again.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Precautions when using the rear parking radar

Observe the following cautions to avoid accidents:

- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.
- The Park Distance Control is only one driving assist system. Do not depend on it more than necessary. Drive with caution. If necessary, intervene actively to avoid danger.



### NOTICES

#### ■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area. Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Rear view camera system\*

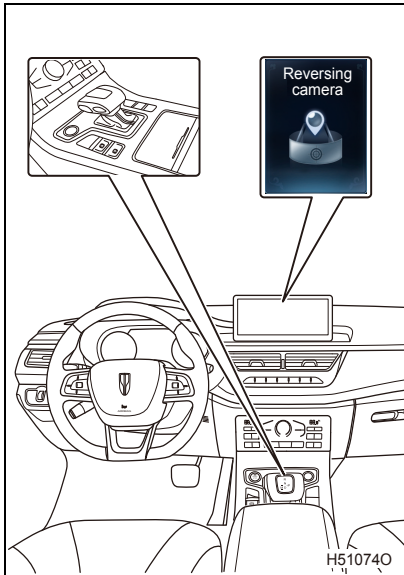
When reversing (for example, parking), the rear view camera system assists you by displaying the vehicle rear view image with a fixed guide line on the audio multimedia display.

The image used in this section is only an example and may differ from the actual image displayed on the screen.

#### Activating/deactivating the rear view camera system

##### ■ Activation


There are two methods to activate the rear view camera system:



Method A: Setting the selector lever in R activates the rear view camera system.

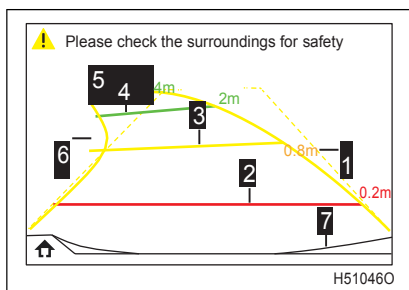
Method B: When the engine switch is set to the IG-ON mode, pressing the Vehicle Backup Camera Icon on the main menu interface of the multimedia display activates the rear view camera system.

##### ■ Deactivating

If the rear view camera system is activated through R, setting the selector lever to a position other than R deactivates the rear view camera system. If the rear view camera system is activated by pressing the multimedia display screen, pressing the screen button  deactivates the rear view camera system.

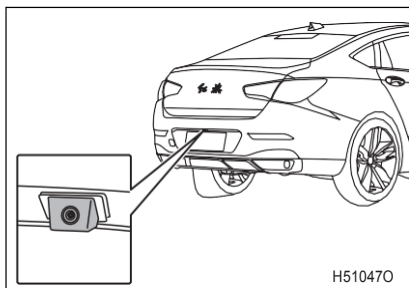
## Reversing Information display

Assist the driver to complete the parking with by screen display. Dynamically adjust the parking guide line according to various angles.

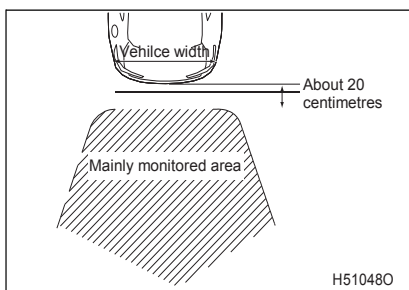


- 1** Vehicle width range line  
Guide line indicating the vehicle width. That is, the distance between the outer edges of the tires on both sides, excluding the width of the exterior rearview mirror.
- 2** Distance guide line (Red)  
Indicating the distance line 20cm away from bumper back edge
- 3** Distance guide line (Yellow)  
Indicating the distance line 80cm away from bumper back edge
- 4** Distance guide line (Green)  
Indicating the distance line 200cm away from bumper back edge
- 5** Distance guide line (Green)  
Indicating the distance line 400cm away from bumper back edge
- 6** Parking guide line  
Indicating the predicted vehicle track line with the steering wheel operating
- 7** Rear bumper back edge line

## Reversing camera

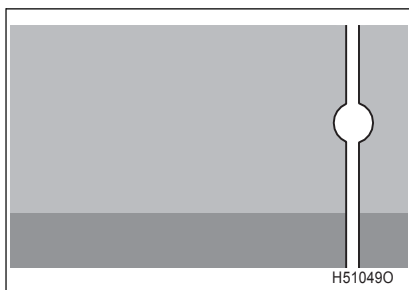


The vehicle backup camera is located in the illustrated position.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects that are close to either corner (within 20 cm) of the bumper or under the bumper cannot be seen on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may vary according to vehicle orientation or road conditions.



If a bright light, such as sunlight reflects off the vehicle body, is picked up by the reversing camera, a smear effect characteristic \*1 to the reversing camera may occur.

\*1: The light source appears to have a vertical stripe extending up and down when the image is transmitted through the vehicle backup camera.

### The difference between the displayed image and the actual

- Even if it seems that the distance between the parking guide line and the left/right dividing line of the parking space is the same, but it may not be the same actually. Be sure to perform visual inspection.
- Even if it seems that the parking guide lines are parallel to the dividing line of the parking space, but they may not be parallel actually. Be sure to perform visual inspection.
  - When only one line separates the parking space, the dynamic extension guide line may not be parallel with the right (left) side of parking space even they seem parallel on the display screen.
- The distance guide line provides the distance guidance for the smooth ground. In any of the following conditions, there may be some error between the distance guide line displayed on the screen and the actual distance/path on the road.
  - When the ground behind the vehicle ascends/descends, the displayed distance between the distance guide line and the vehicle is nearer/longer than the actual distance. Also, there may be some error between the guide line and the actual distance/path on the road.
  - When any part of the vehicle sinks due to the passengers or load distribution, there some error between the guide line displayed on the screen and the actual distance/path on the road.
  - The distance between the 3D objects, such as vehicle, and the flat surfaces, such as road surface, displayed on the display screen is different from the actual distance.
  - The parking guide line will be displayed according to the flat surface, such as the road surface. The location of 3D objects, such as vehicles, can not be judged by the parking guide line.

As above, the vehicle seems not to hit the truck shown outside the parking guide line. However, the truck width extension guide line is above the parking guide line. Therefore, the vehicle will hit the truck if reverses according to the parking guide line.

Be sure to visually check the area behind and around the vehicle when parking guide line running through objects or obstruction in the vicinity.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Rear view camera system is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on it more than necessary.**

Be sure to drive carefully and visually confirm the conditions behind and around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to back up by observing the display screen only. This may cause an accident or a collision with the object. The rear view camera system is only a visual parking assist system. The image on the display may differ from the actual situation.

■ **When using the rear view camera system**

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury, even death.

- Never depend solely on the rear view camera system when reversing.
- Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
- Depicted distances between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distances.
- Do not use this system when the trunk lid is not fully closed.

■ **Conditions which may affect the rear view camera system**

- If the back of the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Have your vehicle checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
- Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
- If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and wipe it.
- The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
- Do not use the rear view camera system when:
  - On slippery road surfaces covered by ice or snow.
  - Using tire chain or emergency spare tire.
  - On uneven or unsmooth road, such as bends or steep hills.
- If the tires are replaced, the guide line position displayed on the display screen may be deviated. When replacing the tire, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

**CAUTIONS**

- The guide line position on the display screen may vary according to the vehicle conditions, such as passenger and luggage number. Be sure to check the area behind and around the vehicle with your own eyes before operating.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

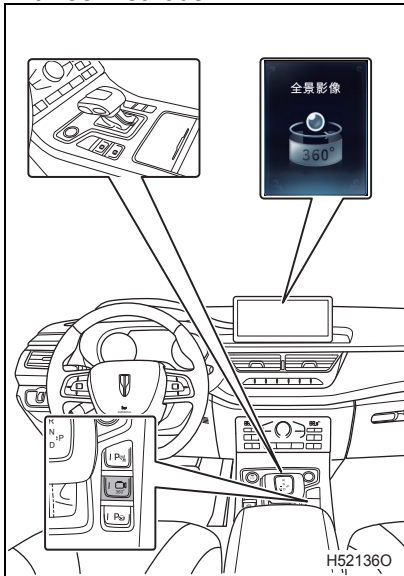
# Panoramic camera system \*

The panoramic camera system is displayed through the audio multimedia display screen, which enables the driver to clearly view and know the surrounding conditions of the vehicle, and also make judgments on the relative position and distance of obstacles, so as to realize safe and easy parking. The image used in this section is only an example and may differ from the actual image displayed on the screen.

### Activating and deactivating the panoramic camera system

#### ■ Activating

Panoramic camera system can be activated through the following three methods:




Method 1: Shifting to gear R activates the panoramic camera system.

Method 2: With the engine switch turned to "IG-ON" mode and the vehicle speed less than 30km/h, touch the "panoramic camera" icon on the main menu interface of the multimedia display screen to activate the panoramic camera system.

Method 3: Touching the panoramic camera switch button activates the panoramic camera system.

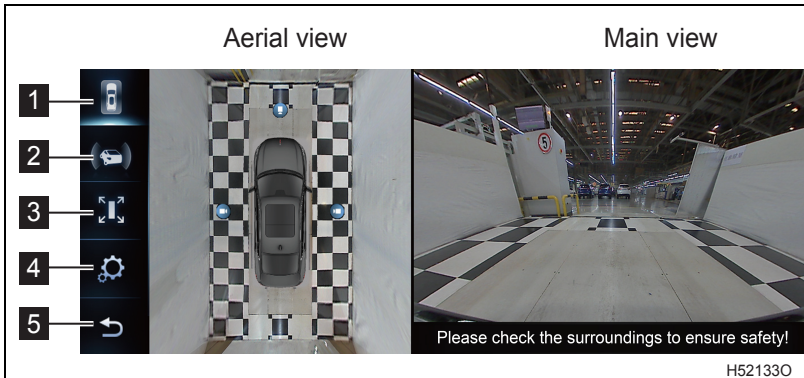
#### ■ Deactivating

Method 1: When the panoramic camera system is activated through the gear R, shift the lever to a gear other than R with the vehicle speed higher than 30km/h, or shift the lever to the gear P to deactivate the panoramic camera system

Method 2: When the panoramic camera system is activated through the "panoramic camera" icon or the panoramic camera switch button on the main menu interface of the multimedia display screen, touch the screen button  or touch the panoramic camera switch button again to deactivate the panoramic camera system.

## View modes of panoramic camera system

The panoramic camera system has a variety of view modes, which enables the driver to choose the corresponding mode



### 1 Main view

Shifting to gear D shows the front view and aerial view;  
 Shifting to gear R shows the rear view and aerial view;  
 Turning on the left turn signal shows the left view and the aerial view;  
 Turning on the right turn signal shows the right view and the aerial view;  
 Touching the camera button on the corresponding part of the aerial view shows the corresponding view and the aerial view.

### 2 3D view

Shows the three-dimensional 360° image and aerial view around the vehicle, which can be dragged and displayed.。

### 3 Wide view

You can choose a wide-angle front and rear views to see a nearly 180° picture.

### 4 Setting

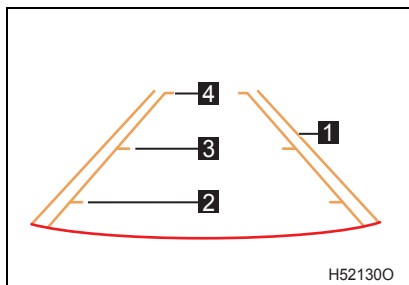
The body color and the activating and deactivating of the parking assist guideline can be set.

### 5 Return

To deactivate the panoramic camera system.

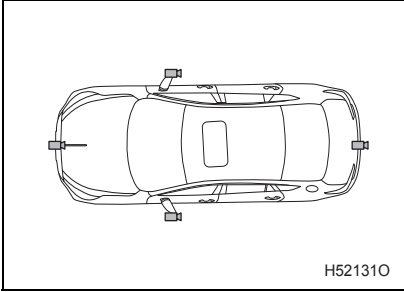
## Parking assist guideline

To assist the driver to complete the parking by the screen, and dynamically adjust the parking guide line according to the angles of the vehicle.



- 1** Parking guide line  
Represents the predicted vehicle trajectory as the steering wheel rotates.
- 2** Distance guide line  
Indicating the distance line 50cm from the rear edge of the bumper.
- 3** Distance guide line  
Represents the distance line 150cm from the rear edge of the bumper.
- 4** Distance guide line  
Indicating the distance line 300cm from the rear edge of the bumper.

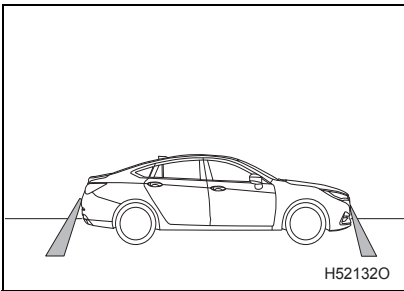
## Panoramic camera



H52131O

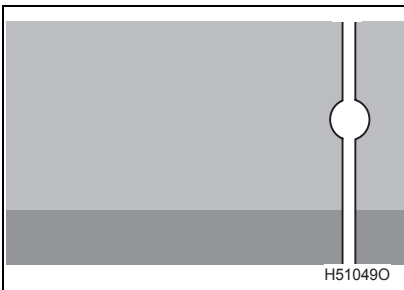
The panoramic cameras are mounted on the front grille, trunk lid, left and right outside rearview mirrors.

Since the left and right cameras are mounted on the left and right outside rearview mirrors, the panoramic image stitching effect will be affected when the door is opened, and thus, a corresponding door opening prompt will appear on the display to remind you that the door is opened.



H51032O

The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects near the corner of the bumper (within about 20 cm) or under the bumper are not displayed on the screen. The area displayed on the screen may vary with the orientation of the vehicle or road conditions.



H51049O

If the camera is subject to the bright light (for example: sunlight reflected by the vehicle body), it may produce the smearing effect\*1 characteristic to the camera.

- \*1 : The light source appears to have a vertical stripe extending up and down when the image is transmitted through the camera.

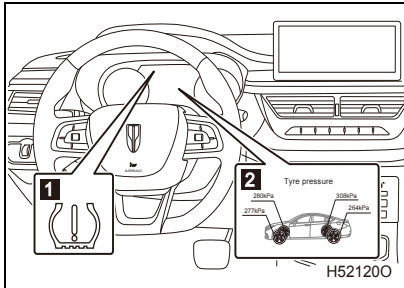
### CAUTIONS

- Panoramic camera system is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on it more than necessary. Be sure to drive carefully and visually confirm the conditions around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to back up by observing the display screen only. This may cause an accident or a collision with the object. The panoramic camera system is only a visual parking assist system. The image on the display may differ from the actual situation.
- When using the panoramic camera system
  - Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury, even death.
  - Never depend solely on the panoramic camera system when reversing.
  - Always check visually and with the mirrors to confirm your intended path is clear.
  - Displayed distance between objects and flat surfaces differ from actual distance.
  - The aerial view of the panoramic camera system can only show the close objects, and the camera will not show objects outside the field of view.
  - Do not use this system when the camera cannot work normally.
- Conditions which may affect the panoramic camera system
  - If the vehicle has been hit, the camera's position and mounting angle may have changed. Please have your vehicle checked by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
  - Rapid temperature changes, such as when hot water is poured on the vehicle in cold weather, may cause the system to function abnormally.
  - If the camera lens is dirty, it cannot transmit a clear image. Rinse with water and wipe with a soft cloth. If extremely dirty, wash with a mild cleanser and wipe it.
  - The displayed image may be darker and moving images may be slightly distorted when the system is cold.
  - The image may not be clear if it is rainy, snowy, foggy and low in illumination level.
  - Do not use the panoramic camera system when it is:
    - On slippery road surfaces covered by ice or snow.
    - Using tire chain or emergency spare tire.
    - On uneven or rough road, such as bends or steep hills.
  - If the tires are replaced, the guide line position displayed on the display screen may be deviated. When replacing the tire, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
  - The guide line position on the display screen may vary according to the vehicle conditions, such as passenger and luggage number. Be sure to visually check the area behind and around the vehicle before operating.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Tire pressure monitor system (TPMS)

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) can monitor and check the tire pressure and automatically warns if the pressure is below the limit.



- 1 Warning light for abnormal tire pressure / system fault
- 2 Tire pressure information

#### System working conditions

Vehicle state	Warning light
When tire pressure is below the limit	Warning prompt of warning light for abnormal tire pressure / system fault



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Precautions for TPMS

- The TPMS cannot prevent tire leakage and bursting. Its main purpose is to give an alarm when it detects that the tire pressure is lower than the set value.
- In winter, adjust the pressure in the tires in time. Because the winter temperature drops, the tire pressure may drop or drop below the alarm value. If the tire pressure falls below the alarm value, it will cause an alarm.

#### ■ Conditions in which the TPMS won't work properly

The TPMS can judge based on the subtle changes in the tires and may not work properly if one of the following conditions occurs.

- When the four tires are not of the same size, the same manufacturer, the same brand or the same pattern, or when the installed tires are markedly different in wear (the same applies to winter tires).
- When emergency tires and/or snow tires are used, and when tire chains are mounted.
- If the tire with a pressure significantly higher than the specified pressure is installed, or if the tire loses pressure suddenly due to tire bursting (puncture).

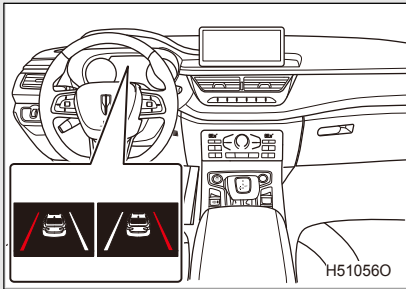
#### ■ When replacing the tire

When changing the tires or rotating the tires, be sure to adjust the device. Failure to do so may cause the device not to work properly.

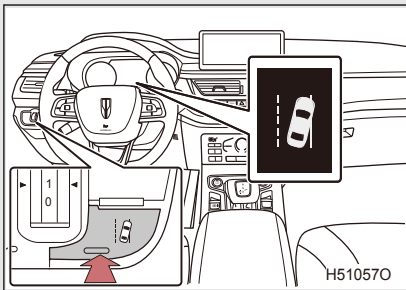
## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### LDW (Lane Departure Warning)\*

The system will give alarm if it judged that the vehicle departed the lane due to non-subjective intentions of the driver, such as chatting, being distracted, or operating the sound system.



#### ■ Turning on/off system



When the lane departure warning system detects that the vehicle is departing from the lane, the corresponding side line turns red and flashes and the speaker on the corresponding side sounds a warning.

If the LDW (Lane Departure Warning) button is pressed, the indicator light on the button is lit, the LDW is activated and the LDW indicator light (white) on the combination instrument is lit. If the LDW button is pressed again, the indicator light on the button goes out, the LDW is deactivated and the LDW indicator light on the combination instrument goes out.

When the LDW is enabled, if your vehicle speed is higher than 60km/h and the LDW system identifies a valid lane line, the LDW indicator light (green) on the combination instrument comes on.

#### ■ Setting of LDW sensitivity

The LDW sensitivity can be set in the driving assistance system of the multi-function display screen on the combination instrument.

(→P.80)

---

**■ Working conditions for LDW system:**

- The vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- Lane line is clear and in conformity to national standards.
- System camera is not covered.

**■ The LDW is deactivated even if your vehicle is departing from the lane when one of the following conditions occurs:**

- The hazard warning light switch is turned on.
- The brake pedal is depressed by the driver.
- Your vehicle has been driving on the lane line.
- Within 3 seconds of the previous warning.
- During the effective period of operating the steering switch, the LDW of the side is deactivated. The LDW of the side is also deactivated within about 3 seconds after the steering switch returns.

**■ The LDW may not work properly if one of the following conditions occurs:**

- When snow, ice or dust stains on the windshield block the sensor.
- Low-visibility weather, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, or heavy snow.
- The road is covered by vehicles or other obstacles.
- The road width is narrow or the curvature of the curve is excessive.
- When the system camera is covered.
- When heading for strong light.
- Lane line diverging, intersections or construction areas and other complex lane line conditions.
- When there are bridge cables or shadows of trees on the road surface, which may cause misrecognitions.
- When the night is weak or the lane lines are blurry at night.
- The vehicle speed is lower than 60 km/h.
- Lane line is not in conformity to national standards.
- The lane line is unclear.
- The external environment of the vehicle suddenly changes in brightness, such as entering a tunnel.

**■ The system shall be calibrated when changing multi-function camera unit, front windshield or after four-wheel alignment. Otherwise, the system can not be used normally. Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.**



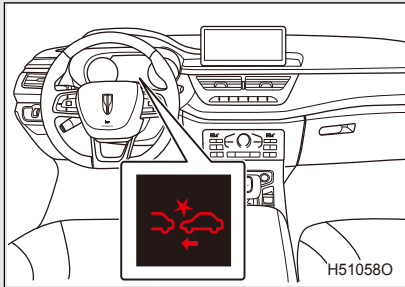
### CAUTIONS

- To avoid interfering with the driver, the system will not raise an alarm when the LDW system activation conditions are not satisfied.
- The LDW system is only a driving assist system and raise alarm for lane departure of this vehicle. The driver will control the vehicle with caution according to the warning.
- The system may malfunction due to road and environment factors. Stop using this system in that case.
- The LDW system without correct calibration may identify other lanes by mistake, resulting in accidents.
- The LDW can recognize the lane lines and curbs with a certain contrast. It may recognize the blurry, dirty lane lines inaccurately or cannot recognize them. It may misrecognize some vehicle traces, watermarks or shadows with large color contrast on road surfaces.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Forward collision warning (FCW) \*

It is able to work out the warning distance between the vehicle with the target vehicle via the speed of this vehicle and the target vehicle as well as the relative speed. The system will sound an alarm if the conditions are met.



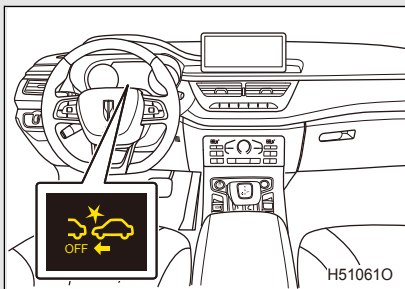
When the system judges that there may be a collision, alarm information appears on the multifunction display screen of the combination instrument, giving an audible and visual alarm.

For the vehicle target, when the collision risk escalates, the system will give a braking warning similar to the effect of cadence braking.

#### ■ Setting of the Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

Settings of FCW (Front Collision Warning) ON/OFF and sensitivity can be performed in the driving assistance system of the multi-function display screen on the combination instrument.

(→P.79)



If the system is turned off, the indicator light for the FCW OFF is lit on the multi-function display screen on the combination instrument.

The system is turned on by default.

### ■ Adjusting or calibrating FCW system

Adjust or calibrate the FCW system in the following situations. Otherwise FCW system may not function properly.

- Front windscreen is damaged or replaced.
- Replace the multifunctional camera unit.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.

If calibration is needed, contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

### CAUTIONS

- For the sake of safety, the occupants must wear seat belts properly.
- FCW is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on FCW more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.
- FCW only makes warning for collision danger. Driver must operate the brake pedal or the steering wheel to avoid collision.
- FCW may not be able to identify the modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- The FCW obtains the vehicle information by recognizing the rear of the vehicle, so no warning is given to the oncoming vehicle and the horizontally crossing vehicle in front.
- Complex traffic conditions may cause the FCW to delay the recognition of the vehicle, resulting in lagged alarm.
- Curved, hilly or unusual bumpy roads may cause the FCW not to detect the preceding vehicle. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- The FCW is an alarm system, but it cannot detect the vehicles in all situations. For example, the vehicles with a largely-covered rear, strange shape (such as overloaded vehicles transporting trees), seriously-damaged rear and other.
- FCW may not identify the narrow objects such as pedestrians or bicycles.
- When the sensor is obstructed by rain, snow, ice, fog or dust, the FCW performance may be degraded or invalidated. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- Make sure the front windshield is not modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. The modified or covered windshield may cause the FCW to deteriorate or fail.
- If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the FCW function may be degraded or failed. Have the FCW calibrated in time.



### CAUTIONS

- Do not use the improperly-calibrated FCW.
- The FCW may not work properly in the scenes with strong backward lighting, road reflection and insufficient ambient lighting. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- The high chassis of the preceding vehicles or the cargo protruding from the rear of the preceding vehicle may increase the risk of danger.
- The FCW may not be able to identify such targets as riders.



### NOTICES

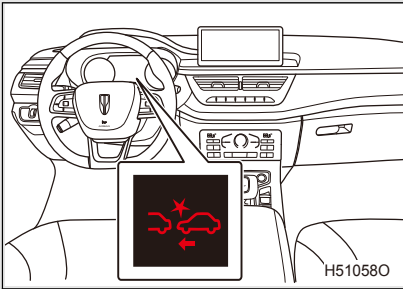
- To avoid interfering with the driver by false alarm, the system will not alarm when:
  - Front windscreen is damaged or replaced.
  - The vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h.
  - Within 3s after the last warning.
  - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
  - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

# AEB (Autonomous Emergency Brake) system \*

The AEB (Autonomous Emergency Brake) is activated between 10 km/h and 85 km/h.

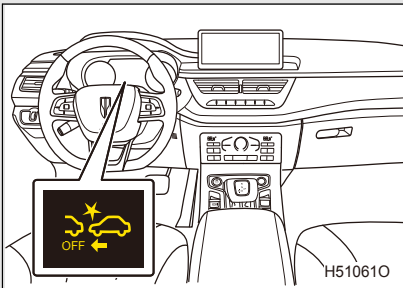
When in an emergency, your vehicle may collide with the preceding vehicle and you do not apply emergency braking in time, the AEB will assist you in applying a braking force to avoid or mitigate the collision.



If the AEB is activated, the alarm information appears on the multi-function display screen on the combination instrument.

### ■ AEB settings

The AEB can be switched on/off in the driving assistance system of the multi-function display screen on the combination instrument. (→P.79)



If the AEB is turned off, the AEB OFF indicator light is lit on the multi-function display screen on the combination instrument.

The system is turned on by default.

### ■ Adjusting or calibrating AEB system

Adjust or calibrate the AEB in the following situations. Otherwise AEB may not function properly.

- Front windscreen is damaged or replaced.
- Replace the multifunctional camera unit.
- After adjusting wheel alignment.

If calibration is needed, contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



### CAUTIONS

- For the sake of safety, the occupants must wear seat belts properly.
- AEB is only one of the driving assist systems. Do not depend on AEB more than necessary. Driver shall drive with caution.
- The AEB may not recognize the modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- Curved, hilly or unusual bumpy roads may cause the FCW not to detect the preceding vehicle. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- AEB may not be able to identify riders and other targets.
- When the electronic stability control (ESC) is turned off or failed, the braking function of the AEB will not be activated.
- The AEB may not work properly if there is heavy snow or rain
- The AEB may not work properly in the scenes with strong backward lighting, road reflection and insufficient ambient lighting. Exercise greater caution to drive.
- If your vehicle is needed to tow a disabled vehicle or a trailer, deactivate the AEB. When the brakes are controlled under towing conditions, the safety of the vehicle deteriorates.
- The high chassis of the preceding vehicles or the cargo protruding from the rear of the preceding vehicle may increase the risk of danger.
- Make sure the front windshield is not modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. The modified or covered windshield may cause the AEB to deteriorate or fail.
- If the camera is displaced due to a collision, the AEB function may be degraded or failed. Have the AEB calibrated in time.
- Do not use the improperly-calibrated AEB.
- The AEB obtains the vehicle information by recognizing the rear of the vehicle, so no warning is given to the oncoming vehicle and the horizontally crossing vehicle in front.



## CAUTIONS

- **The AEB is a driving assistance system but it cannot detect the vehicle in all situations. For example, the vehicles with largely-covered rear, strange shape (such as overloaded vehicles transporting trees), seriously-damaged rear and other.**
- **When your vehicle is driving on a curve, the AEB may not be able to accurately determine the state of a stationary object in the direction of travelling. Therefore, the AEB may not perform active emergency brake assistance.**
- **The AEB cannot help you in all circumstances, so you should not rely entirely on it but focus on observing the road conditions to ensure driving safety.**
- **The AEB system is an active auxiliary safety system, but it cannot completely prevent your vehicle at low speed from colliding with the preceding vehicle. It is your responsibilities to know how to drive and how to avoid dangerous situations. You should apply the brakes as soon as possible in an emergency.**



## NOTICES

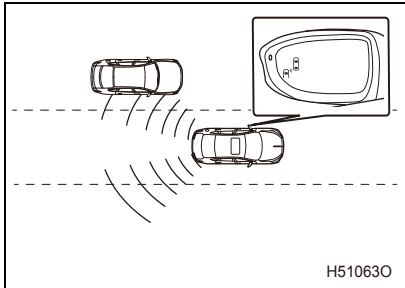
- **To avoid interfering with the driver by false alarm, the system will not alarm when:**
  - The vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h.
  - Within 20s after the last warning.
- **When the AEB system is activated, if one of the following conditions occurs, the AEB will be deactivated to stop braking immediately:**
  - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
  - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.
  - When the vehicle speed falls below the threshold of 45 km/h, the AEB stops braking.
- **If one of the following conditions occurs, the AEB will not be activated. It is intended to allow you to control your vehicle by yourself without disturbing:**
  - The ESC, TCS and ABS are activated.
  - The transmission is shifted to R.
  - Any door is not closed.
  - Engine hood is not closed.
  - The trunk lid is not closed.
  - The driver unfasten the seat belts.
  - The semi-automatic parking function is turned on.
  - Within 20s after the last warning.
  - Vehicle speed is lower than 10km/h.
  - The steering wheel is turned fast or to an excessive angle.
  - The accelerator pedal is pressed suddenly, resulting in a large pedal displacement.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

# LCDA Lang Change Decision Aid \*

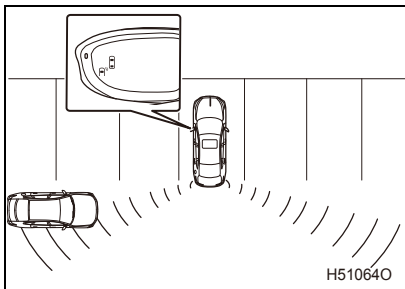
The system contains a Side Warning Assist (SWA) and a Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) to provide driving assistance.

### Side Warning Assist (SWA)



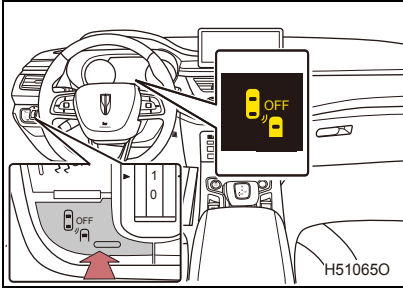
When your vehicle speed is greater than 30 km/h, if the side vehicle within the 7m blind spot or the 7~70m blind zone behind your vehicle meets the collision conditions, the warning indicator light for outside rearview mirror on the corresponding side is lit. If the turn signal switch on the corresponding side is turned on at the moment, the warning indicator light flashes and the speaker is driven to sound a warning, which tells you about that there is a risk of changing the lane at the moment.

### Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)



When your reversing speed is 0~10km/h, if there is a crossing vehicle behind your vehicle, the indicator light in the rearview mirror on the corresponding side is lit, and the speaker on the corresponding side sounds a warning, which tells you about paying attention to the crossing vehicle.

### SWA system ON/OFF



If the SWA OFF button is pressed, the button indicator light is lit, the instrument prompts "SWA Is Disabled" and the SWA OFF icon is displayed at the same time. If the SWA OFF button is pressed again, the button indicator light goes out.

If the system fails, the SWA is in the OFF state and cannot be activated with the switch.

The system is turned on by default.

 **NOTICES**

- **Be sure to prevent the rear bumper from being clashed when parking. Otherwise, the sensor in the bumper may be displaced or damaged, and thus cause the SWA to be automatically shut down or the SWA function to be affected.**
- **To ensure normal operation of the SWA, the sensor in the bumper should be clean, and not be covered by other objects.**
- **Coat the rear bumper only with the paint approved by FAW. Failure to do so may result in limited functionality of the SWA or a trouble in the SWA.**
- **If it is not working properly, deactivate the SWA immediately and contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for repair.**
- **The repaired SWA needs to be calibrated. For the details, contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.**
- **The SWA will not respond to the pedestrians, animals, bicycles and others in blind spots.**
- **The SWA only serves as an auxiliary reminder. It cannot completely avoid collisions in the blind spots. Before changing the lane, be sure to observe the rearview mirrors, scan backwards and turn on the turn signals.**
- **Special operating conditions, such as dark and damp weather and high speeds, may cause the SWA to give false alarm or to miss alarm. This is a normal phenomenon.**
- **When the SWA sensor behind the vehicle is blocked, the SWA will not work. Clear the sensor in time.**
- **The SWA is limited by the physical laws and system conditions and may not be able to correctly identify traffic conditions under some driving conditions. Such as the following conditions:**
  - In a lane with sharp turn.
  - In a lane with different width.
  - On a mountain road with ups and downs.
  - In bad weather.
  - At some special structures on the roadside, such as high or offset highway guardrails.

**CAUTIONS**

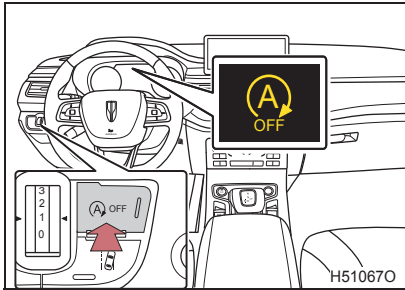
- **The SWA technology cannot violate the laws of physics and has a certain system limitation, and functions only within the limits of the system. Therefore, you should still concentrate on observing roads and traffic conditions and guard against accidents.**
  - Be sure to adjust your vehicle speed and the safe distance from the preceding vehicle according to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions at that time.
  - Be sure to hold the steering wheel with both hands while driving and get ready to turn.
  - Be sure to pay attention to the indicator light for exterior rearview mirrors and the information on the multi-function display of the combination instrument, and follow the instructions to operate it correctly.
  - The SWA may respond to some specific roadside buildings (such as high or offset guardrails) and thus give false alarm.
  - Pay attention to the road conditions and surroundings of your vehicle.
  - Do not activate the SWA if the sensor is dirty or damaged. The dirty or damaged sensor may affect the SWA function.
  - It may be hard to see the view in the exterior mirror in direct sunlight.
  - When driving, be sure to follow the instructions of the warning light/indicator light and related text messages. Failure to do so can easily cause an accident, resulting in severe personal injuries.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Idling start/stop system \*

The purpose of the ISSS (Idle Stop-Start System) is to control the engine idle start and stop based on the driving operation and system requirements during a short stop.

#### Idling start/stop system ON/OFF



If the ISSS OFF button is pressed, the button indicator light is lit and the ISSS is deactivated. If the button is pressed again, the button indicator light goes out and the ISSS is activated.

The system is turned on by default.

- If the ISSS OFF button is pressed while parking
  - When the engine is stopped by the ISSS, pressing the ISSS OFF button restarts the engine. Meanwhile, the ISSS is deactivated and the indicator light on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.
  - When the ISSS is in the OFF state, pressing the ISSS OFF button resumes the ISSS without stopping the engine. Meanwhile, the idling start/stop system is turned on.

#### Working process of the idling start/stop system

- Stopping the engine
  - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero and hold the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator light on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.
  - When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and then shift to P/N from D and hold the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator light on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.

- When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and then shift to P from D and release the brake pedal there, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator light on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument is lit.
- When your vehicle is traveling in D position, if you press the brake pedal until the vehicle speed is zero, and EPB/AUTO HOLD works, the engine is automatically shut down. The indicator light on the multi-function display screen of the instrument cluster is lit.
- **Starting the engine**
  - With your vehicle in D/N, the engine shut down and the brake pedal depressed, releasing the brake pedal starts the engine automatically.
  - With your vehicle in P, the engine shut down, depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal starts the engine automatically.
  - With EPB/AUTO HOLD activated, depressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal again starts the engine automatically.
  - Shifting the gear to R starts the engine automatically.
  - Turning steering wheel may start the engine automatically.
  - Activating the air conditioner or the forced defrosting/defogging function of the windshield starts the engine automatically.

### Idling start/stop system indicator lamp

- If the ISSS work indicator light (green) on the multi-function display screen of combination instrument is lit, it indicates that the ISSS is activated and in working.
- If the ISSS limited indicator light (yellow) on the multi-function display screen of combination instrument is lit, it indicates that the ISSS is activated but does not meet the operating conditions.
- If the ISSS fault indicator light (yellow) on the multi-function display screen of combination instrument flashes, it indicates that the ISSS is faulty.

### Working conditions of the idling start/stop system

- **Working conditions of the idling start/stop system**
  - Preconditions for stopping the engine automatically.  
Meet all the following conditions, the engine stops automatically:

- No-idling start/stop system corresponding fault.
  - The ISSS is activated.
  - The driver door is closed.
  - Driver side seat belt is fastened.
  - Engine hood is closed.
  - The comfort function of the air conditioning system meets the requirements.
  - The automatic parking system is OFF.
  - The battery performs well and fully charged.
  - The current working conditions of vehicle meets the set requirements for ISSS.
  - The selector lever is set in a position other than R.
  - The steering wheel should not be overturned.
  - The ACC is deactivated.
  - The coolant temperature is not too high or too low.
  - The parking gradient should not be too large.
- Preconditions for starting the engine automatically  
Meet all the following conditions, the engine starts automatically:
- No-idling start/stop system corresponding fault.
  - The driver door is closed.
  - Engine hood is closed.
  - Driver side seat belt is fastened.
- The engine starts again itself without your operation (one of the conditions is satisfied).
- The battery failed to meet the conditions.
  - The coolant temperature failed to meet the conditions
  - The brake vacuum is insufficient.  
The air conditioning system failed to meet the conditions.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ When idling start/stop system is in working

- Vehicles equipped with a 48V system have a variety of start-stop methods. The system will make judgments based on the 48V battery status, ambient temperature and other conditions and automatically select the optimal start-stop method.
  - Do not leave the vehicle when the ISSS stops the engine. Accidents may occur due to the engine's automatic starting function.
  - Do not use the ISSS to stop the engine if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated place. Due to the engine's automatic starting function, the engine may restart, causing the exhaust gas to gather and enter the vehicle, which may seriously endanger the health or even result in death.
  - To ensure safety, it is necessary to ensure that the door is closed, the driver seat belt is fastened, the hood is closed, and the steering wheel is corrected, otherwise ISSS cannot be activated, and the automatic stop or automatic start cannot be entered.
  - To prevent frequent start and stop following the vehicle ahead under severe congestions, the vehicle speed needs to be higher than 3km/h after stopping to activate ISSS again; when shifted to the gear D for the first time from R, the vehicle speed needs to be higher than 10km/h to activate ISSS.
  - In the idling stop state, if the system detects that the relevant conditions are not met, the engine may start automatically even if the driver does not depress the brake pedal.
  - In the idling stop state, the instrument will prompt the manual start of the engine in case that the driver performs operations such as unfastening the seat belt or opening the door, and depressing the brake pedal, then the driver needs to resume these operations or manually start the vehicle through the engine switch; and you need to manually start the vehicle through the engine switch in case that you unfasten the seat belt while opening the door.
- **To ensure the driveability, comfort and protection of the systems of the vehicle, many preconditions are made for activating the ISSS, and it will be prohibited under the conditions such as low battery or temperature, unsuitable air conditioning system, low engine coolant temperature, high altitude, steep slope, low brake vacuum, high transmission temperature, and the related system malfunctions. After braking to stop the vehicle, if the engine cannot be stopped due to the above conditions, the ISSS limited symbol will appear on the instrument cluster. Therefore, you do not need to concern about whether to stop during the driving process. The ISSS has integrated the driveability, safety, and comfort factors to provide comprehensive protection.**



## NOTICES

- **After the engine stops automatically, if the engine switch is pressed, the vehicle will not be started.**
- **When the vehicle is in the idle-stop state, the start-stop function is terminated if one of the following conditions occurs. If you trigger the start-up operation, the instrument reminds you of starting the engine manually.**
  - The hood is opened or the transmission sends a signal to disable start-up.
  - The seat belt is unfastened and the door is opened.
  - The seatbelt is unfastened or the door is opened. The seat belt is still unfastened or the door is still opened after a period of time.
- **When the A/C system is in one of the following states, the ISSS is not allowed to be activated:**
  - The A/C system is in defrosting/defogging mode.
  - The temperature in the vehicle has not reached the target comfort temperature range.
  - Outdoor temperature is high or low.
- **When the transmission sends a disabled start/stop signal, the ISSS is not allowed to be activated.**
  - Prevent the risk of dragging caused by the engagement of drive chains when starting after shutdown.
- **You are the most important controller of your vehicle. The idling start/stop system is only a driving assistance system. You should control your vehicle based on the actual road conditions and drive it with caution.**

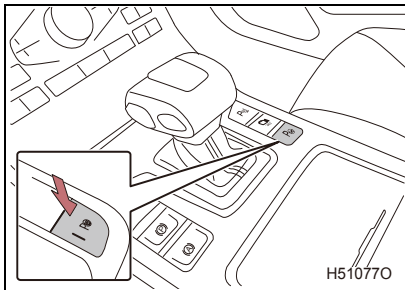
## 4-5. Using other driving systems

# PSC semi-automatic parking system \*

The PSC (semi-automatic parking) measures the length of the parking spaces on both sides of the road through ultrasonic waves. If the appropriate parking space is selected, the steering system of the vehicle will be automatically controlled and the vehicle will be parked in the selected parking space. You only need to control the gear shift, the accelerator pedal and the brake pedal. The PSC contains horizontal parking-in mode, vertical parking-in mode and horizontal parking-out mode. The system operation is prompted through the multi-function display on the combination instrument.

### Mode selection

The PSC system has the following three modes. The driver can select the parking modes as required.



Switching between horizontal parking-in mode and vertical parking-in mode: If the engine is started, with the shift lever in a position other than R, operating the PSC switch switches between horizontal parking-in mode and vertical parking-in mode.

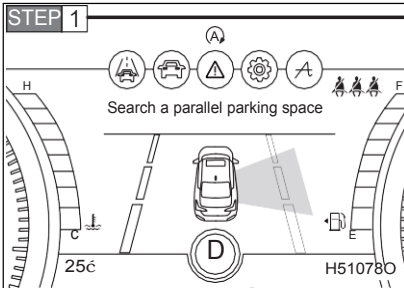
Horizontal parking-out mode: If the engine is started, with the shift lever in R, push the steering lever and select the parking-out direction. Operating the PSC switch activates the horizontal parking-out mode.

Note: In the horizontal parking-out mode, if you do not push the steering lever before operating the PSC switch, the instrument will prompt you to “Push the Steering Lever and Select the Parking-out Direction”. You need to operate the PSC switch again.

## Operating the PSC system

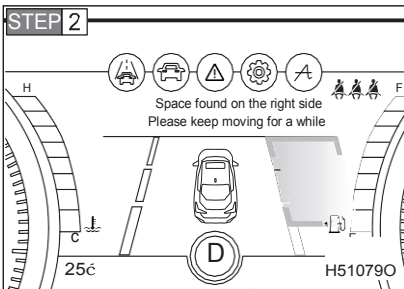
### ■ Operation process of entry in parallel parking mode

Searching for the left parking space is the same as searching for the right parking space. The following is only an example of searching for the right parking space.

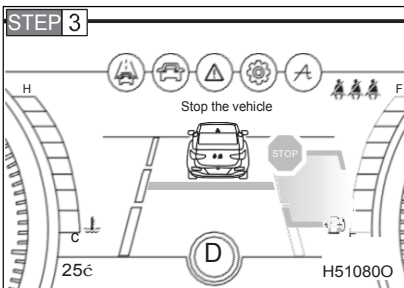


When the PSC is in the horizontal parking mode, turning on the right turn signal light starts searching for the right parking space. The multi-function display of the combination instrument will show "Searching for Horizontal Parking Space".

You can select the searching direction by pushing the steering lever. If no turn signal light is turned on, the system defaults to searching for the right parking space.

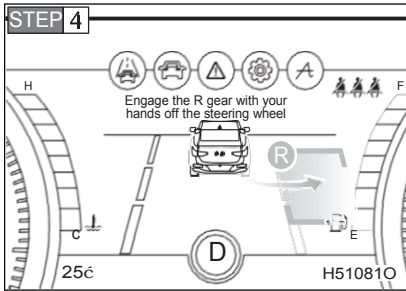


When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "The Right Parking Space Has Been Found, Please Continue to Move Forward for a Short Section", you should continue to drive the vehicle forward to the parking spot.

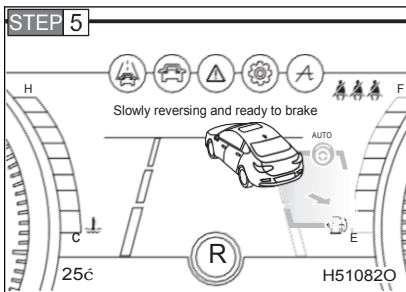


When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Please Stop" and sounds a warning, you should stop the vehicle.

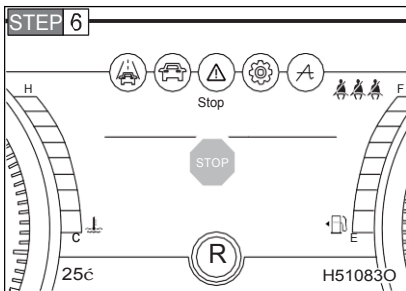
## 4-5. Using other driving systems



When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Please Shift to R and Move Both Hands away from the Steering Wheel", set the shift lever in R. You should move both hands away from the steering wheel and observe the surrounding environment.

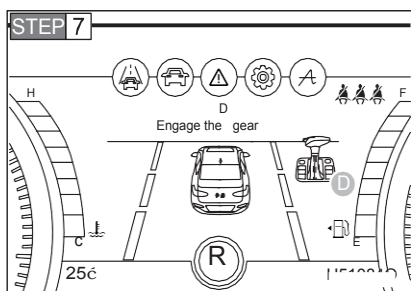


When the vehicle starts parking in the parking space, the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Back up Slowly and Get Ready to Apply the Brakes". You should press the brake pedal and keep the speed below 5 km/h, and back up slowly.

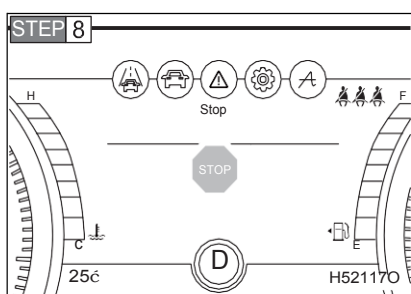


When both the front and the rear of the vehicle reach a safe distance, the vehicle starts parking in the parking space, the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Park Your Vehicle" and sounds a warning. At the moment, you should immediately press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.

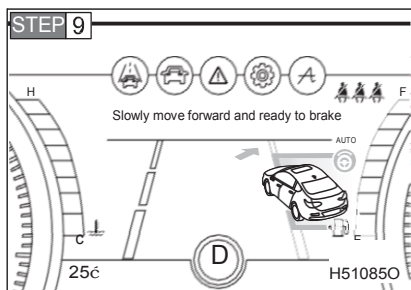
When the front and rear parking sensors sound for a long time for warning, you should heighten vigilance and get ready for parking preparation.



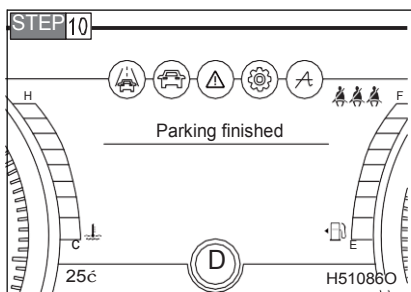
When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows “Please Shift to D”, you need to shift the shift lever to D.



When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows “Park Your Vehicle”, you need to wait for the steering wheel to align and then control the vehicle to move forward.



When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Advance slowly and Get Ready to Apply the brakes", you should press the brake pedal and advance slowly.



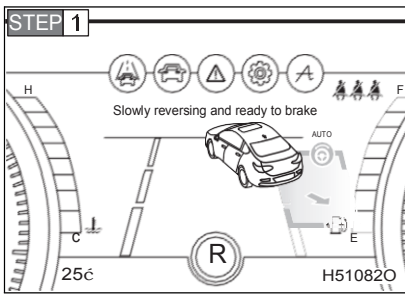
When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows “Parking Finishes”, you should stop the vehicle and the semi-automatic is completed parking. After parking, the driver should pay attention to the current gear position information, and shift to gear P for safe parking.

- Operation process of entry in vertical parking mode

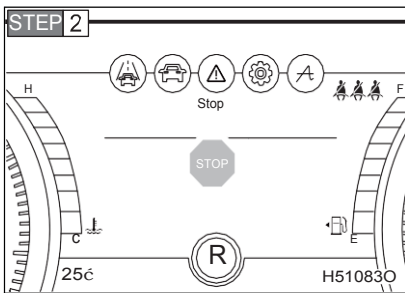
The operation principle of vertical parking-in mode is the same as that of horizontal parking-in mode. For the specific procedures, see the horizontal parking-in mode.

- Operation process of exit in parallel parking mode

The principle of right horizontal parking-out mode is the same as that of left horizontal parking-out mode. The following is based on left horizontal parking-out mode.

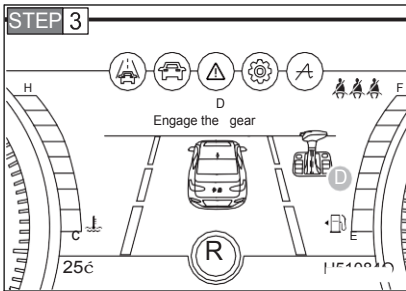


When the PSC chooses the left horizontal parking-out mode, the automatic steering control is activated. At the moment, the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Back up Slowly and Get Ready to Apply the Brakes". You should move both hands away from the steering wheel and observe the surrounding environment.

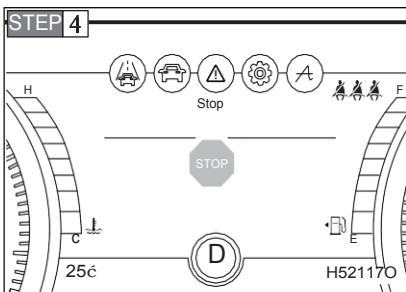


When both the front and the rear of the vehicle reach a safe distance, the vehicle starts parking in the parking space, the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Park Your Vehicle" and sounds a warning. At the moment, you should immediately press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.

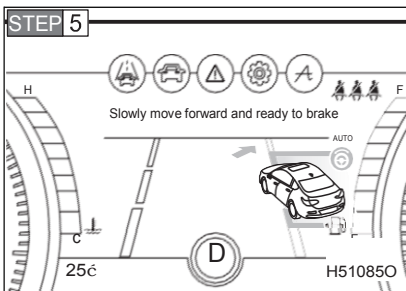
When the front and rear parking sensors sound for a long time for warning, you should heighten vigilance and get ready for parking preparation.



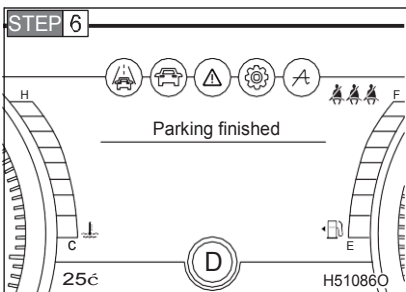
When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Please Shift to D", you need to shift the shift lever to D.



When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Park Your Vehicle", you need to wait for the steering wheel to align and then control the vehicle to move forward.



When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Advance slowly and Get Ready to Apply the brakes", you should press the brake pedal and advance slowly.



When the multi-function display of the combination instrument shows "Parking Finishes", you should stop the vehicle and the semi-automatic is completed parking.

After parking, the driver should pay attention to the current gear position information, and drive the vehicle carefully.

### ■ **Operating conditions for searching parking space:**

- Start the engine.
- The shift lever is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is lower than 25km/h.
- The ESC OFF switch is not activated.
- The ESC/ABS/TCS function is not activated.
- The PSC/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS functions properly.

### ■ **Operating conditions for parking:**

- The vehicle speed is less than 8km/h.
- There is no manual operation of the steering wheel in the process of parking.
- The ESC OFF switch is not activated.
- The ESC/ABS/TCS function is not activated.
- The PSC/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS functions properly.

### ■ **Conditions to deactivate parking:**

- The PSC switch button is pressed.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 8km/h.
- The driver operates the steering wheel.
- Parking is still uncompleted within 4 minutes after the automatic steering intervention is activated.
- Parking is still uncompleted beyond the maximum number of movements after the automatic steering intervention is activated.
- The ESC OFF switch is activated.
- The ESC/ABS/TCS function intervenes.
- The PSC/ESC/ABS/TCS/EPS fails.

 **NOTICES**

- When looking for a parking space, you need to push the steering control handle to indicate which side you want to park the vehicle on. If no steering control handle is pushed, the system defaults to searching for the right parking space.
- When looking for a parking space, you can change the direction for searching by pushing the steering lever. If the parking steering control is activated, the direction of parking cannot be changed through the steering lever.
- When searching for a parking space, operate the steering lever to return to the middle position. The current searching direction will be memorized and kept until the steering lever is pushed to the other direction.
- In the process of parking, if the parking is not completed in one operation, the system may be adjusted. Please park your vehicle according to the prompts on the multi-function display of the combination instrument and the actual situation.
- You are the most important controller of the vehicle. The PSC is only a driving assistance system. You should control the vehicle by yourself according to the actual road conditions and drive it with care.
- If you need to change the tire, make sure that the size and type of the replacement tire is exactly the same as those of the original tire and check it via the wheel alignment.



**CAUTIONS**

- Pay special attention to the people animals, and various obstacles around the vehicle. The sensors have undetectable blind spots.
- When searching for parking space or during parking, make sure there are no obstacles, such as stones, fine columns or draw bars, in the parking space before parking your vehicle in it, as the Park Assist may not detect such obstacles.
- When you park your vehicle in the space close to the roadside with the PSC system, the preset running trajectory may go beyond the roadside, causing the raised shoulder to damage the vehicle's tires or wheels. Be sure to pay attention to the environment around your vehicle, controlling the speed, and perform manual intervention if necessary.
- The Park Assist may not be able to recognize the surface or structure of some objects (such as barbed wire fences, fluffy snow, etc.). Therefore, check whether there is enough space in the parking space displayed before parking your vehicle.
- If the parking distance warning system detects a barrier, the barrier may get out of the detection range of the sensor when the vehicle gets close to the barrier (the case extremely easily occurs when too high and too low barriers are detected), therefore, these objects are not detected. Do not ignore the alarm from the parking distance warning system. Otherwise, the vehicle may be at risk of collision.

**CAUTIONS**

- Due to the influences of various external sound fields and electromagnetic fields (e.g., other vehicles using ultrasonic ranging, air pressure, engine noise, electronically controlled gears and induction coils) determined by the physical characteristics, the system cannot achieve absolute anti-jamming.
- The anti-jamming capability and detection performance of the ultrasonic ranging system may be degraded due to environmental conditions and obstacle reflection characteristics, and this is determined by the physical properties of ultrasonic propagation.
- The mounting position of the sensor has an important influence on the system performance. This is reflected in the reflection of the bumper surface, the reflection of the ground echo and the detection range.
- Avoid cleaning the sensor with high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner, so as to avoid damage to the sensor. Adopt small water stream to wash the sensor surface for a short time during vehicle cleaning, and maintain a distance over 10 cm.
- The sound waves transmitting in the air is refracted and diffracted based on the physical properties. The difference in temperature in the air is one of the most important factors in the generation of non-uniform propagation media, thereby leading to acoustic diffraction.
- The detection performance of ultrasonic detection equipment can be affected by the following factors:
  - Hot exhaust gas.
  - High-temperature asphalt pavement.
  - Summer breeze.
  - Temperature stratification.
- When the bumper temperature is different from the ambient air temperature (usually occurring in winter), temperature stratification occurs, resulting in acoustic wave diffraction. Echoes are generated in some bumper structures, so that there is a risk of false alarms.



## CAUTIONS

■ **Some important factors that can lead to a reduced detection range or no detection:**

- The bumper surface is covered with snow or sludge.
- The sensor surface is covered with lime mud or ice.
- High acoustic attenuation (for example, in a dry and hot environment).
- In heavy rain or foam.
- Obstructions with absorbing materials.
- Flat obstacle facing the sensor, and echoes only occur within a specific range of angle.

### Driver assistance

**Functions integrated by ESC (Electronic Stability Program), which may be different according to different vehicle models.**

**To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.**

- **Antilock braking system (ABS)**  
Help to prevent skidding or deviation due to wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface.
- **EBD (Electronic brake force distribution)**  
Distribute dynamic brake force of front and rear wheels in proportion according to vehicle load, road conditions and brake force changes to improve the vehicle braking stability and handling.
- **Traction Control System (TCS)**  
Maintains drive power and help prevent any of the drive wheels from spinning when the vehicle is started or accelerated on a slippery road surface.
- **Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)**  
Fast depress the brake pedal to compensate the brake force. The brake force may increase effectively.
- **Hydraulic Brake Booster (HBB)**  
When the vacuum of the brake system is insufficient, the braking force compensation can be performed to effectively increase the braking force.
- **Hill-start Assist Control (HHC)**  
When the driver moves his foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal during the period from parking to the start on the slope, the function appropriately maintains the brake pressure applied by the driver to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- **Direct Torque Control (DTC)**  
The engine braking torque is balanced with a slight increase in the engine torque, so as to avoid excessive wheel spinning and maintain the vehicle stability and controllability. However, the vehicle is not accelerated.
- **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**  
Help to prevent skidding and guarantee the correct running track of vehicle when turn suddenly, or turn while driving on a slippery road surface.
- **Controlled Deceleration for Driver Assistant System (CDD-S)**

- **AUTO HOLD**

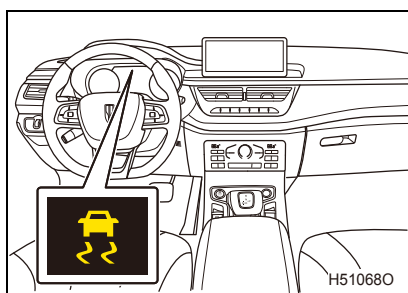
When the vehicle is still, the parking brake is applied by the hydraulic system and the parking is briefly maintained. After that, a function of parking is performed by the electronic parking system, which can be turned off/on by the button.

- **Active Pre-Brake (ABP)\***

Increase the response speed of braking when applying emergency brake

### **Electrical power steering system (EPS)**

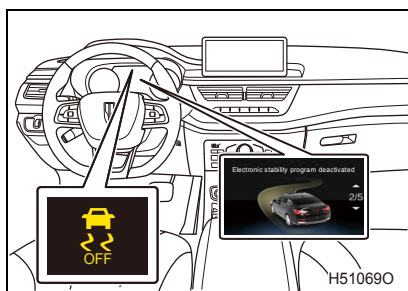
#### When TCS/ESC are operating



If the vehicle is in danger of wheelslip or front wheels spin, the slip indicator flashes to indicate that the TCS/ ESC systems are in working.

#### Disabling ESC

If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow or mud, the ESC may reduce the power from the engine to the wheels. Turn the system off to move the vehicle back and forth to free it.



If the ESC OFF button is pressed, the ESC is deactivated and the button indicator light is lit. The indicator light on the multi-function display of the combination instrument is lit and that the ESC Is Disabled is shown. Pressing the ESC OFF button again resumes the system.

■ **The ESC responds automatically.**

Closing ESC and starting the engine again, the system will be automatically activated.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, HBA, TCS, ESC, CDP, CDD-S and AUTO HOLD**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. The sound does not mean that the system has fault.
- Any of the following normal conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. These conditions do not mean any fault occurs.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.

**CAUTIONS****■ Handling of tires and suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system malfunction.

**■ The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- Tires with inadequate gripping capability are used.
- The vehicle slips while driving at high speed on a wet or slick road.

**■ Stopping distance of ABS when operating on special road surfaces**

ABS is not designed for shortening the brake distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.
- When driving with tire chains.
- When driving over bumps in the road.
- When driving over roads with potholes or roads with uneven surfaces.

**■ TCS may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TCS system is operating. Do not drive under out-of-control or out-of-power conditions.

**■ When the ESC is activated**

If the indicator light flashes, always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident.

**■ When ESC shuts off**

Exercise extreme caution and drive the vehicle at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. The ESC can ensure the stability and driving force of the vehicle. Do not disable it unless there is no need to use it.

**■ Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level. The ABS and EPS systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle. Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for further information when replacing tires and/or wheels.

### Key points for driving in winter

**Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Be sure to drive in a way that is suitable for the main weather conditions in winter.**

■ Preparations for driving in winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the outside temperatures.

- Engine oil
- Engine coolant
- Washer fluid

- Make sure the battery performance is favorable.

- If necessary, have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the driving tires.

Ensure that all tires are of the same size and brand, and that the chains match the size of the tires.

■ Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not forcibly open the frozen window or move the frozen wipers. Always use warm water to melt the frozen parts. Wipe the melt water immediately to prevent icing again.

- To ensure proper operation of the fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the the air intake grille.

- Remove any ice that has accumulated on the vehicle chassis.

- Periodically check for and remove any ice or snow that may have accumulated in the wheel housing or on the brakes.

- Before getting on, remove snow or mud from the soles.

■ When driving

Accelerate the vehicle slowly and drive at a reduced speed according to the road conditions.

■ When parking

Stop the vehicle and change the shift lever to P. It is not recommended to apply the electronic parking brake. The parking brake may be frozen cannot be released

### Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.  
Chain size should be regulated for each tire size.

### Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on locations and types of roads. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Install the chain on the driving tire.

Re-tighten the chain after driving 0.5 - 1.0km.

---

### ■ Tyre Chains

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install the anti-skid chain on the driving tire.
- Install tire chains following the instructions in the user manual of the tire chains.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Driving when equipped with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause serious injury or even death.

- Use tires with the specified models for your vehicle.
- Maintain the recommended air pressure.
- Do not drive in excess of the speed limits or the speed limits specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all wheels.

### ■ Driving when equipped with tire chains

In order to avoid the possibility of causing the vehicle unable to run safely and causing serious injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, the following precautions should be observed:

- Do not exceed the prescribed speed limits for the tire chain or 50 km/h, whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden turning and braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a bend to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.

**5-1. Basic operations**

- Buttons on the audio system panel ..... 233
- Multimedia display .. 234
- Multimedia switch on the steering wheel ..... 238
- USB port..... 239

**5-2. Settings**

- System settings..... 241

**5-3. Radio**

- Using the radio ..... 249

**5-4. USB music**

- USB music play..... 252

**5-5. Bluetooth music**

- Bluetooth music play 255

**5-6. Video**

- Video play ..... 256

**5-7. Images**

- Image viewing ..... 258

**5-8. Hands-free system**

- Using the hands-free system ..... 259

**5-9. Bluetooth telephone**

- Using the Bluetooth® telephone ..... 262

**5-10. Voice recognition**

- Using the voice recognition function ..... 265

**5-11. CarLife**

- Using CarLife..... 267

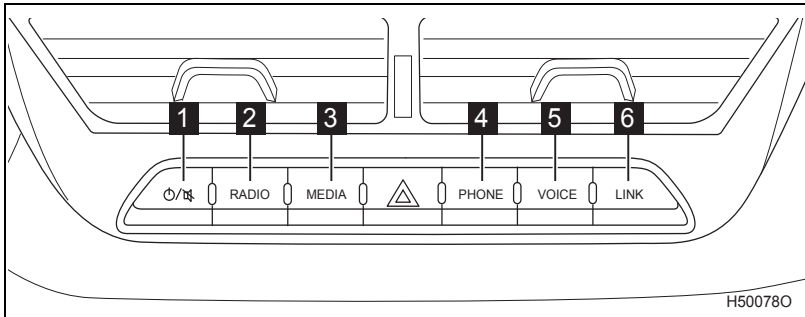
**5-12. On-board interconnection system (Hong Qi Smart Connect)**

- Using the on-board interconnection system on the vehicle \* ..... 273
- Using the on-board interconnection system on the mobile phone \* ..... 281

## 5-1. Basic operations

### Buttons on the audio system panel


Operate the audio system by pressing the following buttons.

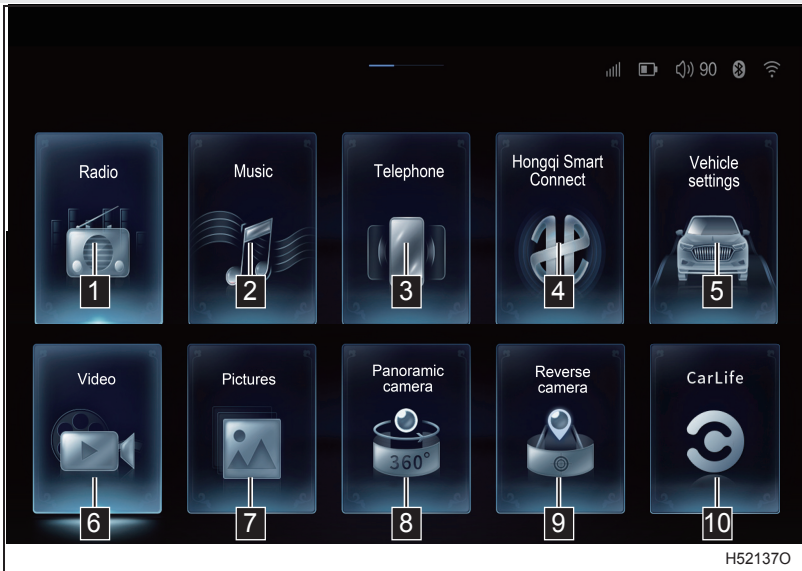


S/N	Button name	Functions
1	System shutoff/mute button	Short press: mute on/mute off Long press: turn on/off the system
2	RADIO button	FM-AM cycle during the radio mode Shifted to the radio mode from other modes
3	MEDIA button	Cycle among Bluetooth music→USB music → video
4	PHONE button	Go to the Bluetooth telephone interface by a short press; answer calls by a short press on the incoming interface, and hang up calls by a long press; switch to the speaker mode by short press on the calling interface, and hang up calls by a long press.
5	VOICE button	Go to the voice recognition interface by a short press
6	LINK button	Go to CarLife by a short press

## 5-1. Basic operations

### Multimedia display

You can go to the main menu interface by touching the screen buttons  .



S/N	Functions
1	Go to the radio application ( → P.254)
2	Go to music application ( → P.257) Play the audio files when insert the USB stick with music files. 连接有效蓝牙设备时，可进入蓝牙音乐。
3	Go to Bluetooth telephone application ( → P.278)
4	Go to Hongqi Smart Connect application* ( → P.293)
5	Go to the vehicle setting application ( → P.245)
6	Go to the video application ( → P.268) Play the video files when insert the USB stick with video files.
7	Go to the image application ( → P.271) Play the image files when insert the USB stick with image files.
8	Go to the panoramic camera application ( → P.265)
9	Go to the reversing camera application*( → P.189)
10	Go to the CarLife application ( → P.286) Go to the CarLife interface by connecting to a cellphone equipped with the Baidu Carlife client.

## Information display screen

The images shown in this manual are only for reference, and the actual images shown on the vehicle will prevail.

### ■ Splash screen



The splash screen will display when the audio system is started.

### ■ To avoid any damage to the multimedia display

- Gently touch the multimedia screen with your fingers when operating; if the contents displayed on the screen are unable to be called, it means the contents might not be called currently; please do not touch the screen too hard to prevent damaging the device.
- Please do not use sharp objects or hard objects with edges to touch or sweep the multimedia screen, or the screen might be damaged.
- Please do not spray any fluid to the multimedia screen; because if any fluid leaks into the device, the electronic components will be damaged.
- When cleaning the multimedia screen surface, please put the engine switch in "IG-OFF" mode and wipe it with a soft dry cloth. Please do not use coarse rags, chemical rags or organic reagents (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.) as they will damage or deteriorate the panel.

### ■ When using the multimedia screen

- If the multimedia screen is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The display might be dark or hard to watch clearly when you wear a pair of sunglasses, please change the multimedia screen's angle or take off your sunglasses.
- Do not expose the multimedia screen under the blazing sun for quite a long time.



## CAUTIONS

- **When using the audio system**
  - Please do not operate this system as much as possible during driving.
  - The volume should be adjusted so that the situation outside the vehicle can be heard during driving. If the volume is adjusted so that the situation outside the vehicle cannot be heard, an accident may occur.
  - Do not use it in a faulty state where no screen is displayed or no sound is produced. This may cause an accident, fire, electric shock, or fatal injury.
  - Do not operate the system in a no-parking area, as this may cause a traffic accident.
  - For safety, please do not distract or hinder safe driving because of using this function. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to an accident.
- **Do not disassemble or modify this product without permission, as this behavior may cause traffic accidents, fire, electric shock, etc.**
- **If any abnormality occurs with the system due to intrusion of the foreign matter or water, please stop using it immediately and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer. It may lead to malfunctions if you continue to use it.**



## NOTES

### ■ **Avoid low battery**

After the engine is stopped, turn off the audio system when it is not needed.

### ■ **Noise from audio system**

- The system is highly sensitive, so there might be noises when it is near television towers, broadcasting stations, power plants or other places transmitting strong radio wave or electrical noise interference.
- Interfering noises may be heard if a mobile phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

### ■ **To avoid damaging the audio system**

Take care not to spill drinks or other liquids over the audio system. If fluid or other items enters into this system, cut off the power immediately and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

### ■ **To prevent the battery depletion**

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

### ■ **Compatibility**

Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

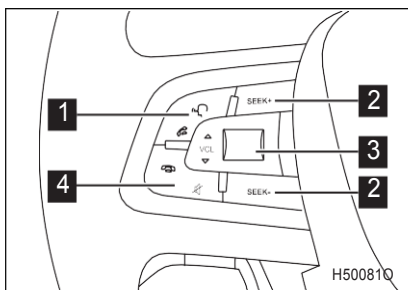
### ■ **When any fault occurs**

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

## 5-1. Basic operations

# Multimedia switch on the steering wheel

Some multimedia features can be controlled using the multimedia switches on the steering wheel.



- 1 Answer phone call button/voice recognition button
- 2 Track/channel switch button
- 3 Volume button
- 4 End phone call button/mute button

S/N	Functions
1	When there is an incoming call, answer the call by a short press; when it is on the other function interfaces, go to the voice recognition function by a short press.
2	Short press: radio mode: previous/next stored channel. Media mode: previous/next track. Long press: radio mode: auto search of channels. Media mode: fast forward /fast backward.
3	Short press: volume increase/decrease by one step. Long press: continuous volume increase/decrease.
4	During a phone call, hang up the call by a short press; when it is on the other function interfaces, go to mute on/mute off by a short press.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ While driving

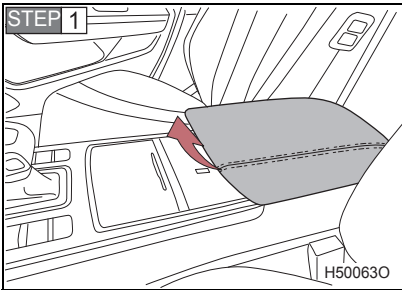
Take extra care when operating the multimedia switches on the steering wheel to prevent any accident.

## 5-1. Basic operations

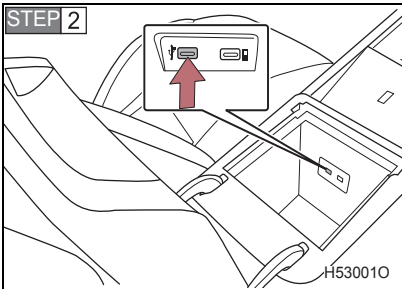
# USB port

Connect a USB device to the USB port, go to the corresponding mode, then you can operate it via the audio system.

### To use a USB port



Open the front center storage box.



Connect the external multimedia source.

#### ■ USB memory

Connect the USB memory device.

If the USB memory device is not started, turn it on.

#### ■ Charging function of the USB port

After switching the audio system on, the USB port can be used to charge a USB device.

### ⚠ CAUTIONS

#### ■ While driving

Do not connect any device or operate its control buttons to prevent any accident.

**NOTICES****■ To avoid damaging the USB device or terminals**

- The USB port must be kept clean. If any foreign matter or fluid enters into the port, the audio system might be damaged.
- Do not insert any high-current USB device except a USB stick or a mobile telephone, including mobile hard disk drives and portable power sources.
- Do not leave the USB device in the car. The temperature inside the car may increase and damage the USB device.
- When the USB device is connected, do not press or apply unnecessary pressure to it.
- Do not insert the foreign objects into the port.

**■ Compatibility**

Some devices might be unable to be functional properly because of their own compatibility issue.

**■ To ensure the system's proper identification**

It is recommended to use USB devices with good quality because USB devices with poor quality could not be identified by the system.

**■ To prevent the battery depletion**

When the engine is shut down, do not use the USB port for a long time.

**■ Mobile phone USB cable**

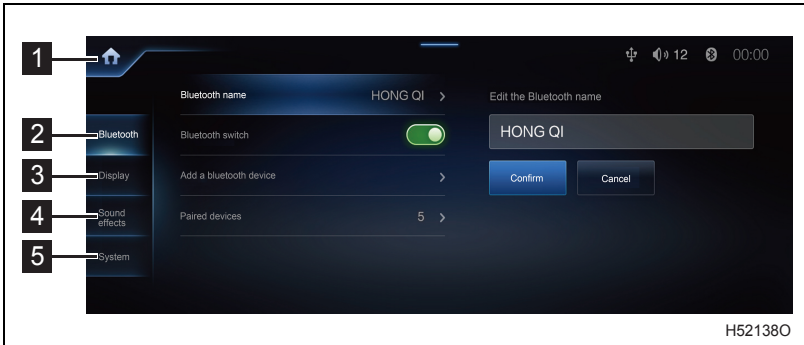
It is recommended to use the original USB cable of the mobile phone for connection to ensure a stable connection.

## 5-2. Settings

# System settings

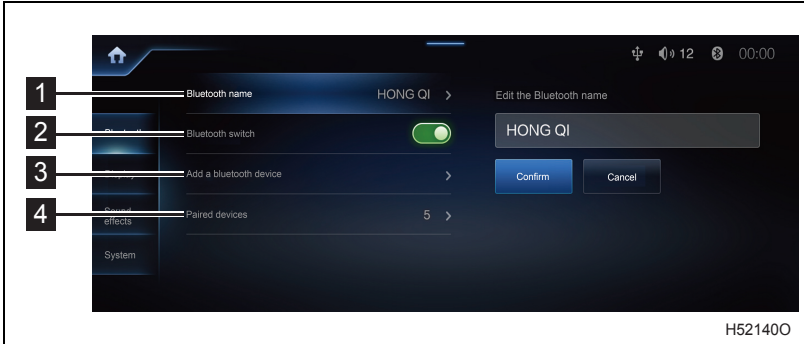
Go to the Setting main interface by tapping the button [Vehicle Settings] on the screen on the main menu interface.

### Setting main interface



- 1 HOME button
- 2 Go to the Bluetooth Setting interface ( → P.247)
- 3 Go to the Display Settings interface ( → P.249)
- 4 Go to the Sound Effect Settings interface ( → P.250)
- 5 Go to the System Settings interface ( → P.252)

## Bluetooth settings



### 1 Bluetooth name

By tapping the screen button [Bluetooth name], go to the Bluetooth name editing interface, for example, to enter “HONG QI” and confirm it and finish the altering.

### 2 Bluetooth switch




When the Bluetooth device is connected, set the Bluetooth switch to on.

### 3 Add a Bluetooth device

- By tapping the screen button [Add a Bluetooth device], unfold the drop-down menu of Add a Bluetooth device.
- Switch on the Bluetooth function at the phone’s end.
- Search for Bluetooth devices on the phone.
- Select the vehicle-mounted Bluetooth name “HONG QI” for matching and connection, after they are matched and connected, the system can be functional.
  - After the system reboots, it can automatically search and connect the Bluetooth device last matched to the system.
  - When the mobile telephone is powered off or far away from the vehicle, it is regarded as passive disconnection. When the conditions are met again, the Bluetooth will be connected automatically.
  - If the vehicle has a matching record with a phone, and when either the vehicle or the phone deletes such record, you need to delete the record on the other end to re-match them.

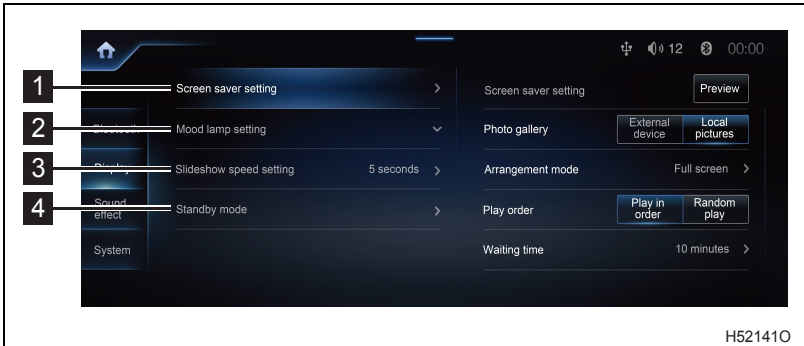
#### 4 Paired list

To display information on the phones that have been paired and connected.

- By tapping the screen button , go to the Bluetooth music interface.
- By tapping the screen button , go to the Bluetooth telephone interface.
- By tapping the screen button , disconnect it or delete this device.

The system supports manually deleting a matched device. When there are more than 8 matched devices, you must manually delete the matched devices before you can perform a new match.

## Display settings



### 1 Screen saver settings

- By tapping the screen button [Preview], preview the screen saver pictures.  
By tapping the multimedia screen in the preview mode, exit the preview mode.
- By tapping the screen button [External device] or [Local pictures], set the screen saver picture source into an external device or a local picture.
- By tapping the screen button [Arrangement], set arrangement of screen saver pictures to three modes: full screen, splice and jigsaw.
- By tapping the screen button [Play in order] or [Random play], select the play sequence for the screen saver pictures.
- By tapping the screen button [Waiting time], set the screen saver waiting time (i.e. How long to wait when the screen comes to the screen saver mode without any operation).  
Waiting time: 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 30 minutes and never.

### ■ USB memory

The following formats can be used:

- Image formats: BMP, JPG, PNG and GIF.
- USB communication format: USB2.0 .
- Image size: less than 20M.

### 3 Slides playing speed setting

To set the interval to watch pictures in the form of slides.

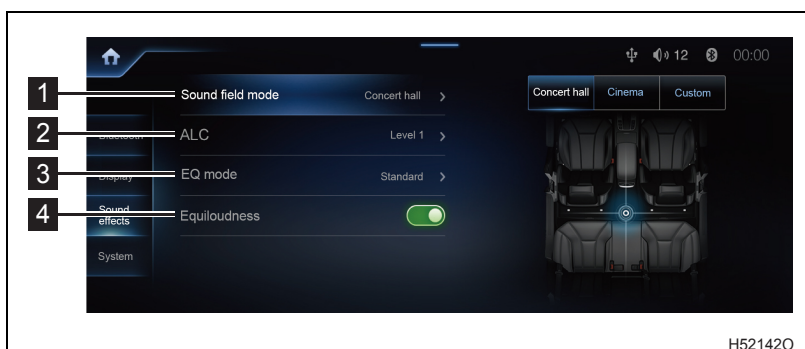
#### 4 Standby mode

You can set what will be displayed on the multimedia screen in the standby mode.

- Clock off: to display a blank screen.
- Analogue clock: to display a clock.
- Digital clock: to directly display the time information.

### Sound effect module

#### ■ Low-level configuration sound effect



#### 1 Sound field mode

You can shift the mode into Concert Hall, Cinema and Custom, and select the best listening spot by dragging the circular cursor.

#### 2 ALC mode

In the ALC mode, you can set the speed volume as Level 1, Level 2 and Level 3.

#### 3 EQ mode

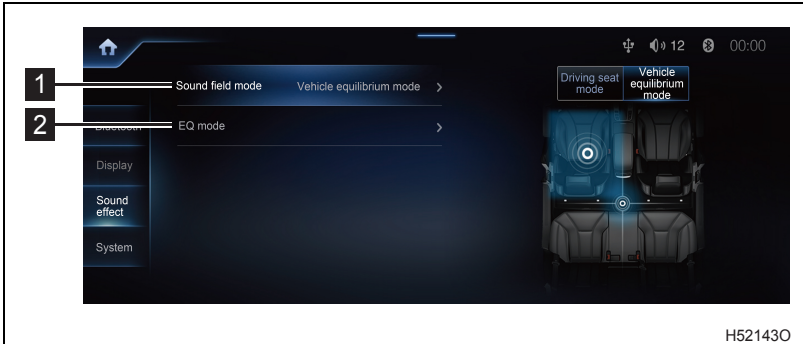
You can set the sound effect to Standard, Popular, Classic and Jazz in the EQ mode, and also manually control the parameters of all these frequency bars by preferences.

Note: only when the sound field mode is customised, you can select the EQ mode.

#### 4 Turning on/off equiloudness

Note: only when the sound field mode is custom, you can switch on and off the equiloudness.

## ■ High-level configuration sound effect



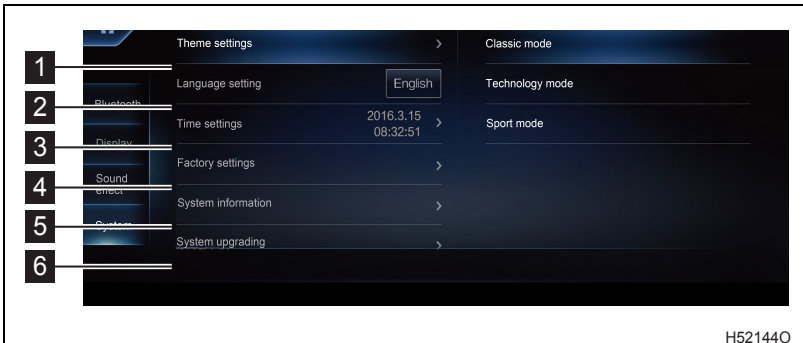
### 1 Sound field mode

You can shift the mode into Driving seat mode and the Vehicle equilibrium mode, and select the best listening spot by dragging the circular cursor.

### 2 EQ mode

You can manually control the parameters of all these frequency bars in the EQ mode.

## System module



### 1 Theme settings\*

Three theme styles can be set: classic style, technology style and sports style.

### 2 Language settings

Pressing the screen button [Chinese]/[English] selects the screen language.

**3** Time settings

## ■ Date settings

By swiping the numerical values in the Year, Month and Day ComboBox, finish the settings.

## ■ Time settings

By swiping the numerical values in the Hour, Minute and Second ComboBox, finish the settings.

Two time formats can be set for the system: 12h system and 24h system.

Note: The date and time can be set to two modes of automatic update and non-automatic update through the automatic setting.

**4** Factory settings

By tapping the screen button [Factory settings], the system will restore to the factory initial settings.

**5** System information

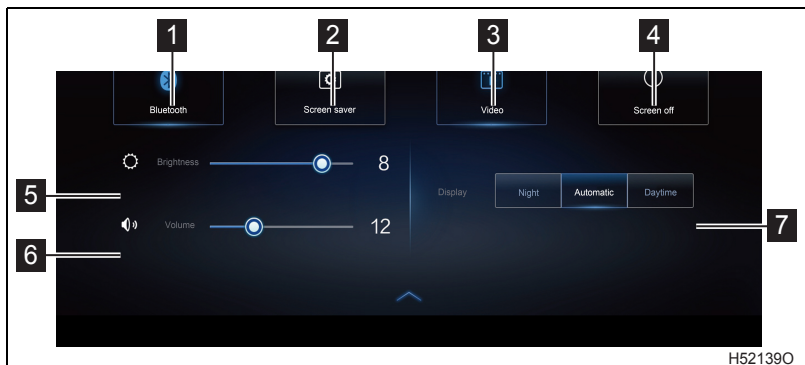
By tapping the screen button [System information], the software version, CarLife version and Bluetooth address will be displayed.

**6** System upgrading

When inserting the USB stick with an upgrading package, you can finish the system upgrading by tapping the [Start upgrade].

**Shortcut menu**

When the audio system is on, swipe down at the top of the status bar on the screen to display the shortcut menu to view some functions.




- ❶ Bluetooth quick ON/OFF
- ❷ Screensaver quick ON/OFF
- ❸ video

When this function is activated, you can watch the video regardless of the vehicle speed.

When this function is deactivated, you will be prompted not to watch the video after the vehicle speed exceeds the critical value.

- ❹ Screen off

With the screen on, touch the screen button  to turn off the screen backlight; touch anywhere on the screen again to turn on the screen.

- ❺ Screen brightness adjustment

Touch and drag the adjustment frequency bar to adjust the brightness.

- ❻ System volume adjustment

Touch and drag the adjustment frequency bar to adjust the volume.

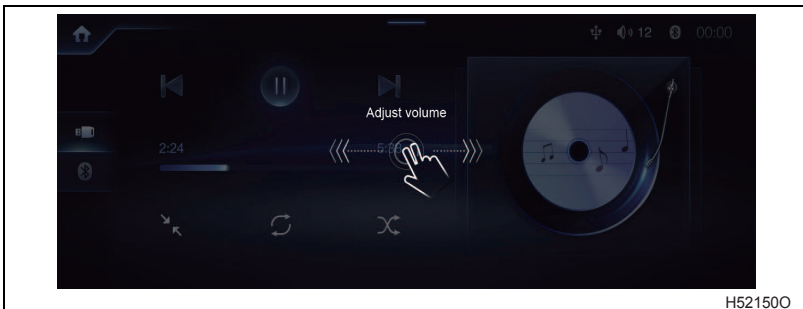
Touch the screen button  to switch between mute and unmute.

- ❼ Display setting

When daytime and night are selected, the corresponding brightness value and icon are displayed.

When auto is selected, it is judged whether the current mode is daytime or night according to the status of the headlights.

#### ■ Quick volume adjustment method

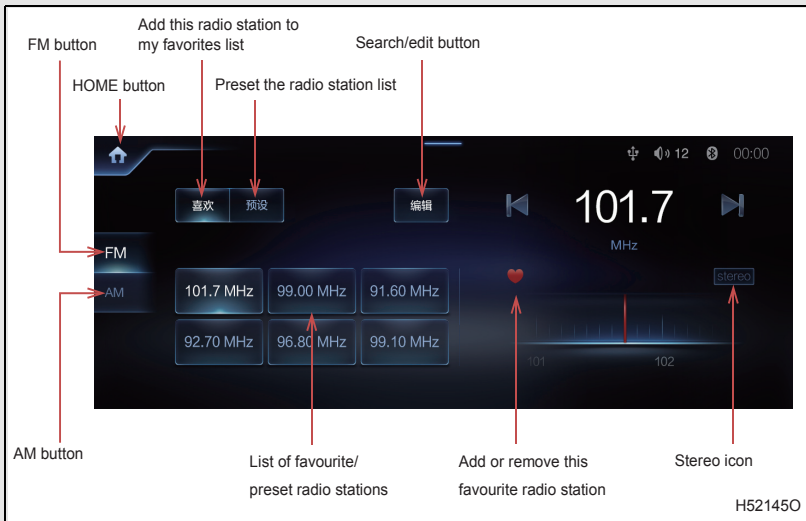


Swipe left and right on the screen with two fingers to adjust the volume

## 5-3. Radio

### Using the radio

#### Radio has two wave bands: FM and AM.



How to enter the radio screen:

Method I: by pressing the [RADIO] button, go to the radio interface.



Method II: by tapping the screen button [Radio], go to the radio interface.

#### Searching for channels

##### ■ Manually modulating

Drag the frequency slider on the touch screen to modulate the channels manually.

##### ■ Manually searching

Manually search for channels by tapping the screen buttons  and .

- Channel presetting

In the mode of Channel presetting, by tapping the screen button [Search], the system will automatically search for channels and store them to the list of preset channels, and stop previewing channels by tapping the screen button [Stop] during the searching process.

- Modulating of channels via the steering wheel

In the Channel presetting mode, the system will automatically shift channels in the list of preset channels by a short press of the [SEEK+]/[SEEK-].

In the Favourite channels mode, the system will automatically shift channels in the list of favourite channels by a short press of the [SEEK+]/[SEEK-].

The system will automatically search for preset channels and play them by a long press of the [SEEK+]/[SEEK-].

## Selecting channels

### List of preset channels

- By tapping the screen button [Preset] on the Radio interface, go to the List of preset channels, and the user can directly select a channel in the list for playing.

### List of favourite channels

- By tapping the screen button [Favourite] on the Radio interface, go to the List of favourite channels, and the user can directly select a channel in the list for playing.

## Saving channels


The system supports to save channels in the following ways:

- By tapping the screen button  on the Radio interface, store the currently playing channel to the List of favourite channels.

## Editing the list of favourite channels

- To delete a stored favourite channel

In the mode of List of favourite channels, by tapping the screen button [Edit] and [X], delete a stored favourite channel.

When playing a channel in the List of favourite channels, by tapping the screen button  , delete a stored favourite channel.

---

■ **Antenna**

The radio antenna is mounted inside the shark fin antenna.



**NOTICES**

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

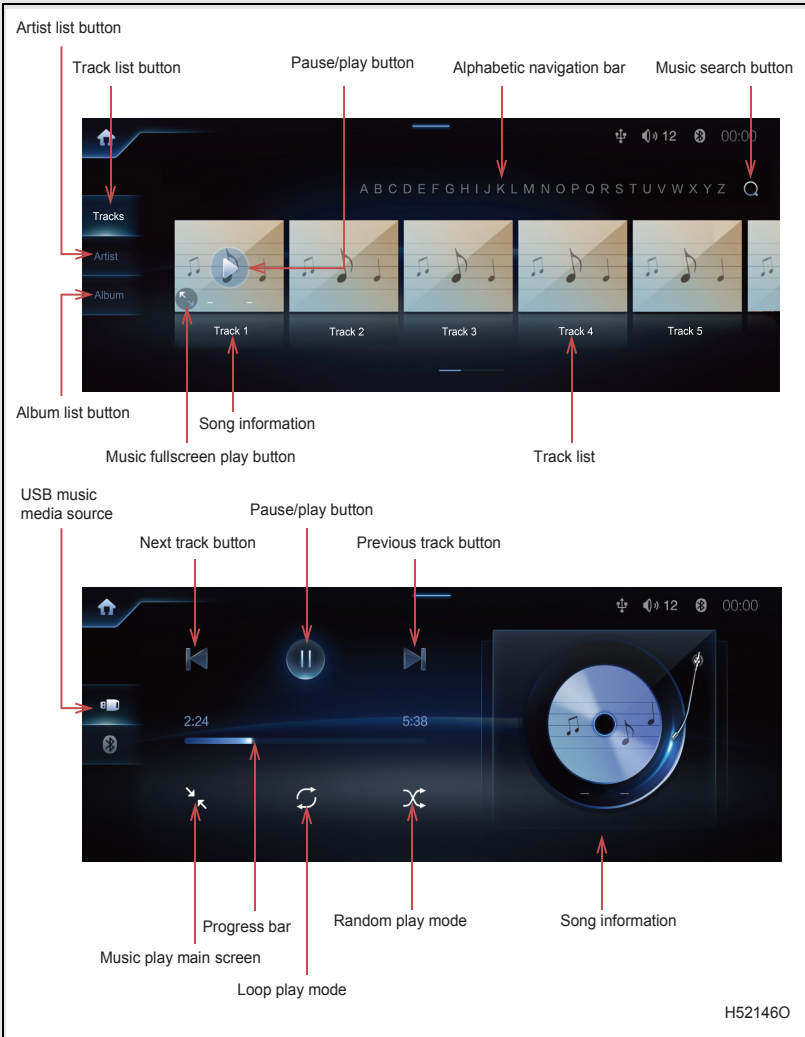
The channel list will be restored to the factory settings.

■ **Receiving sensitivity**

It is difficult to maintain perfect reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.

## 5-4. USB music USB music play

When you connect a USB device with music files, you may play music on the multimedia display screen.



Three methods to enter into the music interface:



Method I: by pressing the [MEDIA] button, shift to the USB music interface when the system is connected to the USB device with audio files.

Method II: by tapping the screen button [Music], select the USB music media source to go to the USB music interface when the system is connected to the USB device with audio files.

Method III: insert the USB stick with audio files.

## Play control



### ■ Pause/Play

Tap the screen button  / .

### ■ Play progress control

By tapping/dragging the progress bar, you can control the play progress.


### ■ Switching tracks



By a short press of the [SEEK+]/[SEEK-], switching the track cover or tapping the screen button  / , you can select the previous/next track to play.

### ■ Track list selecting

By tapping the screen button [Track], [Artist] or [Album], go to the corresponding file list interface, and select any track in the list to play.


## Play mode

By tapping the Random play mode button, when  is on, go to the Random play mode;

By tapping the Loop playback mode button, when  is on, go to the Random play mode; when  is on, go to the Loop playback mode.

### Track searching

Select tracks by tapping the initials in the Initial navigation bar.

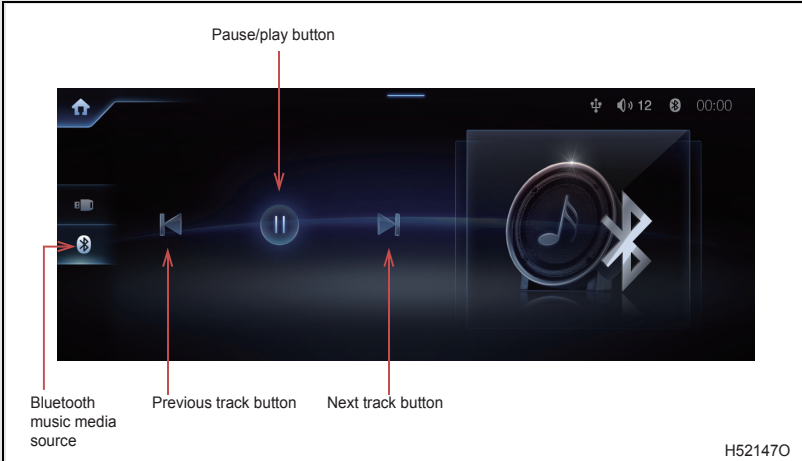
By tapping the screen button  , go to the search bar, and enter the track name to look it up.

- 
- **The system supports the audio files in the formats of MP3, ACC, FLAC and OGG.**


## 5-5. Bluetooth music

### Bluetooth music play





The system supports Bluetooth music play, and you can go to the Bluetooth music play interface by starting the Bluetooth music. You can control the play via the buttons on the Bluetooth music play interfaces.



The approaches to go to the Bluetooth music play interface: connect the Bluetooth and tap the screen button [Music], select Bluetooth music media source to go to Bluetooth music interface.

Note: if the Bluetooth is not connected, go to the Bluetooth setting interface for connecting by tapping the screen button .

#### Play control

- **Pause/Play**  
Tap the screen button  / .
- **Switching tracks**  
By a short press of the [SEEK+]/[SEEK-] or tapping the screen button  / , you can select the previous/next track to play.

#### NOTICES

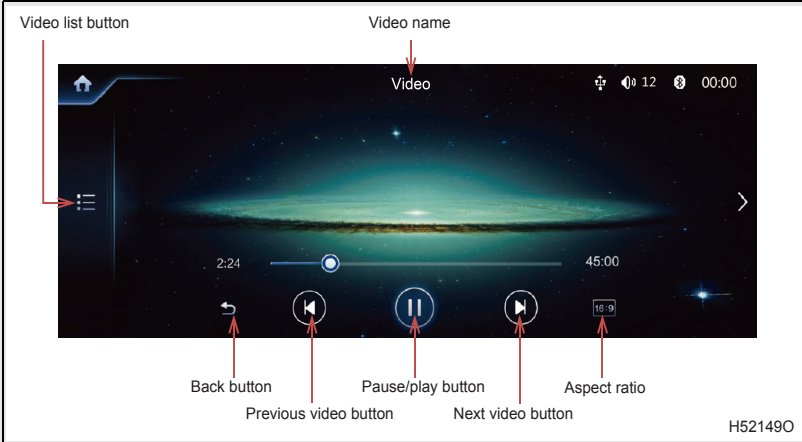
##### ■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

## 5-6. Video

# Video play



When a USB device with video files is connected, you can play videos in the multimedia screen.



There are two methods to enter into the Video interface:  
Method I: by pressing the [MEDIA] button, shift to the video interface when the system is connected to the USB device with video files.  
Method II: by tapping the screen button [Video], go to the video interface when the system is connected to the USB device with video files.

## Play control



### ■ Pause/Play

Tap the screen button  / .


### ■ Fast backward/fast forward

By tapping/dragging the progress bar, you can control the play progress.

### ■ Video shift

By tapping the screen button  /  or a short press of the [SEEK+]/[SEEK-], you can select the previous/next video file to play.

### ■ Display of list of all files

By tapping the screen button  on the video play interface, display video files in current devices, and you can any file from the list to play.

## Video settings

On the video play interface, conduct the following settings by tapping Display scale:

### ■ Display scale

Set the video display scale to 16:9 or 4:3.

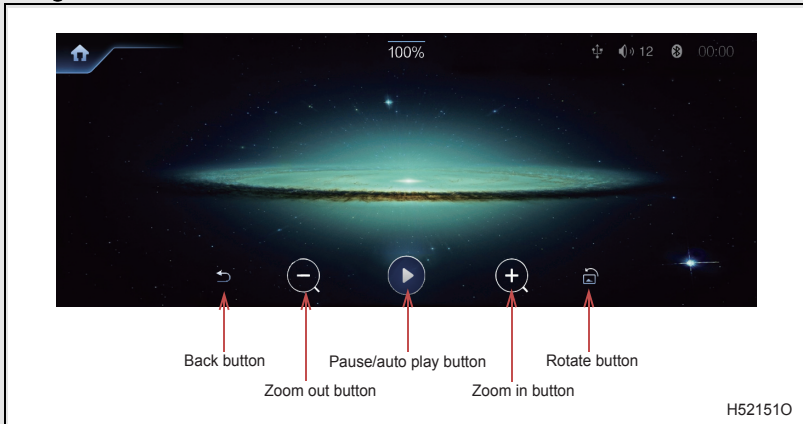
---

**The system supports video files in the formats of MP4, MKV and FLV.**

## 5-7. Images






### Image viewing

When a USB device with image files is connected, you can view images in the multimedia screen.



How to go to the Image viewing interface: when the system is connected to the USB device with image files, by tapping the screen button [Image], go to the image interface.

#### Image viewing

- **Pause/automatic play**  
Tap the screen button  / .
- **Image zoom in/zoom out**  
By tapping the screen buttons  and , you can zoom in and zoom out the image.
- **Rotating images**  
By tapping the screen button , you can adjust the image angle.
- **Manually view images**  
Swipe to the left on the screen to view the previous image; swipe to the right on the screen to view the next image.

- 
- **The system supports images in the formats of BMP, JPG and PNG.**

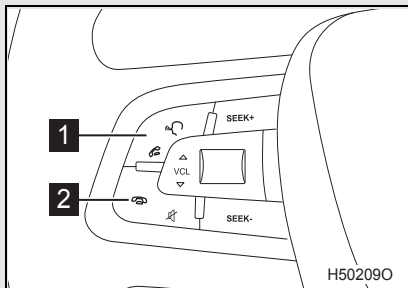
## 5-8. Hands-free system

### Using the hands-free system

**The hands-free system allows you to use the phone call function of a mobile telephone without touching it.**



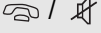

This system supports Bluetooth® mobile telephones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system, which allows your mobile phone to be connected to the hands-free system wirelessly for dialing/answering phone calls.

#### ■ Phone call switch



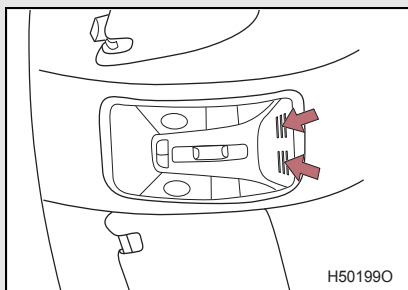
- 1 Answer phone call/  
voice recognition button
- 2 End phone call/mute  
button

See the table below for Bluetooth functions:

Buttons	Description	Functions
 / 	Press	When receiving an incoming call, short press it to answer the phone call; and when in other function interfaces, short press it to go to the voice recognition function.
 / 	Press	During calls, short press it to end the call; and when in other function interfaces, short press it to mute/unmute.

To use the hands-free system, you must connect your Bluetooth phone. ( → P.278)

#### ■ Bluetooth microphone



The person you are speaking to can hear your voice.

---

**■ When using the hands-free system**

- The audio system will be muted when making a call.
- If both parties speak at the same time, it may be difficult to hear.
- If the incoming call volume is overly loud, an echo may be heard.
- Try to face toward the microphone as much as possible when speaking.
- In the following circumstances, it may be difficult to hear the other party:
  - The cell phone signal is bad.
  - When driving on unpaved roads.
  - When driving at high speeds.
  - If a window is open.
  - If the air conditioning is blowing directly on the microphone.
  - If the air conditioning blower delivers too high air volume.

**■ Conditions under which the system will not operate:**

- If using a mobile phone that does not support Bluetooth®.
- If the mobile phone is switched off or in flight mode.
- If you are outside service range.
- If the mobile phone is not connected.
- If the mobile phone's battery is low.

**■ Bluetooth® antenna**

If the mobile phone is behind the seat or in the console box, or touching or covered by metal objects, connection status may deteriorate.

**■ Battery level/signal status**

This display may not correspond exactly with the mobile phone itself.

■ **About Bluetooth®**



Bluetooth® is the trademark for Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ **Compatible models**

The Bluetooth hands-free system is only compatible with the mainstream brand Bluetooth mobile phones that passed Bluetooth certification (SIG) and are sold in regular channels.

 **NOTICES**

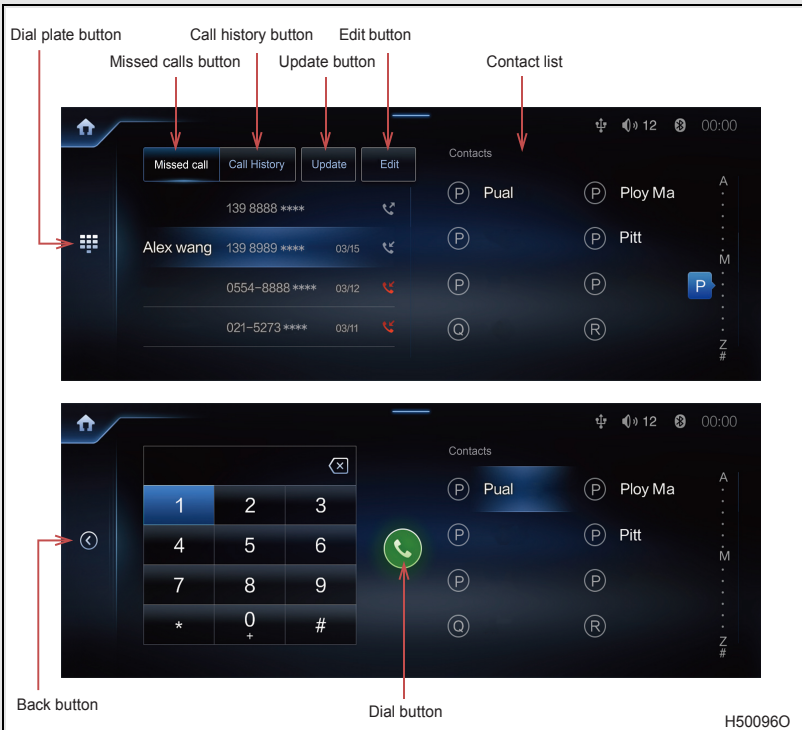
■ **When leaving the vehicle**

Do not leave your mobile telephone behind in the vehicle, which would be damaged because of temperature increase in the vehicle.

## 5-9. Bluetooth telephone

# Using the Bluetooth® telephone

The system supports the features including making calls, answering calls, ending calls, viewing your phone book, and viewing your call history.



There are two methods to enter into the Telephone interface:

Method I: when Bluetooth is connected, press [Phone] button, and go to the Telephone interface.

Method II: when Bluetooth is connected, tap the screen button [Phone], and go to the Telephone interface.

Note: if the Bluetooth is not connected, go to the Settings interface by tapping the screen button [Connect Bluetooth]; after it is connected, go to the Bluetooth telephone interface. (→ P.247)

## Phone book

After the Bluetooth of the mobile telephone is bound successfully, via [Contacts] on the right side of the screen, you can view the phone book entries on the mobile telephone end.

## Call history

### ■ Call history viewing

After the mobile telephone is bound to the Bluetooth system successfully, by tapping the [Call history] button, you can view the answered, missed or dialed number on the mobile telephone.

## ⚠ NOTICES

■ Only when the phone grants access to the phone book and call history, the phone book and call history will be displayed on the screen.

## Making a call

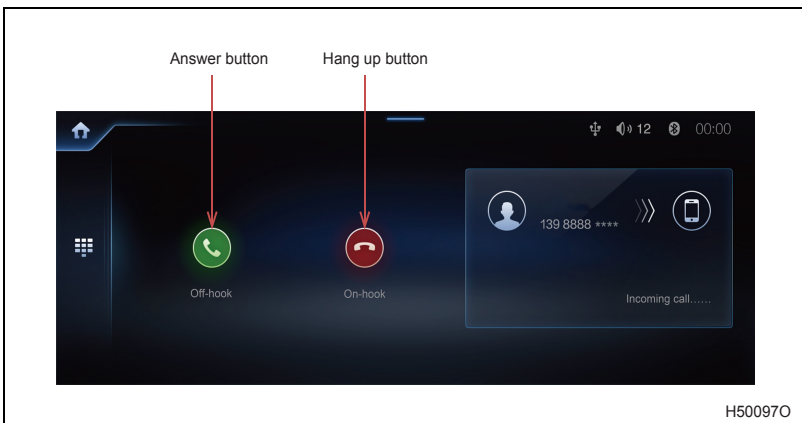
Two methods to make a call:

Method I: to dial the number via the phone book or the call history.

Method II: to enter the phone number on the telephone main interface to dial.

## Answering/ending the incoming call



When there is an incoming call, the caller ID will pop up.





Three methods to answer/end an incoming call:

Method I: by tapping the screen button [Answer]/[End], answer and end the incoming call.

Method II: by a short press of the [PHONE] button, answer the call, and by a long press of the [PHONE] button, end the call.


Method II: by pressing the  /  button on the multifunction steering wheel, answer and end the incoming call.

### Hands-free mode shift

During the call, by pressing the  button or a short press of [Phone] button or tapping the screen button  , you can shift it between the private/hand-free modes.

Because some mobile phones do not support the private/hand-free shift, the Bluetooth connection might be off during a private/hand-free shift.

### Microphone mute

During the call, by tapping the screen button  , you can shift between the microphone mute status and non-mute status. When the microphone is mute, the other party of the call will not listen any sound.

### Bluetooth automatic connection

After the Bluetooth function is on and has detected the connected Bluetooth device, it would automatically connect the Bluetooth device.

### Privacy protection

The contacts and call history on each mobile phone can only be displayed after the phone is successfully connected. When the phone is not connected, you are unable to view any contact or call history on the phone.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ While driving

Do not use a mobile phone or connect to a Bluetooth® system.



### NOTICES

#### ■ When leaving the vehicle


Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

# Using the voice recognition function

**Users can achieve voice control to the system via the voice recognition function.**

**Voice control functions include: radio, audio/video play, Bluetooth telephone, navigation and A/C control.**

### Voice recognition triggering

Method I: by pressing the steering wheel button  , trigger the voice recognition system \*1.

Method II: by pressing the [VOICE] button on the audio system panel, trigger the voice recognition system \*1.

Method III: by speaking the wake-up instruction “Hello, Hong Qi” trigger the on-board interconnection voice recognition system.


When connecting with a mobile phone installed with the Baidu CarLife, trigger the CarLife voice recognition system by speaking the wake-up instruction “Xiaodu, Xiaodu”.

Method IV: by tapping the voice button on the on-board interconnection or CarLife interface, enter into a corresponding voice recognition system.

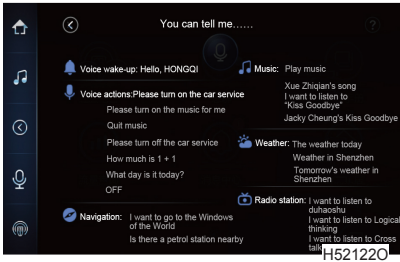
\*1: when connecting with a mobile phone installed with the Baidu CarLife, trigger the Baidu CarLife voice recognition system; when not connecting with a mobile phone installed with the Baidu CarLife, trigger the on-board interconnection voice recognition system for the vehicles equipped with the on-board interconnection voice recognition system.

After trigger the voice recognition system, speak the voice order to control the system functions; for voice order information, refer to the Voice recognition help interface.

### Voice recognition help

By tapping the voice recognition interface button  , go to the on-board interconnection voice recognition or CarLife voice recognition help interface.

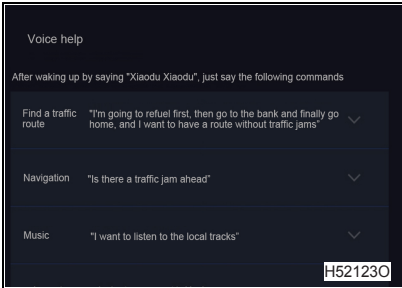
### ► On-board interconnection voice recognition help interface



For example:

When the users say the voice instruction “FM88.0”, and the system recognized this, it goes to the radio application for playing FM88.0.

### ► CarLife voice recognition help interface




For example:

When the users say the voice instruction “Turn on the navigation system”, and the system recognized this, it goes to the Navigation interface.

## Voice recognition exit

Method I: after the voice recognition system is triggered, if there is no recognizable order in 5s, the system will automatically exit Voice recognition.

Method II: the system will exit after a voice order is executed normally.

Method III: by tapping  on the voice recognition interface, exit Voice recognition.

### NOTICES

- The voice recognition results are only for reference.
- Please use standard and clear Mandarin, avoid use the system in a noisy environment to prevent incorrect recognition results.
- While driving, try to avoid using the voice recognition function, if you do use it, please try to avoid watching the screen to prevent risks.

## Using CarLife

The CarLife function can achieve the interconnection between a mobile phone and the audio system, extend functions of the mobile phone to the audio system, and allow the user to enjoy convenient and efficient customized services inside the vehicle.

### Mobile phone connection

By connecting your mobile phone with the USB port via your phone's USB cable ( → P.243).

When an Android mobile phone is connected for the first time, a confirmation option on USB debugging will pop up, and please choose OK.

### Go to CarLife mode

Method I: press [LINK] on the audio panel.

Method II: tap [CarLife] in the main menu.

### Installation of Baidu CarLife software

Method I: go to the CarLife mode, and scan the corresponding QR code on the multimedia screen for downloading and installation.

Method II: download the Baidu CarLife from the Internet and install it.

### ■ Before connecting with a mobile phone

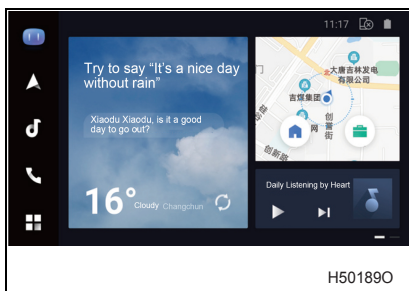
For a mobile phone with the Android operation system, you need to enable its USB debugging function ahead of time, also you need to enable the MTP mode, otherwise, your mobile phone will not be recognized.

### ■ Connection stability

Connection stability has everything to do with the mobile phone's USB cable quality, if any connection issue, the user needs to pull out and plug it again or replace it with a better USB cable.

## Using CarLife's functions


After the CarLife is successfully enabled, the screen will display the interface of the mobile phone end in a real-time manner; you can tap or drag buttons there, just like what you would do on your mobile client.



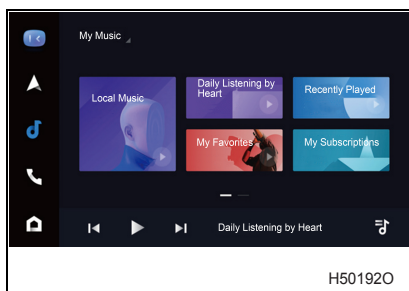
Go to the CarLife main menu.


## ■ Maps



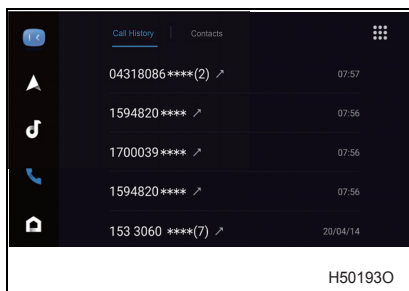
By tapping the button  at the left of the screen, you can use Baidu Maps (when the mobile data traffic on your mobile phone is enabled).


## ■ Music



By tapping the button  at the left of the screen, you can use the music play function.

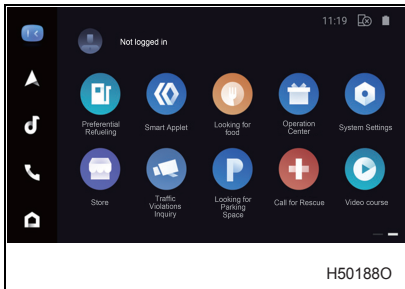
## ■ Phone calls




By tapping the button  at the left of the screen, you can use the telephone functions, including making calls, viewing contacts and viewing call history.

The above functions can only be used properly when corresponding permission is given when CarLife is installed on your mobile phone.

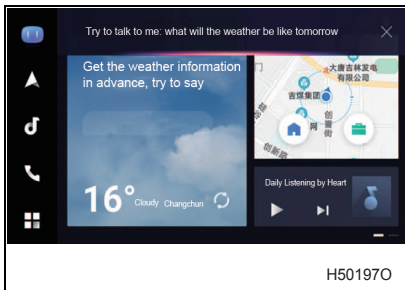
## Discovery





By tapping the button  at the left of the screen or sliding to the left on the main interface, you can use its extended functions, such as looking for a parking space or traffic violations inquiry, system settings and etc.

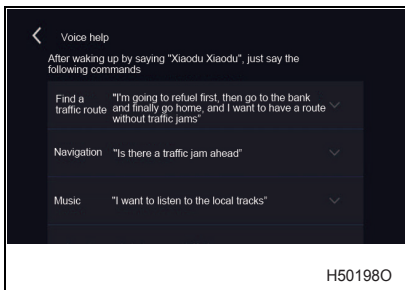
Some functions require the phone call function or Internet function of your mobile phone.

## Voice recognition



By tapping the button  at the left of the screen, you can use the voice recognition function.

By tapping the pop-up window to expand the voice recognition interface, and tapping the button  on the voice recognition interface to access detailed instructions on voice recognition.



By swiping up and down, view the voice instructions; as guided by the interface tips, you can make calls and navigations via voice recognition.

### ■ Requirements on your mobile phone

For specific mobile phone models and OS versions, please visit <http://carlife.baidu.com>.

Tips: the compatibility to iPhones depends on versions released by Apple Inc.

### ■ When using CarLife

If during the use, CarLife at the mobile phone end is switched to background, the vehicle end will not display the real-time interface of the mobile phone. But it will display the button to enable CarLife, which helps you to switch the CarLife at the mobile phone end to the foreground, and the CarLife function is back on.

### ■ CarLife versions

Because CarLife versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.



## NOTICES

### ■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your mobile telephone or other belongings behind in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the phone.

### ■ Permission

When using some functions of CarLife, the corresponding permission needs to be given and make sure any third-party tool does not forbid the CarLife network privilege, otherwise, the system might not be functional.

### ■ Compatibility

Some mobile phones might be unable to use all features of CarLife properly because of their own compatibility issue.

### ■ To make sure the system's proper identification of mobile phones

It is recommended to use USB data cable with good quality because poor-quality USB data cable to the mobile phone could not be identified by the system.

**CAUTIONS****■ While driving**

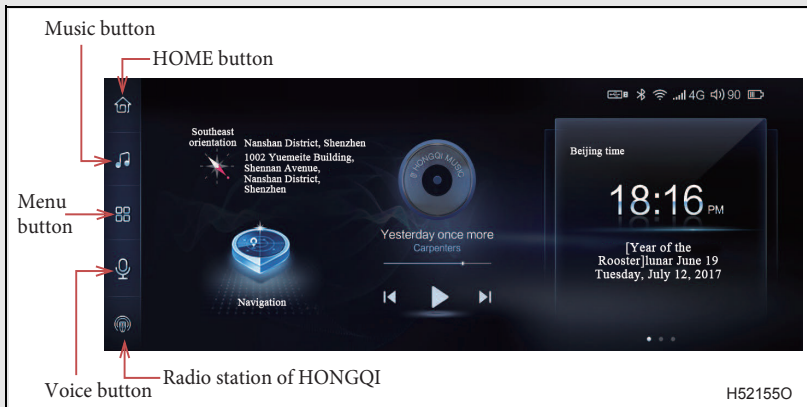
- When navigating paths via the navigation system, please drive according to the actual traffic rules. If you just follow the routes recommended in the navigation system to drive, sometimes, you might break the traffic rules, leading to traffic accidents.
- While driving, the driver shall not carry out address searching and other similar operations before the pull over. If the driver does not pay attention to the road conditions, it might lead to traffic accidents.

**■ Receiving sensitivity**

It is difficult to maintain perfect reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.

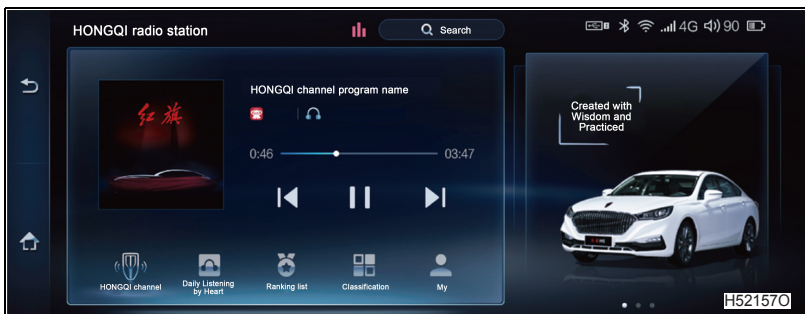
## 5-12.On-board interconnection system (Hong Qi Smart Connect)\* Using the on-board interconnection system on the vehicle \*

As a set of online open ecological system based on Internet, the on-board interconnection system includes the modules of navigation, music, voice assistant, HONGQI station, Xiangliao, E-manual, data traffic query, message center, smart home, personal center, trip memo, user-personalized, APP store, car service, settings.



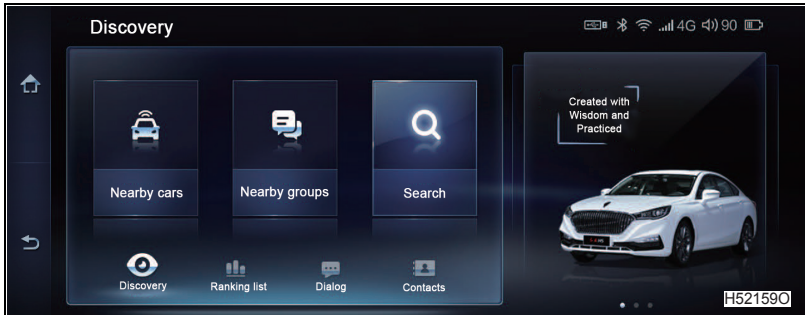
### HONGQI station

Users can listen to and bookmark radio stations conveniently and quickly through "HONGQI station". You may perform operations such as playback, search, collection, and sharing to the tracks.



## Xiangliao (wanting to chat)

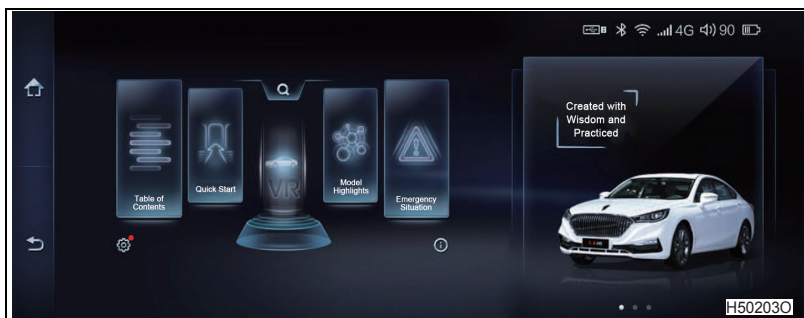
Xiangliao (wanting to chat) includes four functions: Discovery, Ranking, Dialogue and Contacts.



- By tapping the button [Discovery] at the bottom of the screen, go to the Discovery interface to view fellow drivers and group nearby; or by entering the license plate number or group number for accurate searching of fellow drivers and groups.
- By tapping the button [Ranking] at the bottom of the screen, go to the Ranking interface to view the rankings of fellow drivers; by tapping Share, share the corresponding personal vehicle information to your friend or a group chat.
- By tapping the button [Dialogue] at the bottom of the screen, go to the Dialogue interface; by tapping list of your friends or groups, you can go to a dialogue; by tapping “+”, you can create a new individual or group dialogue; by tapping “Personal profile” in the top right corner, you can view and maintain your personal profile.
- By tapping the button [Contacts] at the bottom of the screen, go to the Contacts interface, interact and talk with your friends.

## E-manual

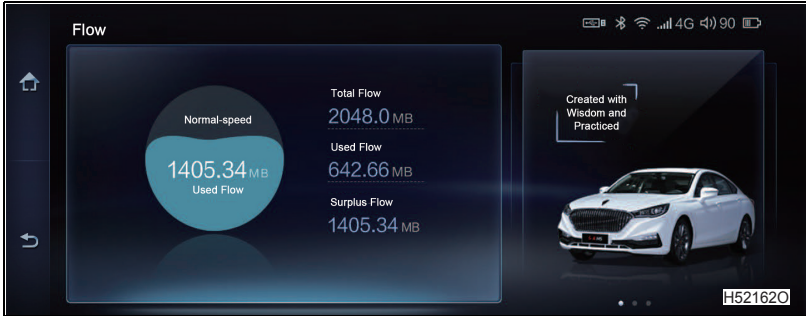
Users may quickly learn about the vehicle through the electronic manual.



By selecting the content on the screen, you may enter the corresponding interface and then operate and use it following the system prompts.

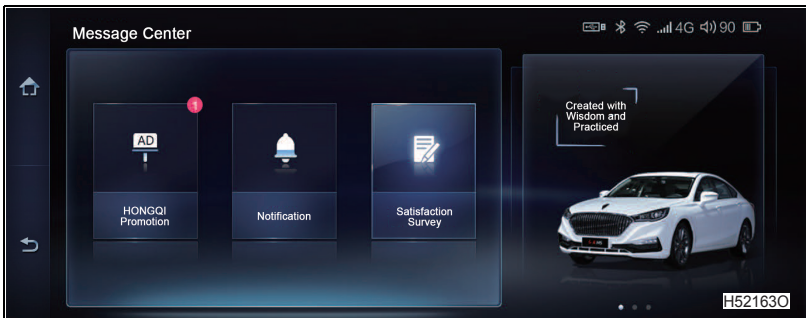
## Data traffic query

Users can view their data traffic via the “Data traffic query” function.



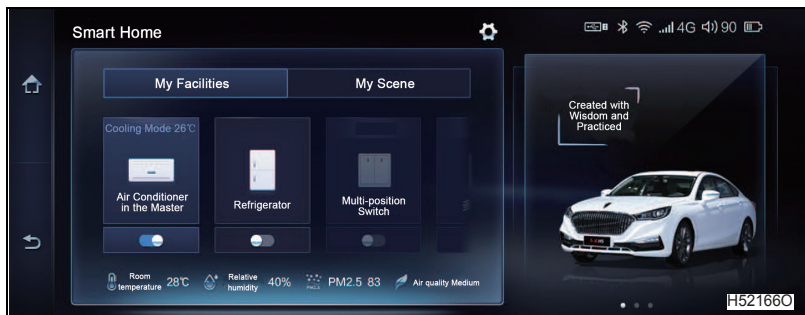
## Message Center

Users can learn about various activities and latest notices held by Hongqi through the "Message Center", and can participate in related activities for satisfaction surveys.



## Smart Home

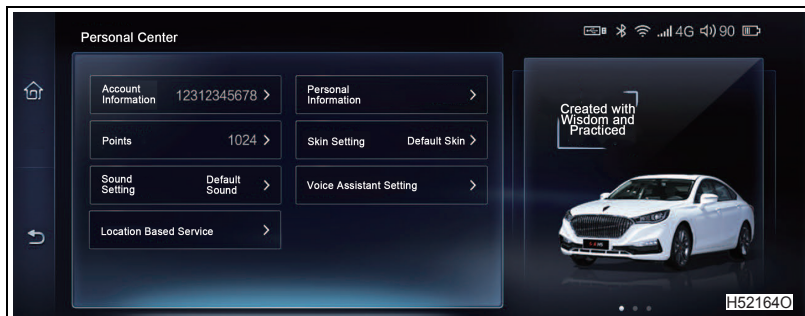
Users can experience a one-stop and convenient smart home experience through "smart home".



For the first login, the user needs to scan the QR code to log in according to the prompt.

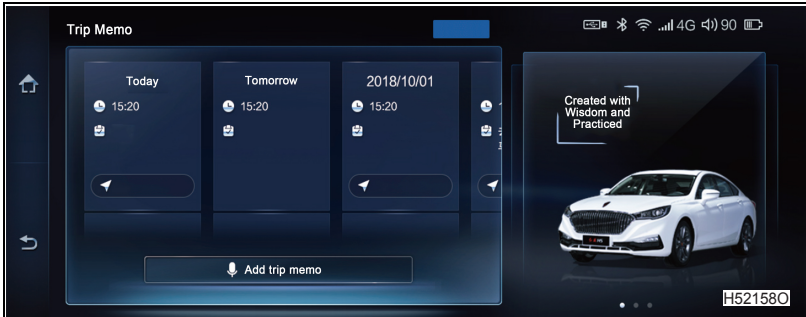
## Personal Centre

The personal centre includes: account information, personal profile, points, skin settings, sound settings, voice assistant setting and location based service.



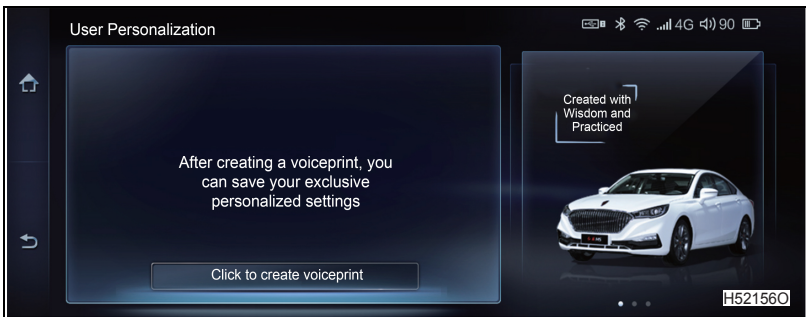
## Trip Memo

Users can view and add trip through "Trip Memo", and will be reminded by the system based on the trip memo.



## User Personalization

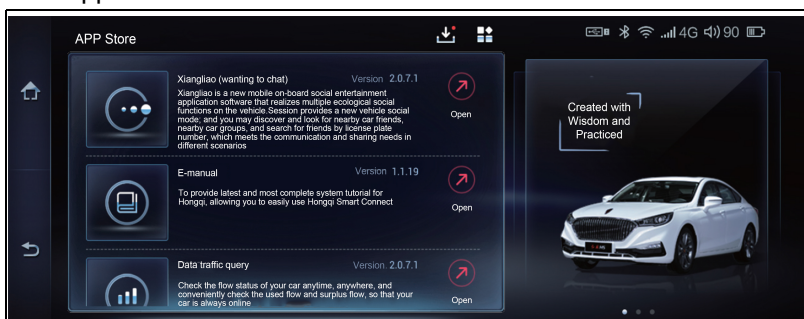
The user can store part of the current vehicle settings in the user account; and the system can determine the user ID after identifying the user's voiceprint characteristics and retrieve the settings in the user account.



By selecting the content on the screen, you may enter the corresponding interface and then operate and use it following the system prompts.

### APP Store

Users can download/update/install the system applications through the "App Store".

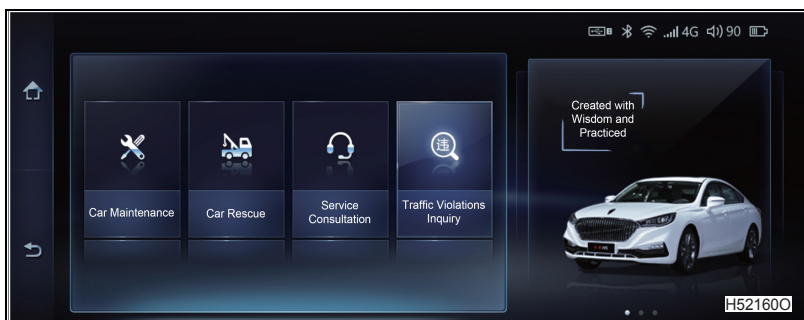


By selecting the content on the screen, you may enter the corresponding interface and then operate and use it following the system prompts.

H521610

### Car Service

Car services include: Vehicle maintenance, Vehicle rescue, Service consultation, Traffic violations inquiry and Car to Phone.



- By tapping "Vehicle maintenance", "Vehicle rescue" or "Service consultation", go to the searching list of nearby 4S stores; by tapping related buttons, operate and use them as guided by the system.
- By tapping "Traffic violations inquiry" and entering the vehicle information, you can query the vehicle's traffic violations.
- By tapping "Car to Phone", send the destination in the vehicle navigation system to your mobile phone's on-board interconnection APP.

## Setting

The system settings include: WiFi, hotspot, version information, and factory data resetting.



### ■ On-board interconnection version

Because on-board interconnection system versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.

## 5-12. On-board interconnection system ((Hong Qi Smart Connect)\* Using the on-board interconnection system on the mobile phone \*

### Mobile phone APP

You can remotely control and operate the vehicle via Mobile phone APP.

- By opening the logged-in on-board interconnection APP on the mobile phone, go to the APP homepage.



#### 1 Discovery

You can view and participate in interactions such as recommendations, circles, information, activities, and Q&A.

#### 2 Service

You can perform the functions such as checking car models, network query, Hongqi heart service, violation query, data traffic management, road rescue, electronic manual and so on.

#### 3 My car

Information view: You can view the ODO and remaining fuel, and touch the license plate number at the top of the main interface to view the vehicle information.

Remote control: you can perform quick operations on locking, unlocking, starting, car search, and seat heating on the main interface; touch [Temperature Purification] to remotely set the air conditioning system; touch [Driving Behavior] to view driving behavior score; touch [More] or touch the picture of the vehicle to go to the vehicle condition interface, where you can view and operate tire pressure and other information.

### 4 Enjoychat

On which you can view the messages, chat and interact with friends, and search for friends.

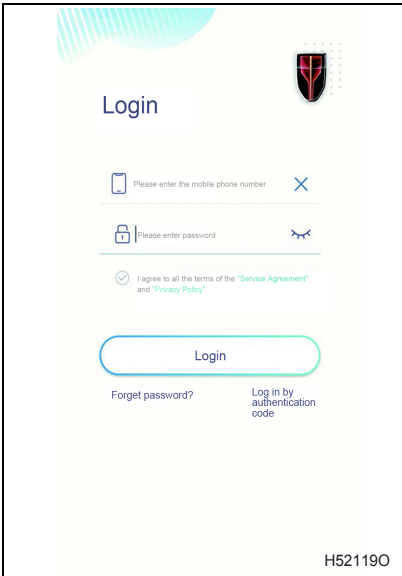
### 5 My

In My interface, you can operate and view the functions such as user information, my car, concerned models, my activities, my appointments, and membership rights.

Touch the Settings button in the upper left corner of the interface to enter the Settings page, where you can manage PIN code, change the password, set emergency contact, my address, skin settings, FAQ, clear cache, about us and log out.

Touch the customer service button on the right side of the page to inquire about the activities, points, prizes, orders, use of APP, car control, car service, and use of car.

## Login



By entering the mobile phone No. and your password, and tapping the phone screen button [Login], you can log into the system.

If you forget the password, by tapping [Forget the password], you can retrieve your password.

### ■ APP downloading

About the downloading and installation of the mobile APP, please ask the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

### ■ Login information

Users will provide their personal information to dealers for real name authentication, and the system will give the APP login information and the PIN information on vehicle control to the user after the real name authentication; for details, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

### ■ On-board interconnection version

Because on-board interconnection system versions keep updated, the actual operating interface might differ from the above schematic diagram; the latest version will prevail.

### ■ Using mobile APP

The “FAQ” or “customer service consultation” can help users to quickly understand and use the mobile APP.

### ■ Remote start

- Before the remote start, please make sure all doors, windows, the sunroof, trunk lid and engine hood are closed and the vehicle is locked.
- After the remote start, when the vehicle anti-theft system is released, the engine will stop running.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ When your mobile phone is missing

If your mobile phone is missing, the risk for the vehicle to be stolen goes significantly higher. Please keep it safe, and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if necessary.

#### ■ Receiving sensitivity

It is difficult to maintain perfect reception at all times due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains and transmitters.



### NOTICES

#### ■ During remote start

- Do not use the remote start function in a poorly ventilated area. In a closed area, such as a garage, exhaust gases caused by starting the engine may collect and enter the vehicle.
- Do not use the remote start function in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If the vehicle gets stuck in fresh snow, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.
- During remote start, make sure there is no combustible near the vehicle. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot, and may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

#### ■ Permission

When using some functions of the on-board interconnection system, the corresponding permission needs to be given and make sure any third-party tool does not forbid the on-board interconnection network privilege, otherwise, the system might not be functional.

#### ■ When any fault occurs

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if the fault still can not be eliminated.

**6-1. Using the A/C system**

Fully automatic A/C system ..... 286

- Using the automatic A/C system ..... 287
- Manual regulation 287
- Front windshield defrosting/defogging.....290
- Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets 291
- Windshield heating ..293

**6-2. Using the interior lamps**

List of interior lamps 294

- Front room lamp .. 295
- Front map light ..... 295
- Rear map light ..... 295
- Vanity mirror light .296
- Trunk light ..... 296

**6-3. Using the storage units**

List of storage units .297

- Glove box .....298
- Front seat center storage compartment..... 298
- Rear storage compartment ..... 299
- Cup holders.....300
- Bottleholder and side pocket ..... 301

- File pocket .....302
- Eyeglasses box ... 302

- Trunk hook .....303
- 

**6-4. Other interior equipment**

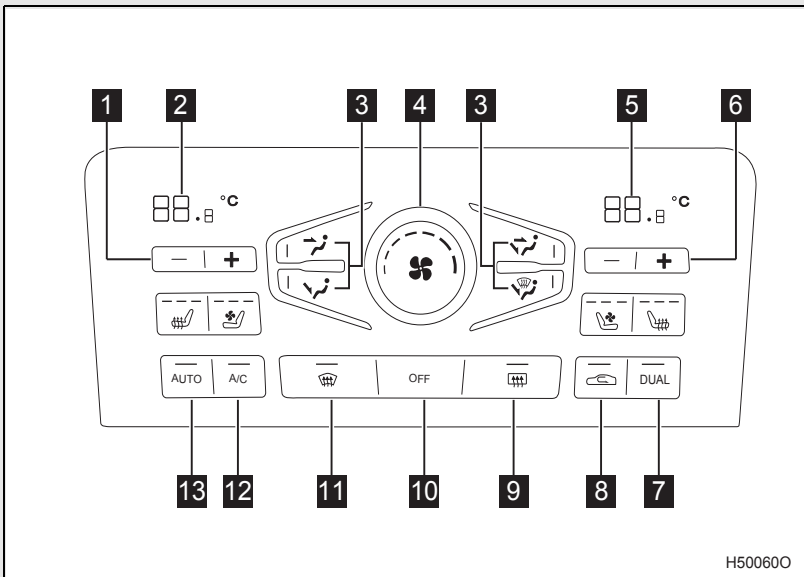
- On-board wireless charging \* .....304
- Sun visor.....305
- File holder.....306
- Vanity mirror.....307
- Power socket .....308
- Seat temperature control\* ..... 309
- Rear central armrest.....311
- Roof grab handle.....312
- Coat hook.....313

## 6-1. Using the A/C system

### Fully automatic A/C system

This vehicle is equipped with the dual-zone A/C system, which can set the interior temperature according to occupants in the vehicle by combining with the current interior temperature, vehicle speed, environment temperature, sunlight intensity, vehicle speed, water temperature and other environmental parameters; it can provide a driving and riding environment for occupants by automatically regulating the air outlet temperature, A/C air volume, air outlet mode and air inlet mode.

► A/C system operation panel



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>1</b> Driver's side temperature setting button                              | <b>2</b> Driver's side temperature display        |
| <b>3</b> Air outlet mode button  | <b>4</b> Air adjustment knob                      |
| <b>5</b> Front passenger side temperature setting button                       | <b>6</b> Front passenger side temperature display |
| <b>7</b> A/C button  | <b>8</b> Internal/external circulation button     |
| <b>9</b> DUAL button   | <b>10</b> OFF button                              |
| <b>11</b> Windshield heating button Front windshield defroster/defogger button | <b>12</b> A/C button                              |
| <b>13</b> AUTO button  |   |

H500600

## Using the automatic A/C system

By tapping [AUTO] button, the active indicator lights up, and the automatic A/C mode is on.

### ■ [AUTO] button indicator

- If the air volume setting or the air outlet mode is operated, the [AUTO] button indicator goes out.

### ■ Using the automatic mode

The air volume is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and ambient conditions. As a result, the following may occur:

- In summer, when selecting the low temperature setting, the system will automatically switch to internal circulation mode.
- After the button pressed, the blower may stop for a while and stay in low-gear operating status. The normal blowing will not be executed until warm or cool air is ready to flow.

## Manual regulation

### ■ Regulation of air volume

Rotate the air adjustment knob on the A/C system to increase or decrease the air volume.

The air volume levels are 1-7.

By tapping [OFF] button, turn off A/C.

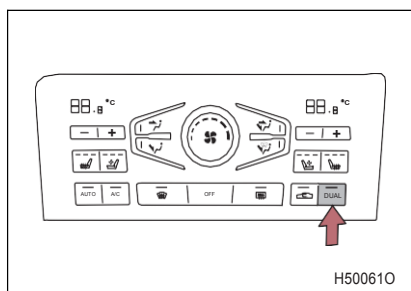
### ■ Temperature regulation

Press the - on the temperature setting button to decrease the temperature or + on the temperature setting button to increase the temperature.

Driver side and front passenger side temperatures can be adjusted independently.

If the [A/C] button indicator does not light up or the [A/C] button indicator is on but the A/C compressor is not running, the system will blow atmospheric temperature air or heated air to the interior.

■ Switching of single/dual-zone control modes



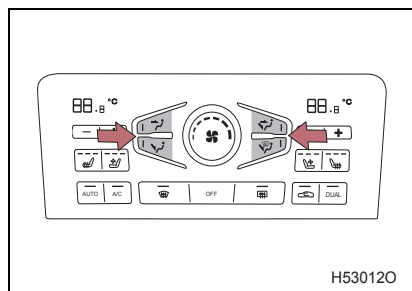
By tapping the [DUAL] button, the indicator lights up, it goes to the dual-zone control mode, and you can independently set the temperatures at the driver's side and the front passenger side.


By tapping the [DUAL] button again, the indicator goes out, it goes to the single-zone control mode, and the temperature at the front passenger side will be synchronized with that at the driver's side.


In the single-zone control mode, separately set the temperature at the front passenger side, it goes to the dual-zone control mode.


■ Air outlet mode switching


By tapping the air outlet mode setting button on the operating interface, different modes of air outlet can be shifted.



 : Air is blown towards the face.

 : Air is blown towards the feet.

 : Air is blown towards the face and feet.

 : Air is blown towards the feet and windshield.

- A/C Switch

When the engine is running, by taping [A/C] button, the active indicator is on, and the A/C refrigeration starts.

By taping [A/C] button again, the active indicator is off, and the A/C refrigeration ends.

- Internal/external circulation modeswitching

Press the internal/external circulation button to enter the internal circulation mode with the active indicator ON; press it again to enter the external circulation mode with the active indicator OFF.

When it shifts to the automatic A/C mode, the A/C system will automatically switch the internal/external circulation mode.



### CAUTIONS

- **Do not use the internal circulation mode in chilly days or rainy days**

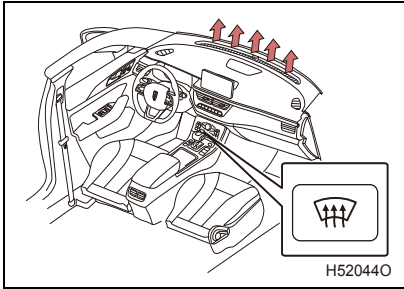
In chilly days or rainy days, use of the internal circulation mode might make windows fog up, which might block your line of sight, leading to serious accidents.


- **When using the internal circulation mode**


The windows might fog up more easily if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.

### Front windshield defrosting/defogging

Air flow blows to the front windshield for defrosting/defogging



By pressing the  button on the A/C system operating panel, the indicator is on, the defrosting/defogging function runs and the air volume might increase.

If it is in the internal circulation mode, by tapping the  button, it will automatically be switched the external circulation mode from the internal circulation mode.

Increase of air volume and rise of temperature can defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

#### ■ Window fogging up

- When the interior humidity raises, windows might fog up easily. By turning on the A/C switch, it will dehumidify the air from the air outlet and effectively defog the windshield.
- If you turn off the A/C switch, windows might fog up more easily.  
In rainy days, windows might fog up.
- The windows might fog up if internal circulation mode is used for an extended period.



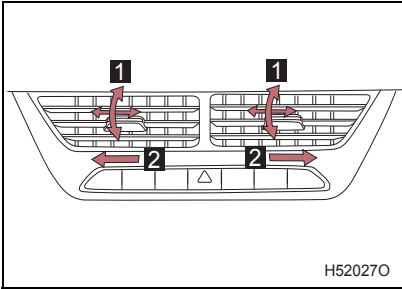
#### CAUTIONS

#### ■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

- Do not use the front windshield defroster/defogger mode during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.
- Do not put anything that might cover the air outlet on the dash panel, or it may hinder the air flow, obstructing the defogging process of the front windscreen.

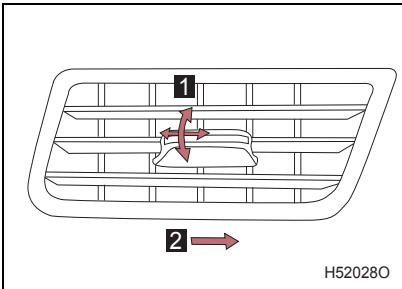
## Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

### ► Front center outlet



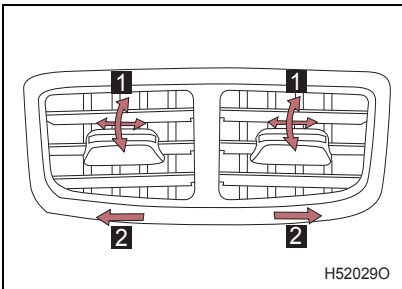
- 1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2** When directing it to the limit position, the air outlet is closed.

### ► Front air outlet



- 1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2** When directing it to the limit position, the air outlet is closed.

### ► Rear center outlet



- 1** Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.
- 2** When directing it to the limit position, the air outlet is closed.

### ■ Internal and external circulation modes

- While driving on dusty roads (such as tunnels) or heavy-traffic roads, switch to the internal circulation mode. It can effectively prevent outside air into the inside of vehicle. During the refrigeration operation, the internal circulation mode can also effectively reduce the interior temperature.
- When windows need to be defogged, switch to the outside air mode.

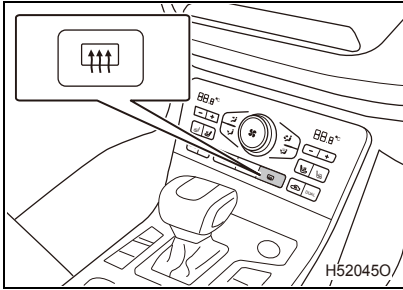
### ■ When the outside temperature is near 0°C


Even when you turn the A/C switch on, the A/C system may not work.


### ■ A/C odours

- During the using process, all odours inside and outside of the vehicle might enter and collect in the A/C system. It might lead to smells at the vents.

## 6-1. Using the A/C system Windshield heating



By tapping the  button, the indicator lights up, and the system starts to heat the rear windshield and the front windshield.

By tapping the  button again, the indicator goes out and the system stops to work.

**Tip:**

After the system has been operating for about 15min, it will be shut off automatically, and the system indicator will go out.

- **Front windshield heating**

The front windshield only heats the wiper stopping area.

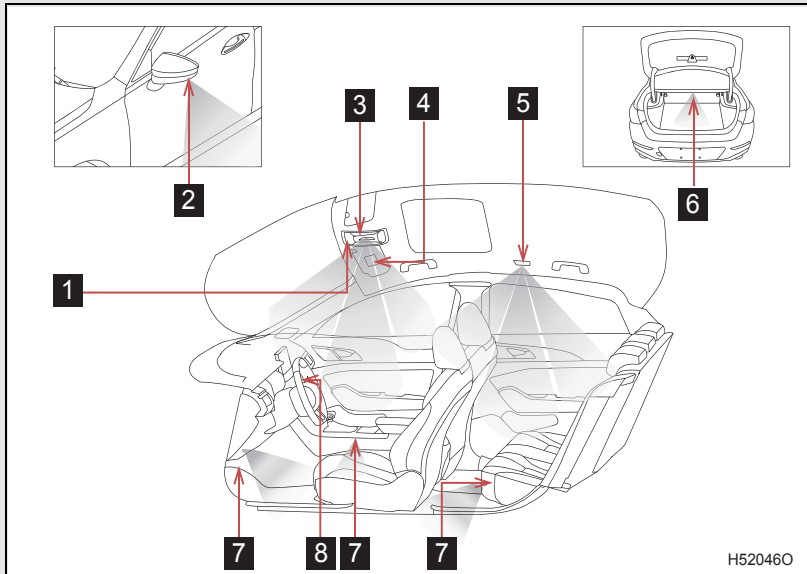
### CAUTIONS

- **During windshield heating**

Do not touch the heated area, because you might get burnt after it is heated up.

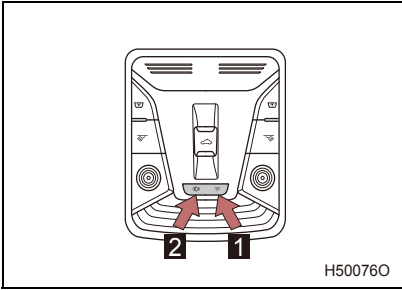
## 6-2. Using the interior lamps



### List of interior lamps



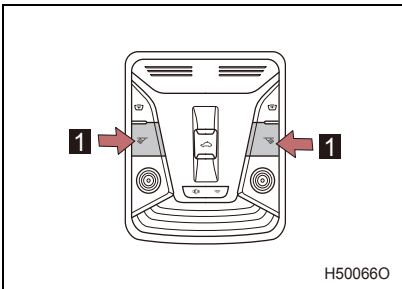
- 1 Front room lamp ( → P.317)
- 2 Courtesy lights \*
- 3 Front map light ( → P.317)
- 4 Vanity mirror light ( → P.318)
- 5 Rear map light ( → P.318)
- 6 Trunk light ( → P.319)
- 7 Ambient lighting\* ( → P.250)
- 8 Glove box lamp


## Front room lamp



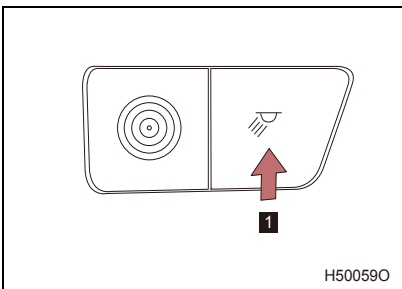
- 1** By pressing the  button, turn on the front room lamp; by pressing it again, turn off the front room lamp.
- 2** By pressing the  button, the indicator is on, and the Door Linkage with the room lamp is turned on; by pressing it again, the Door Linkage with the room lamp is turned off.


## Front map light



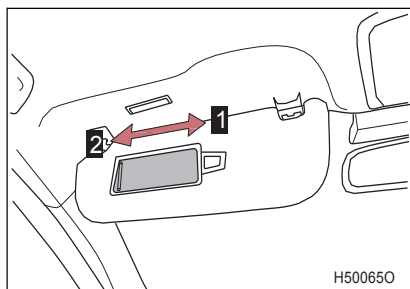
- 1** By pressing the  button, turn on the front map light; by pressing it again, turn off the front map light.

## Rear map light



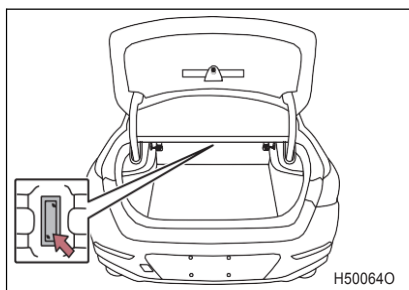
- 1** By pressing the  button, turn on the rear map light; by pressing it again, turn off the rear map light.

## Vanity mirror light



- 1 By opening the sun visor and sliding open the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror light is ON.
- 2 By closing the vanity mirror cover, the vanity mirror light is OFF.

## Trunk light



When the luggage compartment lid is opened, the trunk light is on.

When the luggage compartment lid is closed, the trunk light is off.

## Energy-saving

If the front room lamp switch is turned to the Door Linkage position, and the door is open, the room light will go off automatically after a certain period of time; turning the IGNITION switch OFF and closing all doors, the room lamp and ambient lighting go off after a certain period of time.

## NOTICES

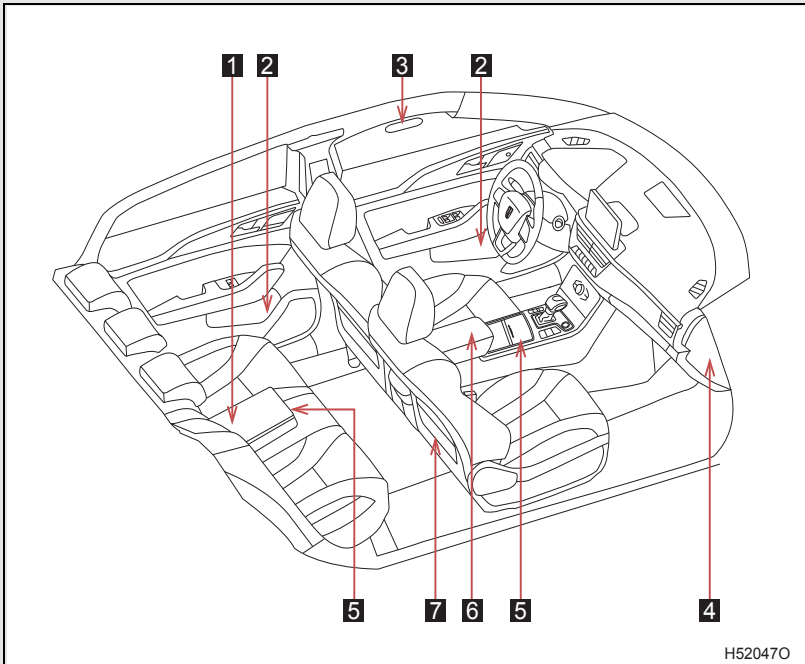
### To prevent battery depletion

Turn off interior lamps if unnecessary.

Do not leave the vanity mirror cover or doors open for a long time. Because when they are open, the corresponding interior lamps will be lit on, which may lead to battery depletion.

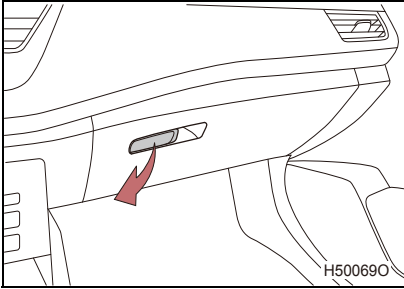
## 6-3. Using the storage units

### List of storage units



- 1** Rear storage compartment ( → P.323)
- 2** Bottleholder and side pocket ( → P.325)
- 3** Eyeglasses box ( → P.326 )
- 4** Glove box ( → P.321)
- 5** Cup holders (Front/Rear) ( → P.324 )
- 6** Front seat center storage compartment ( → P.322 )
- 7** File pocket ( → P.326)

## Glove box



By pulling the handle, open the glove box.

When closing the glove box cover, it means securely locked when it “clicks”.

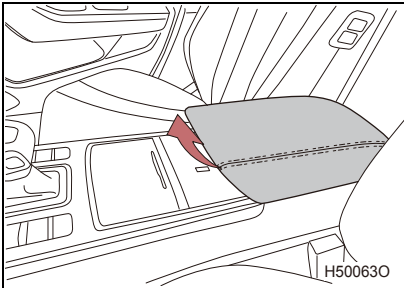
### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Precautions when driving

Keep the glove box closed.

Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

## Front seat center storage compartment



By lifting the lid, you can open the storage compartment.

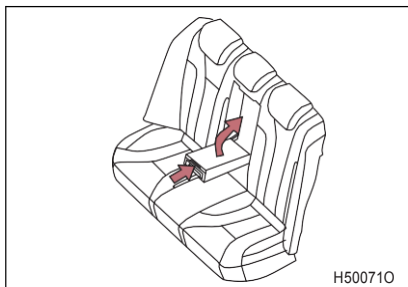
### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Precautions when driving

Keep the storage compartment closed.

Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

## Rear storage compartment



By putting down the rear central armrest, pressing the armrest, and lifting the lid, you can open the storage compartment.

### CAUTIONS

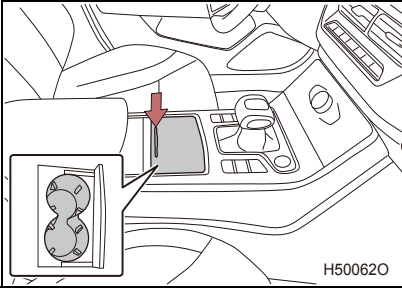
#### ■ Precautions when driving

Keep the rear storage compartment closed.

Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

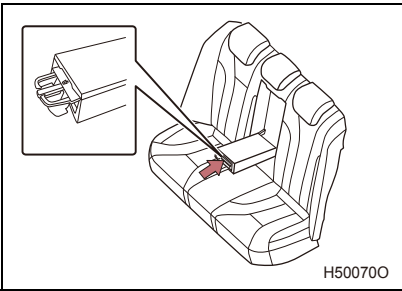
## Cup holders

### ► Front



By pressing the cup holder lid downward, it will open.

### ► Rear



Lay down the rear seat central armrest, pressing and releasing the cup holder lid, the cup holders will automatically popup.

Put them back when not in use.

- **When using cup holders to hold cups**
  - Please tighten the cup lid.

## 6-3. Using the storage units

- Some cups might not be held there because of their size or shape.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ **Items unsuitable for cup holders**

Please do not place any item other than cups or cans in cup holders. Those items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injuries. Tighten the lid on containers with hot liquid inside to prevent burns.

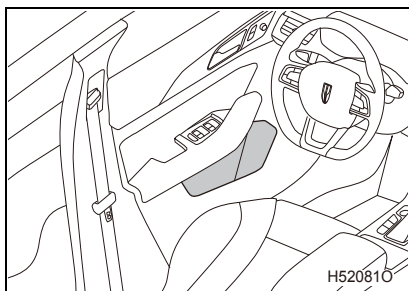
#### ■ **While driving, do not use cup holders to hold containers with hot liquid inside**

While driving, it is very dangerous to use cup holders to hold containers with hot liquid inside. If the hot liquid spills, it might cause burns.

#### ■ **When not in use**

Keep closed when not in use. Otherwise, injuries may occur in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

### Bottle holder and side pocket

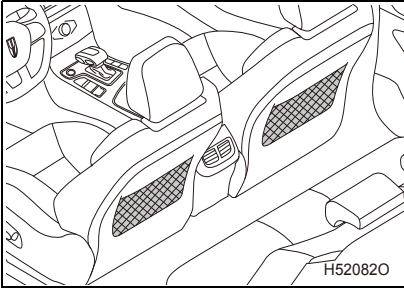


Bottle holder and side pockets are located on doors, and used to place bottles, duster cloth or sundries.

When placing bottles, tighten their lids.

Some bottles might not be held there because of their size or shape.

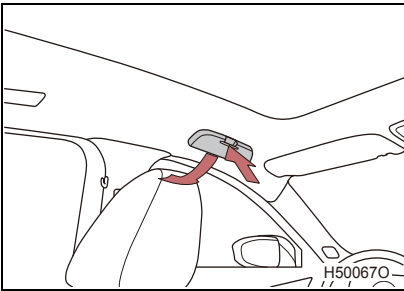
## File pocket



File pockets are located at the lower end of the backs of the driver seat and front passenger seat.

They are used to store newspapers, magazines and other items.

## Eyeglasses box



Pull down the lower case lid edge, the eyeglasses box will open downward.

It is used to temporarily store small items such as sunglasses.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Items unsuitable for the eyeglasses box

Do not leave the glasses or lighter on it for long.

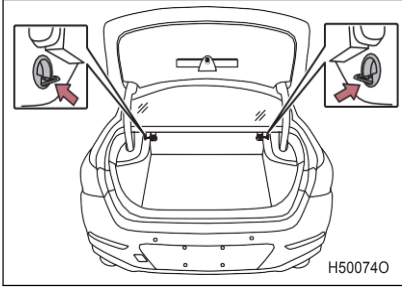
If the interior becomes hot, the lighter may explode and glasses may be distorted due to the heat.

#### ■ Precautions when driving

Keep the eyeglasses box closed when driving.

The items stored in it may be thrown out of the holder in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injuries.

## Trunk hook



Trunk hooks are equipped at both sides of the trunk.

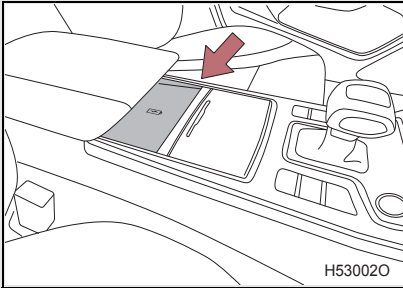
### CAUTIONS

- When not using the trunk hooks, please fold them back to where they belong.
- Do not hang any item heavier than 2kg on the trunk hooks.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

# On-board wireless charging \*

The center console box is equipped with a wireless charging system at its front.



Mobile phones supporting Qi standard wireless charging can be directly placed in the wireless charging area for charging.

Mobile phones that do not support Qi standard wireless charging need to be charged with a receiver.

### ■ On-board wireless charging system can be used when

The engine switch is turned to "IG-ON" mode.



### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Before charging, please remove all metal objects from the charging pad

When charging the phone wirelessly, if you find metal objects (such as coins, keys, rings or paper clips) located between the phone and the charging pad, do not immediately remove them by hand to avoid burning your fingers.

Please take off the phone first, wait until the metal objects cools down, and then remove them from the charging pad.



### NOTICES

#### ■ When charging

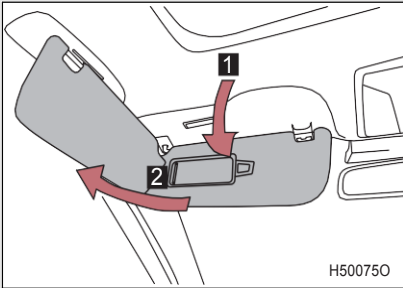
- Remove all items from the wireless charging non-slip mat. If there are foreign objects, the system may not be able to charge normally.

- The phone should be faced up and placed in the middle of the non-slip mat.

#### ■ Do not place magnetic cards such as highway toll cards in the wireless charging area, which may cause demagnetization.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

### Sun visor



#### **1** Forward position

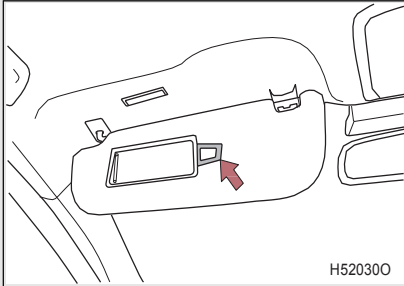
Flip the visor down.

#### **2** Side position

Flip down, unhook, and swing the visor to the side.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

### File holder



The file holder is located on the visor at the driver's side.

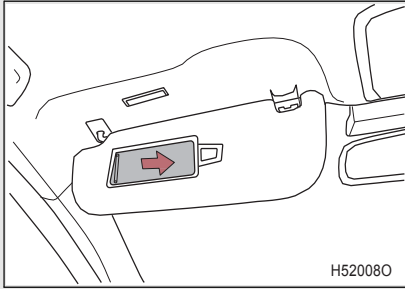
It is used to store receipts, cards and other items.

#### NOTICES

- **To prevent the file holder from being damaged**  
Do not put too many items on the file holder.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

### Vanity mirror



Flip down, and slide the cover to open the vanity mirror.

#### NOTICES

■ **When not in use**

Keep the vanity mirror closed.

■ **To prevent battery depletion**

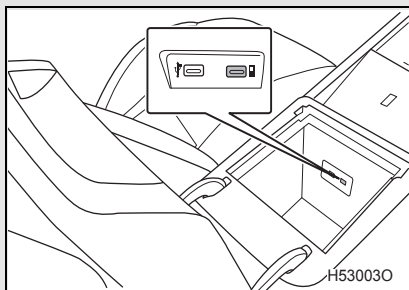
Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

### Power socket

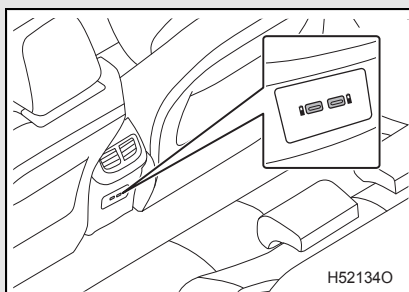
The 5V USB power socket can be used for 5 V accessories that run on less than 2 A.

#### ■ Front



It is inside the center console box.

#### ■ Rear



It is located at the lower end of the rear central vents.

#### ■ The power sockets can be used when

The engine switch is in the “ACC” or “IG-ON” mode.

#### ⚠ NOTICES

##### ■ To prevent damage to the power outlet

Close the power socket lid when the power socket is not in use.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power socket may cause a short circuit.

##### ■ To prevent the fuse from being blown

Do not use an accessory that is over the rated voltage/ current

##### ■ To prevent the battery depletion

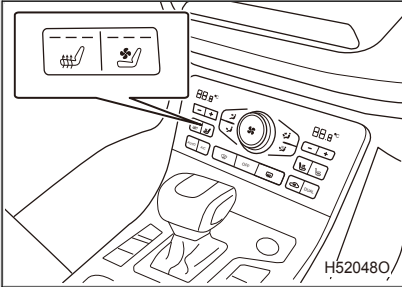
Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

### Seat temperature control\*

**Temperatures of the seats can be adjusted individually.**

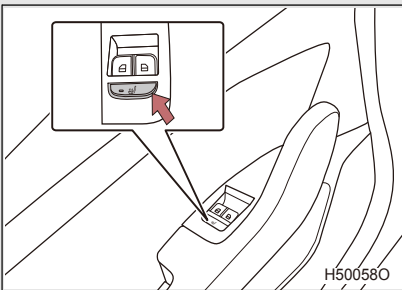
#### ■ Front seat temperature adjusting



By pressing the seat heating and ventilation button, select appropriate heating and ventilation levels.

They can be adjusted among 1-3 levels.

#### ■ Rear seat temperature adjusting



By pressing the seat heating button, the indicator is on; open the rear seat heating function and press it again to turn off the rear seat heating function.

#### ■ Operating conditions

The engine switch is in the "IG-ON" mode, and the engine is running.

**CAUTIONS****■ When using the seat heating or ventilation function, following matters need to be followed**

- When the persons below are sitting on seats with an operating heater, extra attention shall be paid to prevent burns:
  - Babies, children, seniors, patients and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.) that induce sleep
- Do not cover the seat with anything (blanket, seat cushion, etc.) when using the seat heater or ventilator. Otherwise, it would increase or decrease the temperature of the seat and may lead to overheating/overcooling.
- Do not use seat heater/ventilator more than necessary. Doing so may cause overcooling, overheating or minor burns.

**NOTICES****■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters/ventilators**

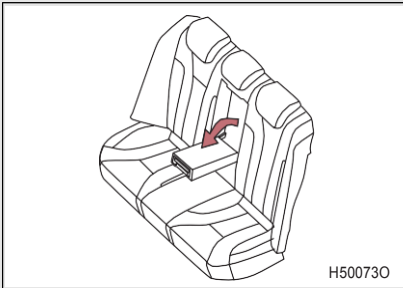
Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on seats and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into seats.

**■ When cleaning seats**

When cleaning seats, do not use benzene, gasoline or other organic solution. It would damage the heaters and seat fabrics.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

### Rear central armrest



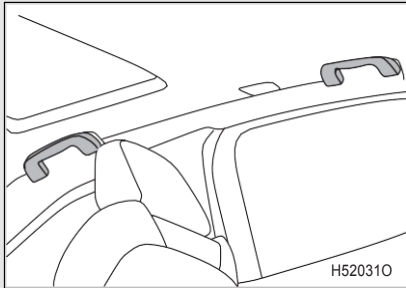
Pull the central armrest downward before using.

#### NOTICES

- **To prevent damage to the armrest**  
Do not place too much strain on the armrest.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

### Roof grab handle



Roof grab handles are located at the front passenger side and the rear outer passengers' sides.

When sitting on seats, occupants can support their bodies with the roof grab handles mounted on the roof lining.

#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Roof grab handle

When getting on/off the vehicle or getting out of seats, do not use roof grab handles.

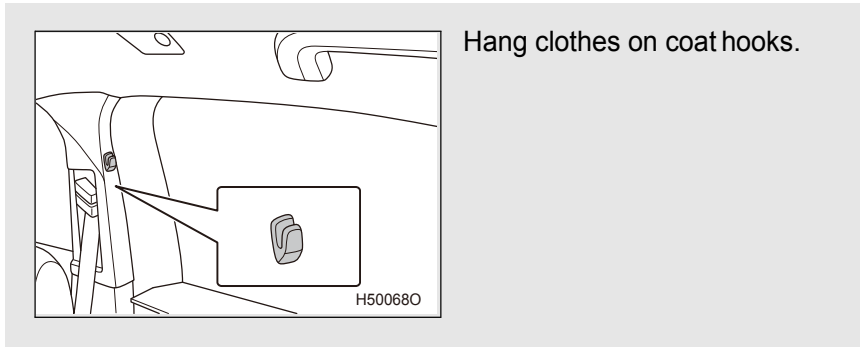
#### NOTICES

##### ■ To prevent damage to roof grab handles

Do not hang any weight or apply heavy loads onto roof grab handles to prevent damage to them.

## 6-4. Other interior equipment

### Coat hook



#### CAUTIONS

- **Items that must not be hung on the hooks**

Do not hang a coat hanger or other hard or sharp object on coat hooks. If the curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles that cause death or serious injury.



**7-1.Maintenance and servicing**

- Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim..... 316
- Clean and protect the interior trim ..... 319

**7-2.Maintenance**

- Maintenance instructions..... 322

**7-3.Do-It-Yourself Maintenance**

- Do-it-yourself service precautions ..... 325
- Engine hood ..... 328
- Engine compartment ..... 329
- Tire ..... 342
- Tire pressure ..... 345
- Wheel..... 347
- A/C filter..... 349
- Smart key battery..... 351
- Checking and replacing the fuse ..... 353

# Cleaning and protecting vehicle exterior trim

### **Observing the following operations helps to protect the vehicle exterior trim and keep it in the best condition:**

- Flush the body, wheelhouse and vehicle underside with plenty of water from top to bottom to remove dirt and dust.
- Scrub the body with sponge or soft cloth (e.g. suede cloth).
- For traces that are difficult to remove, wash them with car washing agent and rinse them thoroughly with water.
- Wipe the water off completely.
- When the waterproof coating is aged, the vehicle should be waxed.

Do not wax the body until the vehicle surface has no water drops and is cooled down.

---

### ■ **Automatic car washing**

- Fold the exterior mirrors before washing the car. Start flushing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure that the exterior mirrors are unfolded before driving.
- Brushes used for car washing may scratch the surface of the vehicle and damage the paint.

### ■ **High pressure car washing**

- Do not let the nozzle for car washing too close to the windows.
- Before washing the car, check and confirm if the vehicle's fuel filler cap has been properly closed.

### ■ **Aluminium wheels**

- Use neutral detergents to remove the dirt immediately if any. Do not use hard brushes or detergents containing abrasives. Do not use highly corrosive or strong chemical detergents.
- Do not use detergents to clean the wheels when they are very hot ( e.g. after long distance driving in hot weather).
- Flush the wheels immediately after washing them with detergent.

### ■ **Bumpers**

Do not use detergents containing abrasives.

**CAUTIONS****■ When cleaning the vehicle**

Do not flush the inside of the engine compartment with water. Failure to do so may result in a short circuit of electrical components, which may lead to a fire.

**■ Precautions regarding exhaust pipes**

The exhaust gases can make the exhaust pipes very hot.

When cleaning the vehicle, do not touch the exhaust pipes before they cool down sufficiently, otherwise it may scald.



## NOTICES

### ■ Preventing body and body paint aging, and corrosion of body and parts (aluminum wheels, etc.)

- The vehicle shall be cleaned immediately after the following circumstances occur:
  - After driving along the seaside.
  - After driving on the saline-alkali roads.
  - If the paint surface is attached with coal tar or resin.
  - If there are dead insects, insect dung or bird dung on the paint surface.
  - After the vehicle is driven in an area polluted by soot, lampblack, mineral dust, iron powder or chemical substances.
  - When the vehicle is heavily dusty or muddy.
  - When liquids such as benzene and petrol splash onto the paint surface.
- If the paint is peeling off or scratched, please repair it immediately.
- In order to prevent wheel corrosion when storing the wheels, remove dirt and choose a place for storage with a lower humidity.

### ■ When cleaning the flag emblem

Please wipe the flag emblem on the engine hood with clean water or neutral cleaning agent. Do not use alcohol or organic solvents containing such as alcoholic liquids, phenol and anisole to clean it, otherwise cracks will easily occur.

### ■ When cleaning the lights

- Be careful when cleaning. Do not use organic detergents or hard brushes for cleaning, otherwise the surface of lights may be damaged.
- Do not wax the surface of the lamps because wax may damage the lampshades.

### ■ Preventing damages to windshield wiper arm

When lifting the wiper arm, the driver-side wiper arm should be pulled up first, and then the co-driver wiper arm should be pulled up in the same way. When restoring, first restore the co-driver side wiper arm to its original position.

# Clean and protect the interior trim

**Observing the following operations helps to protect the vehicle interior trim and keep it in the best condition:**

■ **Protecting the vehicle interior**

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt and dust. Wet the cloth with warm water and wipe off the dirt.

■ **Cleaning the leather parts**

● Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dirt and dust.

● Wet the soft cloth with diluted detergents and wipe off the residual dirt and dust.

Please use a neutral detergent solution for wool with a diluted concentration of about 5 %.

● Wring out the wet cloth and wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.

● Wipe the residual water on the surface with a dry soft cloth, and then let the leather dry in a cool and ventilated place.

■ **Cleaning the artificial leather parts**

● Use a vacuum cleaner to remove floating dust.

● Apply a neutral soap to artificial leather.

● Allow the soap solution to soak the leather for a few minutes, then wipe off dirt and soap with a clean wet cloth.

■ **Cleaning the wood parts**

● If there is dust accumulation on the surface of wood trims, it can be gently cleaned and wiped with cotton gauze.

● If the surface of the wooden trims is stained with dirt, it can be lightly wiped with cotton gauze dipped with a little neutral soap solution.

---

■ **Maintenance of the leather parts**

It is recommended that you clean the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the interior.

■ **Maintenance of the wood parts**

It is recommended that you carry out maintenance on the surface of wood trims at any time according to the surface conditions.

**■ Cleaning carpet**

Use a suitable commercially available foam cleaner to clean the carpet. Apply foams onto a sponge or a brush. Scrub in overlapping circles. Do not add water. Keep the carpet as dry as possible to get the best results.

**■ Seat belt**

Dip cloth or sponge in neutral detergents and lukewarm water for cleaning. And regularly check whether the safety belts are excessively worn, worn or scratched.

**CAUTIONS****■ Waterproofness inside the vehicle**

- Do not spill the liquid in the vehicle, otherwise it may cause electrical components to malfunction or a fire.
- Do not damp airbag components or wires inside the vehicle.

Electrical failure may result in accidental deployment or malfunction of the airbag, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.

**■ Clean interior trims (especially the dash panel)**

Do not use polishing wax or polishing detergents. The dash panel may be reflected onto the windshield, obstructing the driver's vision and causing accidents, which result in serious injuries or even death.



## NOTICES

### ■ Detergents

- Do not use the following types of cleaning agents, otherwise it may discolor the interior of the vehicle or cause stains and grains or damage to the paint surface:

Organic solutions containing such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, coloring agents and bleaching agents.

- Do not use polishing wax or cleaning agents, otherwise it may damage the paint surfaces of the dash panel or other interior parts.

### ■ Preventing leather surface damage

To prevent leather surface damage and ageing, please observe the following precautions:

- Wipe off the dirt on the leather surface in time.
- The vehicle should not be directly exposed to the sunlight for a long time. Please park it in a shady and cool place, especially in summer.
- Do not place polyethylene, plastic products or wax items on leather trims, because these items may stick to the leather surface when the interior temperature increases greatly.
- If excessive moisture remains on the seat surface, leather will harden and shrink.

### ■ Floor waterproofness

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water, which may cause rusting to the body.

If the electrical components under the vehicle floor come into contact with water, the electrical system may be damaged.

### ■ Cleaning the interior side of the rear windshield

- Do not use glass cleaners to clean the rear windshield, otherwise the heating wires of the defroster of the rear windshield may be damaged. Wet the cloth with warm water and wipe gently in the direction parallel to the heating wire.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heating wires.

# Maintenance instructions

**In order to ensure the safety and economy of driving, daily maintenance and periodic maintenance are very important. FAW recommends that you take the following maintenance measures:**

- Periodic maintenance
- Please carry out regular maintenance according to the maintenance schedule.

The maintenance interval can be determined according to the mileage or time given in the schedule, whichever comes first.

For maintenance items that have exceeded the last interval, it is also recommended that you carry out maintenance at the same interval.

- Where can I have my car maintained?

It is most ideal to go to an FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for maintenance.

FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealers have advanced maintenance tools, equipments and genuine accessories required for maintenance and service of your vehicle, and all after-sales service personnels have received professional management and technical trainings to ensure that the maintenance and repair work is completed quickly and efficiently and that your vehicle always remains a good technical performance.

FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealers have invested a large amount of money in special tools and maintenance equipments. This helps to provide you with better service at a lower cost.

FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealers adhere to the concept of efficient, reasonable and value-added service and will do our best to carry out all kinds of vehicle maintenance work.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heating system, braking system and fuel system) shall be inspected by professionals in strict accordance with the maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses may deteriorate over time, causing expansion, wear, or cracking. Therefore, if there are any signs of deterioration or damage of the hoses, please contact an FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for replacement immediately.

### ■ Self-maintenance instructions

#### Can I maintain my vehicle by myself?

If you have rich basic knowledge of vehicle construction, inspection and maintenance and have some basic tools, you can carry out daily inspection and maintenance by yourself. A brief description of how to perform self-maintain is given in this section.

It should be reminded that some maintenance work needs special maintenance equipments and professional skills, so it is best to be done by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced professional technician, we still suggest that you go to an FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer for standard maintenance because they will record the maintenance information of your car and help you apply for warranty service.

### ■ Does your vehicle need repair

Watch out for changes in vehicle performance and sounds, as well as other visual warnings that indicate that the vehicle needs maintenance. Here are some important signs:

- The engine is misfiring, unstable or banging.
- Power reduces obviously.
- The engine has abnormal noises.
- There is liquid leaking at the bottom of the vehicle. (dripping water after air conditioning and from drain holes after exhaust pipe cooling are normal phenomena )
- Changes in exhaust sound. (this indicates that there may be a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. In this case, windows must be opened and the exhaust system must be checked immediately)
- Tires become flat, the noise of the tire is too high when turning, and the tire wear is uneven.
- When driving straight on a flat road surface, the vehicle deviates to one side.
- There is abnormal noise related to suspension components.
- Brake fails; the brake pedal feels soft when it is depressed; the pedal almost touches the floor and the vehicle deviates when braking.
- The engine coolant temperature remains high.

If you find any of the above signs, please contact an FAW Authorized Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible because your vehicle may need to be adjusted or repaired.



## CAUTIONS

■ **If the vehicle is not properly maintained**

It may cause serious damage to the vehicle and serious injuries or even death.

■ **Precautions for handling batteries**

Battery binding posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, which can cause brain damage.

Always wash your hands after operation.

■ **Old engine oil**

According to research, chemicals contained in old engine oil may cause cancer in laboratory animals. Please avoid repeated contact for a long time.

To protect your skin, be sure to wash it thoroughly with soap and water.

### 7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

## Do-it-yourself service precautions

**You can perform maintenance by yourself. Please be sure to follow the correct procedures below.**

Item	Components and tools
Battery condition (→ P.367)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Warm water</li><li>• Baking soda</li><li>• Grease</li><li>• Common wrench (for clamping terminal bolts)</li></ul>
Engine coolant level (→ P.364)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Super Long Life Coolant for vehicle</li><li>• Funnel (used only for adding coolant)</li></ul>
Engine oil level (→ P.360)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• FAW Genuine engine oil or equivalent</li><li>• Rag or paper towel, funnel (used only for adding oil)</li></ul>
Fuses (→ P.385)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Fuse with the same rated amperage as the original</li></ul>
Radiator, condenser and intercooler (→ P.365)	—
Tire pressure (→ P.375)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Tire pressure display</li><li>• Compressed air source</li></ul>
Washer fluid (→ P.371)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Washer fluid with antifreeze (Used in winter)</li><li>• Funnel</li></ul>


**NOTICES**

■ **If the air filter has been removed**

If the vehicle is driven with the air cleaner removed, dirt in the air may cause excessive engine wear. Meanwhile, back fire may also cause the engine compartment to catch fire.

■ **If the brake fluid level is too low or too high**

When the brake friction plates are worn or the fluid level in the brake fluid tank is high, the brake fluid level may drop slightly, and this is normal. If brake fluid needs to be frequently added to the brake fluid tank, it indicates that there may be a serious problem. Please contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to have your vehicle checked.


**CAUTIONS**

There are a number of mechanical devices in the engine compartment that may suddenly turn, become hot, or start being energized. To avoid serious personal injury, please be aware of the following.

■ **When handling components in the engine compartment**

- When working under the hood, be sure to remove all your jewellery (especially ring, bracelet, watch and necklace) and bow tie, scarf and the similar loose clothing before you approach the engine or the electric fan that may operate at any time if the engine has to be run.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and other components immediately after driving, while they are hot. The engine oil and other fluids are also hot.
- Before opening the hood, shut down the engine, apply the electric parking brake, shift the selector lever in P position, turn off the engine switch and carry the key with you and let the engine cool down.
- Keep your hands, clothing, and tools away from the rotating fan and the engine drive belts.
- Do not leave any items in the engine compartment.  
If the inspection or maintenance in the engine compartment finishes, do not leave any tools, cloth, or other items in it. Doing so may cause damage to the engine or catch fire, resulting in accidents.



## CAUTIONS

- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose open flames to the fuel or the battery.
- Be especially careful when handling the battery. The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic sulphuric acid.
- Be careful when handling the brake fluid. Failure to do so may cause the brake fluid to injure your hands or eyes and to damage the painted surface.

If you get the brake fluid on your hands or in your eyes, flush your eyes or skin with large quantities of clean water. If you still feel unwell after that, call a physician immediately.

### ■ **When near the electric fan or radiator grille,**

Make sure the engine switch is in OFF position.

When the vehicle starts, the electric fan may run automatically if the air conditioner is turned on or the coolant temperature is high.

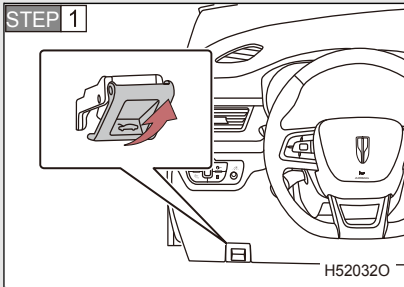
### ■ **Safety goggles**

Wear safety goggles to prevent objects from flying in your eyes or fluids from splashing in your eyes.

## 7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

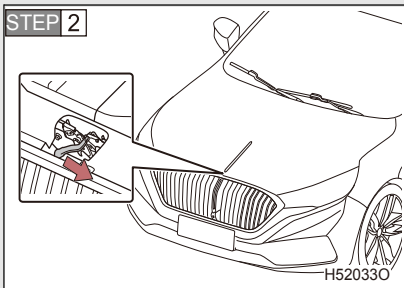
### Engine hood

#### Unlock inside to open the engine hood.



Pull opening handle of the engine hood.

The hood will bounce slightly upwards.



Move the opening handle of the hood safety hook to the right and lift the hood.



#### CAUTIONS

##### ■ Inspection before driving

Check and make sure that the hood is completely closed and locked.

If the hood is not properly locked, it may open when the vehicle is moving and cause an accident, resulting in serious personal injury.



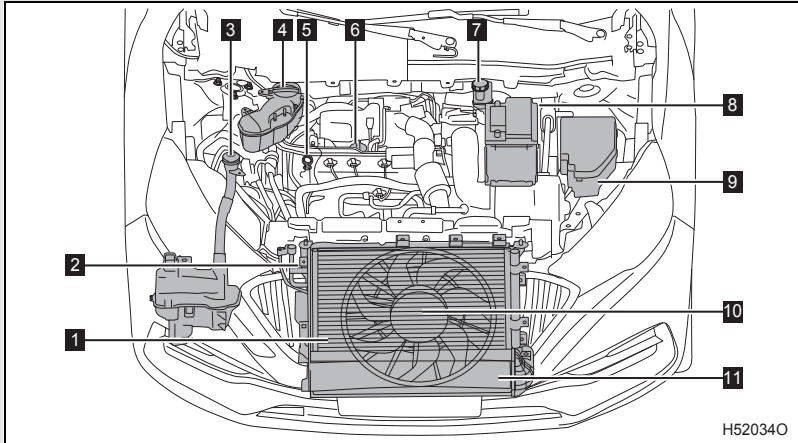
#### NOTICES

##### ■ When closing the engine hood

- Do not apply an excessive force to the hood. Doing so may cause damage to the hood.
- Make sure that no tools and other objects are left in the engine compartment before closing the hood.

## 7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

### Engine compartment



**1** Condenser ( → P.365)

**3** Washer fluid tank ( →  
P.371) P.364)

**5** Dipstick (see P.360) P.361)

**7** Brake fluid tank

**9** Fuse box (see P.383)

**11** Intercooler ( → P.365)

**2** Radiator (See P.365)

**4** Coolant reservoir ( →

**6** Oil filler cap (see

**8** Battery ( → P.367)

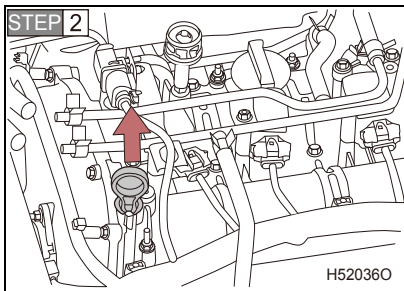
**10** Cooling fan

## Engine oil

Check the oil level when the engine reaches operating temperature and the engine switch is turned off.

- Check the engine oil.

**STEP 1** Place the wheel on the level ground. Wait 5 minutes or more after shutting off the engine. This will allow the oil to drain down to the bottom of the engine.

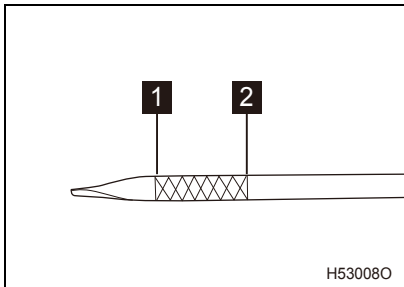


Put a clean rag under the end of the dipstick, then pull out the dipstick.

**STEP 3** Clean the oil dipstick.

**STEP 4** Insert the dipstick all the way back in its tube.

**STEP 5** Put a clean rag under the end of the dipstick, then pull out the dipstick and check the oil level.



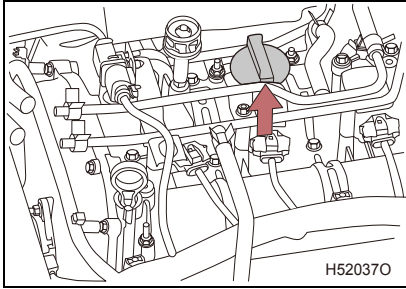
**1** Low

**2** Full

The oil level must be between the low and full marks. Actions must be taken timely to deal with the excessive or insufficient oil .

**STEP 6** Wipe the dipstick with a cloth or paper towel, and then insert it all the way back in its tube.

### ■ Filling the oil



Add oil of the same rating as the existing oil in the engine if the level is at or below the lower mark.

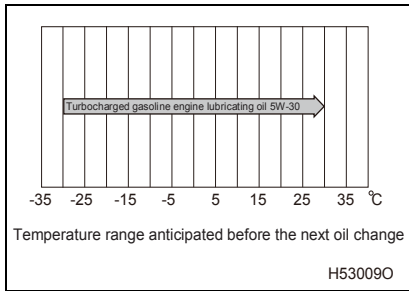
Be sure to determine the oil grade and prepare the required items before adding oil.

**STEP 1** Unscrew the oil filler cap counterclockwise and remove it.

**STEP 2** Fill the oil slowly and check the oil dipstick.

**STEP 3** Install the oil filler cap and turn it clockwise until it is tightened.

### ■ Recommended oil

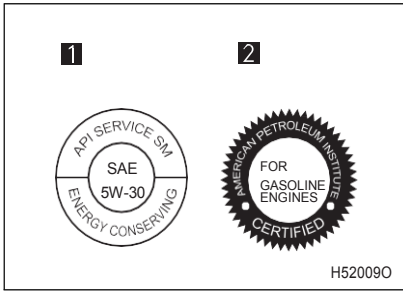


Do not use high-viscosity engine oil at extremely low temperature. Doing so may cause that it is difficult to start the engine. It is recommended to use the recommended engine oil for your vehicle.

For more details, please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

■ How to read the oil container label

Some oil containers are marked with one or two API labels for reference when selecting the correct oil.



1 API Service label

Top: The API (American Petroleum Institute) Service tells you the service classification of the oil, such as SM.

Middle part: SAE viscosity, such as SAE 5W-30

Bottom: Energy-Conserving tells you that the oil is of fuel-saving property.

2 ILSAC (International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee) Certification mark

■ Oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil is consumed during driving. Engine oil consumption may increase if one of the following conditions occurs. Engine oil may need to be added during oil service intervals.

- When a new engine runs, such as the engine in a newly-purchased vehicle or the engine after replacement.
- If inferior oil or oil with poor viscosity is used.
- When the engine runs at high speeds or under heavy load, or when frequent acceleration or deceleration occurs when the vehicle moving.
- When the engine idles for a prolonged time, or when the vehicle frequently travels through traffic congested roads.

 **CAUTIONS**

■ **Precautions for disposal of used oil**

- The used oil contains potentially hazardous substances which may cause diseases such as dermatitis and skin cancer. Be sure to avoid contact with the used oil for a prolonged time or frequently. If you get the oil on your skin, flush the skin thoroughly with soap and clean water.
- Be sure to dispose of the used oil and filter in a safe and environmentally-compliant manner. Do not discard the used oil and filter in a trash bin or sewer, or dump it on the ground. For information on oil recovery or disposal, please consult your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
- Keep the used oil away from the children.

 **NOTICES**

■ **Prevent severe damage to the engine.**

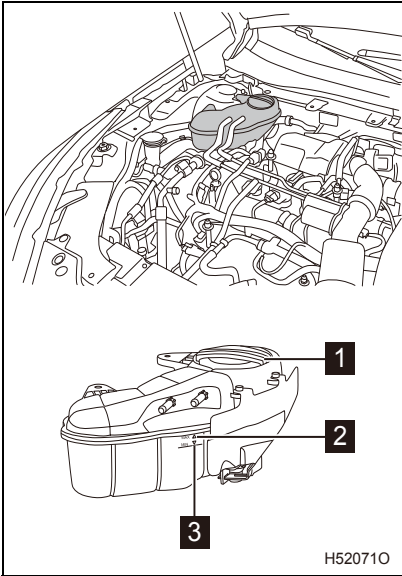
Regularly check the oil level.

■ **Precautions for replacing the oil**

- Take care not to spill oil on the vehicle parts.
- Do not overfill the tank, the engine could otherwise be damaged.
- Whenever adding oil, check the oil level on the dipstick.
- Make sure that the filler cap is tightened properly.
- Before installing the oil filler cap, wipe it clean to avoid scratching the rubber ring.

## Engine coolant

If the level of the engine coolant in the radiator reserve tank is between the MAX (Full) and MIN (Low) marks when the engine cools down, the level is correct.



- 1** Liquid reservoir
- 2** "MAX" (Full)
- 3** "MIN" (Low)

If the level is at or below the MIN mark, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX mark.

- **If the level drops shortly after the coolant is replenished,** check the radiator, radiator cap and coolant pipe and other component visually for leakage.  
If no leakage is detected, please contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to test the radiator cap pressure and check the cooling system for leaks.
- **Coolant Selection**  
Use the Super Long Life Coolant for the whole year  
For more details about engine coolant, please contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.

 **CAUTIONS**
**■ When the engine is hot**

- Do not add coolant until the engine cools down. The hot engine can be very dangerous and may seriously scald you.
- Do not remove the coolant reserve tank cap.  
There may be pressure inside the cooling system. Removing the coolant reserve tank cap can cause the hot coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you or resulting in other injuries.

 **NOTICES**
**■ When adding engine coolant**

Add the coolant specified by China FAW to ensure proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling performance.  
Please read the instructions on the coolant label.

**■ If the coolant accidentally spills out,**

be sure to flush the spilled coolant with clean water to prevent damage to the components or the vehicle paint.

**Radiator, condenser and intercooler**

Check the radiator, condenser and intercooler, and remove any foreign objects in it.

If the radiator, condenser or intercooler is particularly dirty or abnormal, please contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to have your vehicle checked.

 **CAUTIONS**
**■ When the engine is hot**

Do not touch the radiator, condenser or intercooler. Doing so may scald you.

## Turbocharged engine

- Do not check, remove or replace the turbocharger until the engine stops and the turbocharger cools down.
- Be sure to prevent any oil droplets from dropping on the hot surface of the turbocharger. Failure to do so may cause a fire.
- Do not cool the turbocharger by splashing water on its hot surface. Doing so may cause damage to the turbocharger.
- If the turbo engine is started, it is recommended to idle it for 3 minutes to ensure the turbocharger to be lubricated well.

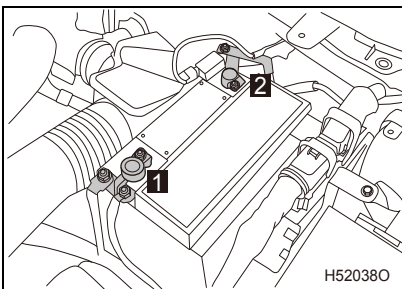
## Battery

### ■ Power management system

- The power management system can adjust the output voltage of the generator and obtain the status information of the battery and 48V system in real time and control the optimal charging voltage, and reduce the fuel consumption appropriately while improving the power performance of the vehicle.
- When the battery runs down, some comfort functions, including seat heating, seat ventilation, A/C air volume, outside rearview mirror heating, front and rear windshield heating, audio volume, may be limited and disabled to ensure vehicle startability. If the limited and disabled features are activated, the above comfort functions will be limited or disabled, so that they can't operate according to the user's set operating conditions. If the engine is not running at the moment, the instrument panel will prompt "The Battery Runs Down, Please Start the Engine". If the engine is running, the instrument panel will give no prompt. When the battery power is restored to the safe range, the above comfort type functions will be automatically restored to the user's set operating state to function.

### ■ Check the battery exterior

Ensure that the battery terminals are not corroded, the connections are not loosened, the external parts are free of cracks, and the fixing clips are not loosened.



- 1 Positive terminal
- 2 Negative terminal

### ■ During installation

- When connecting the battery, prevent the terminal cable from being reversely connected. Otherwise, the electrical equipment in the vehicle may be damaged.

- Prevent the positive and negative terminals from being contacted during the storage, handling and installation of the battery. For example, the metal wrench for connecting the cables can easily touch the positive and negative terminals at the same time, and this may cause short-circuit of the battery, resulting in direct failure.
- Since there is a vent hole on the battery, to prevent leakage, do not place the battery sideways or upside down during storage, handling or installation.
- When replacing the battery, be sure to replace the battery with the same model as the original.
- When replacing the battery, if the terminal clamp becomes oxidized or dirty, be sure to remove the oxidized layer or dirt with sandpaper or the similar, and then apply Vaseline to the clamp and battery terminal before connecting.
- When installing, connect the positive terminal before the negative terminal. When disassembling, remove the negative terminal before the positive terminal to avoid the chance of short circuit.

#### ■ Before charging

Pay attention to the following matters before charging:

- If the in-vehicle battery is to be charged, be sure to turn off the engine switch and disconnect the grounding wire.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is turned off when connecting/disconnecting the charger cable to/from the battery.

#### ■ When in use

- Prevent the vent hole on the battery from clogging. Take care to clean the vent hole.
- Charge the battery if one of the following conditions occurs:
  - The vehicle is used often for a short time and started frequently.
  - The vehicle often travels on traffic congested roads.
  - There are too many electrical consumers for the vehicle.
  - The vehicle travels more at night.
  - The vehicle has not been used for a long time.
  - The lights stay on after parking.
  - The doors are not closed fully when parking.
  - With the engine shut down, electrical consumers such as A/C, audio system and lights keep operating for a long time.

- If the vehicle has been stored for over 30 days, to maintain the battery's normal state of charge, do the following:
  - Disconnect the negative grounding wire to prevent discharge of the battery due to additional current leakage.
  - Charge the battery once every 20-45 days.
  - Before the normal use of the vehicle, connect the vehicle to the battery and let it sit for over 4 hours to ensure that the idle start/stop function is used normally.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Chemicals in the battery

The battery has toxic corrosive sulphuric acid and may lead to combustible and explosive hydrogen. To reduce the chance of serious personal injury, observe the following requirements when handling the battery or working near it:

- Do not touch the battery terminals with any tool to avoid sparks.
- Do not smoke or use any open fire near the battery.
- Avoid the electrolyte to splashed to eyes, skin, or clothes.
- Be sure to avoid inhaling or swallowing electrolyte.
- Safety goggles shall be worn in the event of working near the battery.
- Keep the battery away from children.

### ■ Safe place for charging battery

Charge the battery in an open place. Do not charge the battery in a poorly ventilated garage or in an enclosed room.

### ■ Emergency measures for handling electrolyte

- If you get electrolyte accidentally into your eyes  
Flush your eyes with clean water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. Immediately call a physician. If possible, continue cleaning your eyes with a water-soaked sponge or cloth on the way to a hospital.
- If you get electrolyte on the skin  
Flush the skin thoroughly with large quantities of water. If you feel burning and painful, immediately call a physician.
- If you get electrolyte on the clothes  
It may infiltrate the clothing and stick to the skin. Remove contaminated clothing immediately and take the above measures if necessary.
- If you swallow electrolyte accidentally  
Drink large quantities of water or milk and then take magnesium oxide milk, chopped raw eggs or vegetable oil, and immediately call a physician.

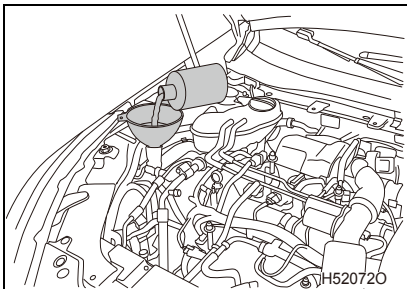
 **NOTICES****■ Precautions during charging the battery**

Do not charge the battery when the engine is running. Always switch off all accessories.

 **CAUTIONS****■ Do not disconnect the negative (-) terminal on the body side**

The disconnected negative (-) terminal may touch the positive (+) terminal, causing a short circuit and serious personal injury or even death.

## Washer fluid



If any washer fails to run or the alarm message appears on the multi-function display screen of the combination instrument, this indicates the washer fluid tank may become empty. Add washer fluid in time.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running. Otherwise, if the washer fluid is splashed on the engine, a fire may be caused by the alcohol in the washer fluid.

### NOTICES

#### ■ Do not use any liquid other than the washer fluid.

Do not use soapy water or engine coolant instead of the washer fluid. Doing so may cause sagging of the painted surface on the vehicle.

#### ■ Dilute the washer fluid

If necessary, dilute the washer fluid with water.

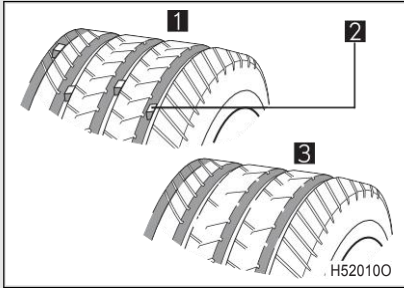
Please refer to the freezing temperature on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

## 7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

# Tire

According to the wear condition of the tire tread, replace the tire or rotate the tires.

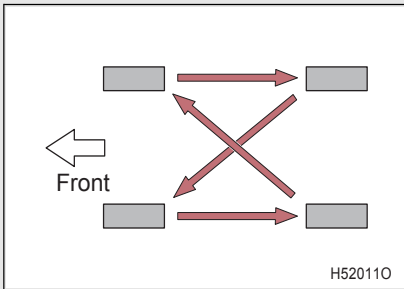
### ■ Check Tire



- 1 New tread
- 2 Tread wear indicators
- 3 Worn tread

If it is worn to the tread wear indicators, replace the tire (The picture is only a schematic diagram).

### ■ Tire rotation



Tires should be rotated in the order shown in the figure.

To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, you should have the tires rotated every 8,000 ~ 10,000 km.

### Tips:

1. The spare tire is a non-full-sized spare tire, which cannot be used for tire rotation but temporary use.
2. The spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure monitoring sensor.
3. If tire rotation finishes, configure the tire pressure monitoring system. Contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if necessary.

---

**■ Protective measures for wheel malfunction**

- When passing through the curb or similar barriers, the vehicle should drive slowly in the direction vertical to the barrier as far as possible.
- Be sure to prevent the tires from touching grease, oil and/or fuel.
- Regularly check the tire damage state (such as tire cutting, crack, bulge and other damages); clear the impurities embedded in the tire tread.

**■ Tire storage instructions**

- Make mark on the tire before disassembly, mark the tire rotation direction, and reset it according to the mark for installation, so as to maintain wheel rotation direction and dynamic balancing state unchanged.
- The removed wheel or tire should be placed at the cool and dry place, dark without sunlight at best.

**■ Concealed damage**

- It is difficult to detect damage to tires and rims. If abnormal vibration or pulling to one side is detected when the vehicle moving, it indicates there is a trouble in a wheel. In this case, go to your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to have your wheel checked as soon as possible.

**■ When to replace the tire**

Replace the tire if one of the following conditions occurs:

- If there are cuts, fractures, deep cracks resulting in exposed ply, and/or bulges on the tire.
- If the tire is often underinflated or cannot be repaired due to other damage.

**■ Tire life**

Avoid using tires with age over 6 years as possible as you can.

If necessary, drive prudently at low speed.

**■ Driving on snowy roads**

If the snow tire tread wears 4mm or more, the anti-slip performance of snow tires will be significantly reduced.

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions for checking or replacing tires**

To avoid damage to the components of the drive train and affecting the handling performance of the vehicle, which may cause accidents and serious personal injuries, follow the following precautions:

- Do not mix and match the tires of different manufacturers, types, tread patterns or tread wear levels.
- Be sure to use the tires recommended by China FAW only.
- Do not mix and match tires in radial, bias belted or bias body cord or other structures.
- Do not mix and match summer, seasonal and winter tires on your vehicle.
- Do not use the used tires by other vehicles.

**NOTICES****■ Driving on rugged roads**

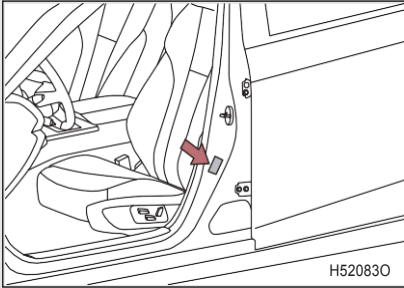
Exercise extreme caution when you need to drive on soft or pitted roads. Such roads can cause the tires to bulge due to impact, eventually causing damage to the tires.

**■ If the tire pressure becomes lower during driving**

Do not continue driving any longer. Doing so may cause full damage to the tires and/or wheels.

# Tire pressure

**Be sure to maintain proper pressure in the tires. Check the tire pressure once per month at least.**



A tire pressure label is affixed below the B-pillar lock pin on the driver's side.

### ■ Consequences of incorrect tire pressure

Tire air pressure too low:

- Increased rolling resistance and fuel consumption.
- Reduced vehicle handling control and stability.
- Damage and high temperatures, resulting in a flat tire. If the tire is badly underinflated, it may cause the tire to separate from the rim, resulting in reduced safety.
- Uneven wear on both sides of the tire.

Tire pressure too high:

- Reduced vehicle comfort.
- Excessive wear in the middle of the tire.
- Overinflated tire is prone to internal cracking and puncture when the tire is impacted.

### ■ Guide for checking tire pressure

Check tire pressure timely even if your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system that can promptly alert you of tire pressure conditions.

Follow the following precautions for checking tire pressure:

- Check the pressure in the tires when they are cold.

If the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours, or has traveled no more than 1.5 km, check the pressure in the tires for accurate tire pressure readings.

- Be sure to use a tire pressure gauge.

The appearance of the tire may sometimes be misleading. In addition, even if it is slightly underinflated, the tire may reduce running smoothness and handling stability.

- Do not deflate or depressurize the tires after driving. Increased tire pressure is normal after driving.
- Do not overload the vehicle.  
The weight of the occupants and luggage should be evenly distributed to balance the vehicle.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ **Proper inflation is the key to protect the tires.**

Be sure to maintain proper tire pressure. Failure to do so may cause one of the following conditions:

- Excessive wear
- Unevenly worn
- Poor handling
- Tire bursting due to overheating
- Poor sealing of tire bead
- Deformation of wheel or disengagement of tire from wheel
- Tires are more easily damaged due to poor road conditions.

#### ■ **Do not drive the vehicle under incorrect tire pressure.**

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle under incorrect tire pressure. Incorrect tire pressure may affect handling stability and cause accidents. Check the pressure in the normal tires, but also check the pressure in the spare tire.

### NOTICES

#### ■ **Precautions for checking and adjusting tire pressure**

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve cap back.

Without the valve cap, dirt or moisture may enter the valve mouth and the tire may leak air, resulting in an accident.

If the valve cap is lost, install a new one as soon as possible.

# Wheel

**If the rim is bent, cracked or severely corroded, replace it. Failure to do so may cause the tire to separate from the rim or cause loss of control of the vehicle.**

■ Selection to wheel

When replacing a wheel, take care to ensure that the replacement wheel has the same load carrying capacity, diameter, rim width and offset distance as the original wheel.

Contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for alternative wheels.

The following wheels are not recommended by China FAW:

- Wheels of different size or type.
- Old wheel.
- Bent wheels that have been aligned.

■ Precautions for aluminum wheels

- Be sure to use the special wheel nuts and wrench for this aluminum wheel.
- When rotating, repairing or replacing the wheel, check and confirm whether the wheel nuts are tightened.
- When tire chains are used, be sure to prevent the chains from damaging the aluminum rims.
- To balance the wheel, use China-FAW-specified counterweights or the equivalent only.

**CAUTIONS****■ When replacing the wheel**

Make sure the wheels are the correct size for your vehicle. Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle.

**■ When installing the wheel nuts**

- Tighten the wheel nuts until the washers come into contact with the wheel rim bolt slightly.

- Never apply oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

Oil and grease may make the wheel nuts over-tightened, resulting in damage to the bolts or spoke wheels. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident that may lead to serious injury or even death. Remove all oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

**■ Do not use any defective wheel.**

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Doing so may cause tire deflation while the vehicle moving, resulting in an accident.

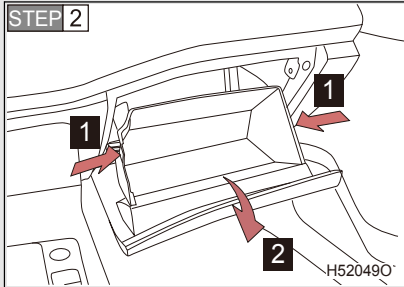
## 7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

### A/C filter

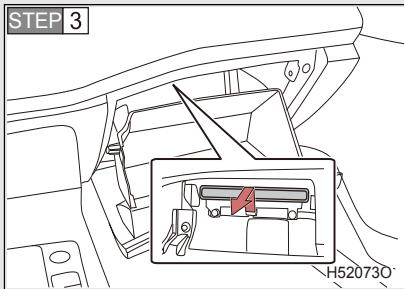
**Replace the A/C filter regularly to maintain air conditioning performance.**

#### ■ Replace the A/C filter

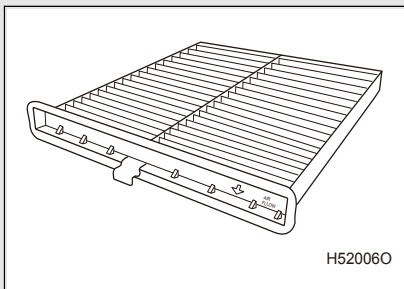
**STEP 1** Turn the IGNITION switch OFF.



- 1** Press the side plates of the glove box toward the center.
- 2** Pull the glove box to open completely downward until you can see the filter.



Remove the A/C filter and replace it with a new one.



Replace the A/C filter with a new one of the same model.

The arrow on the filter should point to the vehicle bottom.

---

- **Intervals of replacement of A/C filter**

The replacement interval may be shortened in dusty or heavy traffic areas.

- **If the air flow at the vent is significantly weakened,**

the filter may be clogged. Check the filter, and replace it if necessary.

- **A/C filter**

If the filter needs to be cleaned or replaced, please contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.



### NOTICES

- **When using air conditioning system**

Make sure the filter is installed.

Using an A/C system without filter may cause damage to the system.

- **When removing the filter housing**

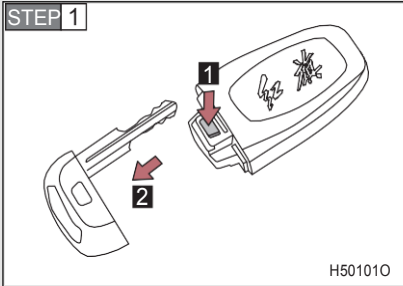
Do not replace the A/C filter while the blower is running. Doing so may cause personal injury.

## 7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

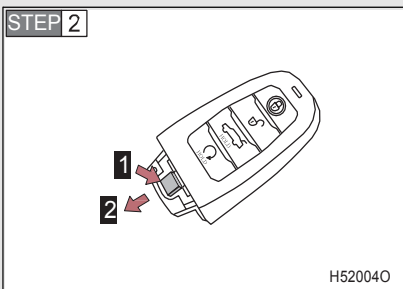
### Smart key battery

If the smart key battery is depleted, replace with a new one.

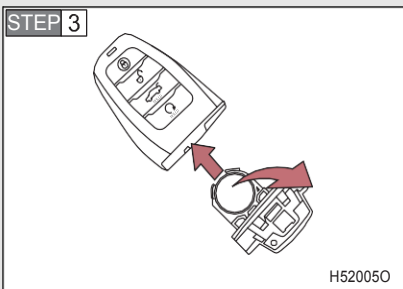
- The following items are needed:
  - lithium cell
- Replace the battery.



Take out the mechanical key.



- 1** Press and hold the button there.
- 2** Pull out the cell compartment.



- 1** Remove the used cell.  
Insert a new cell with its positive pole facing down.
- 2** Install the cell compartment back into the remote control key.

**■ If the smart key battery is depleted, the following conditions will occur:**

- Wireless remote control fails.
- Effective acting range becomes smaller.
- Passive entry function fails.
- Intelligent start function fails.

**■ Use the CR2032 lithium cell.**

- It is recommended to use the same or equivalent product recommended by your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for replacement.
- Dispose of the used cell according to the local regulations.

**CAUTIONS****■ Keep the old battery and other parts**

away from the children.

These parts are small. However, if it is swallowed by a child inadvertently, it may cause suffocation.

**NOTICES****■ To ensure the remote control key operates properly if the cell is replaced**

To avoid accidents, the following precautions shall be observed.

- When operating, both hands shall be dry. Otherwise, the battery may be rust.
- Do not touch or move any other parts inside the remote key.
- Do not bend the battery terminal.

## 7-3. Do-It-Yourself Maintenance

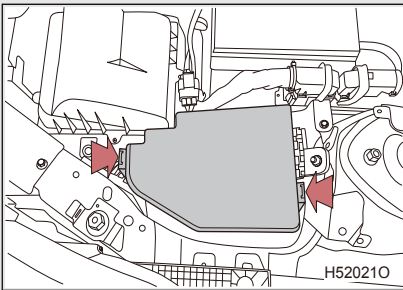
### Checking and replacing the fuse

**If any electrical component in your vehicle stops working, a fuse may have been blown. The first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Replace it if necessary.**

**STEP 1** Turn the IGNITION switch OFF.

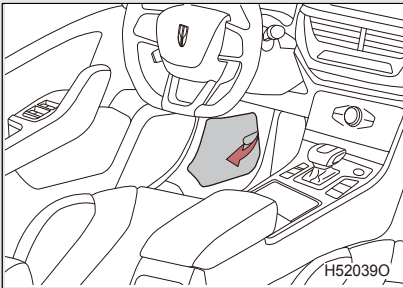
**STEP 2** The fuses are located in the following positions. Follow the instructions below to check the fuses.

#### ■ Engine compartment



Press the tabs on both sides and open the fuse box lid.

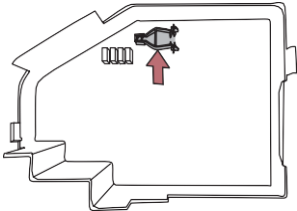
#### ■ A-pillar lower trim panel on the driver's side



Remove the fuse cover plate on the A-pillar lower trim panel on the driver's side.

**STEP 3** If there is a trouble in the system, please contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for specific instructions on which fuses to check.

**STEP 4**

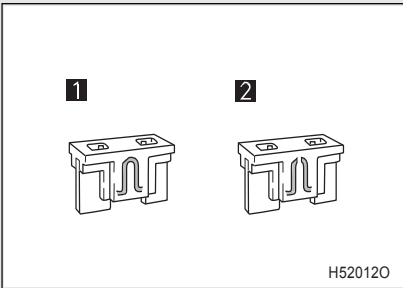


H520030

Remove the fuse with the fuse puller.

**STEP 5** Check whether the fuse is blown.

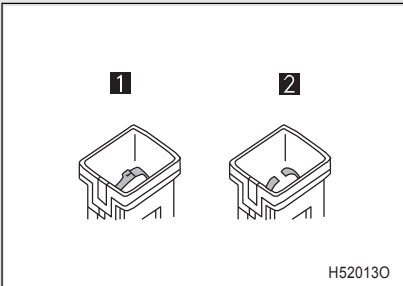
► Type A



H520120

- 1** Normal fuse
- 2** Blown fuse

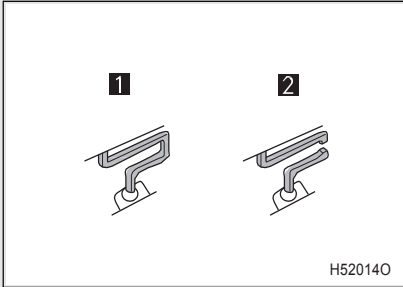
► Type B



H520130

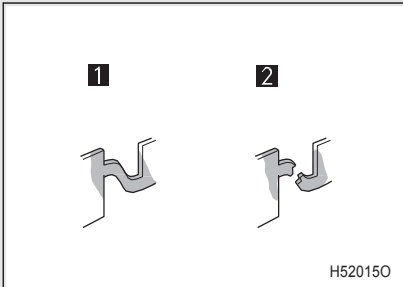
- 1** Normal fuse
- 2** Blown fuse

► Type C



- 1 Normal fuse
- 2 Blown fuse

► Type D



- 1 Normal fuse
- 2 Blown fuse

Replace the fuse with one of the China-FAW-approved rating amperage.

■ **Fuse distribution and ampere ratings**

For the fuse distribution and ampere ratings, please contact your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer for confirmation.

■ **After replacing the fuse**

- If the electrical function still does not work properly after the fuse is replaced, further inspection may be required. Contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.
- If the fuse after replacement is blown again, have FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer inspect the vehicle.

■ **If the circuit is overloaded,**

the fuse will be blown, resulting in damage to the entire harness.

**CAUTIONS****■ Preventing system failure and vehicle fire**

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in serious damage / fire to the vehicle or personal injury.

- Do not use fuse higher or lower than the rated amperes.
- Be sure to use the same or equivalent product recommended by your FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.  
Do not use a wire instead of fuse. Even temporary replacement is not allowed. Doing so may cause serious damage or even a fire.
- Do not modify the fuse or the fuse box.

**NOTICES****■ Before replacing the fuse**

Please contact FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to troubleshoot the electrical overload fault .

**8-1. Essential information**

Emergency  
flashers ..... 358

**8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies**

If the vehicle needs  
to be towed ..... 359

If any abnormality is  
found on the  
vehicle ..... 364

If a warning light turns  
on or a warning buzzer  
sounds ..... 365

In the case of a flat  
tyre ..... 369

If the engine cannot be  
started ..... 378

If the key is lost ..... 379

If the smart key does  
not work properly ..... 380

If the door can not be  
locked properly ..... 382

If the battery is  
low ..... 384

If the vehicle is  
overheating ..... 388

In case of the vehicle  
stuck ..... 390

If you drive on water-  
covered roads ..... 392

In case of a punctured  
tyre ..... 393

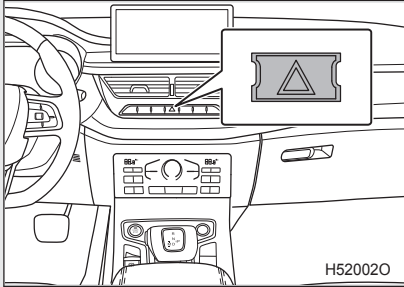
In case of an  
accident ..... 394

Trunk lid emergency  
open ..... 395

## 8-1. Essential information

# Emergency flashers

Use the emergency flashers and pull over if the vehicle malfunctions; place the warning triangle behind the vehicle while turning on the emergency flashers if the vehicle cannot move due to malfunctions. If necessary, please wear a reflective vest



By pressing the emergency flasher switch, all turn signal lamps will flash; by pressing it again, turn the emergency flashers off.

### NOTICES

#### ■ To prevent the battery depletion

Do not leave the emergency flashers on longer than necessary when the engine is not operating.

## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies If the vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, FAW recommends having your vehicle towed using a flat bed truck by the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer or a commercial towing service.

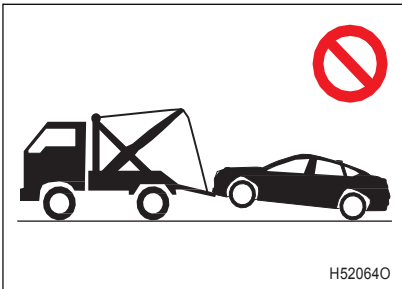
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and observe all the legal regulations in your country/region.

### Before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer before towing.

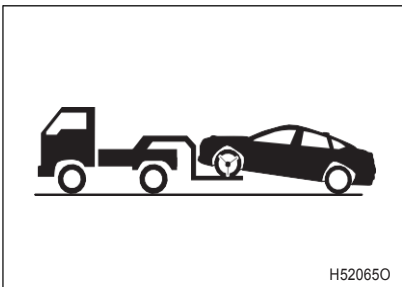
- The engine is operating but the vehicle will not move.
- The transmission makes an abnormal sound or vibration.

### Do not use a sling-type truck for towing



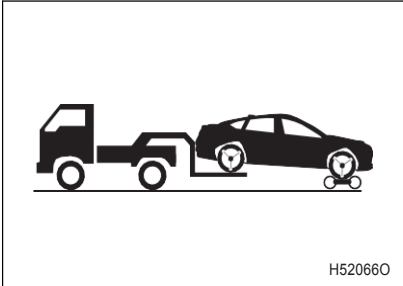
Do not use a sling-type truck for towing to prevent damage to the vehicle body.

### Towing with a wheel-lifting truck from the front



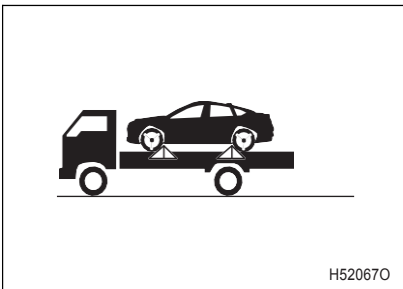
Deactivate the parking brake.

### Towing with a wheel-lifting truck from the rear



Place the towing vehicle under the front wheels.

### Using a flat bed truck



Apply the electronic parking brake, and turn off the engine switch.

Use holding blocks under the 4 wheels to avoid vehicle movement.

As shown in the figure, tie tyres on the base plate of the tow truck to secure the vehicle.

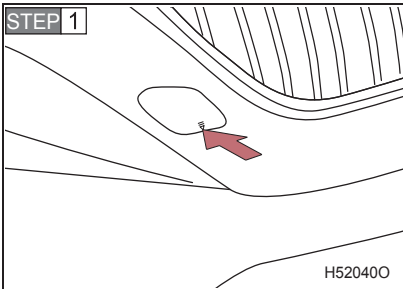
### Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed by fastening a cable or chain to the emergency towing eyelets and shifting the gearbox to N. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distances at low speeds.

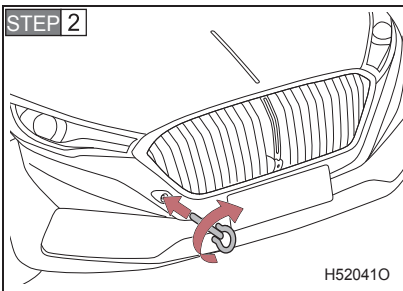
A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

### Emergency towing procedures

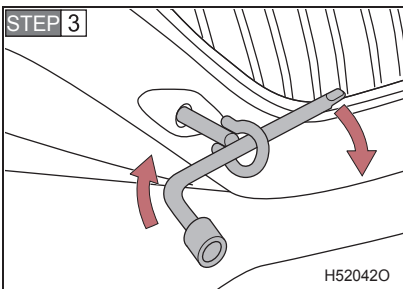
#### ■ Front section



By pressing the lower end of the towing eyelet lid, release the towing eyelet lid.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a tyre wrench.

**STEP 4** Firmly secure the towing cable or chain onto the towing eyelet.

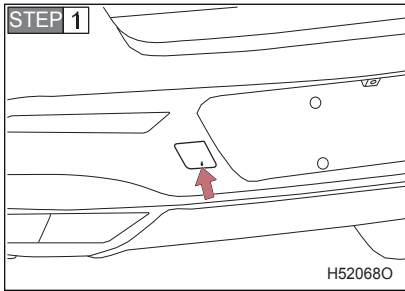
Be careful not to damage the body.

**STEP 5** Go to the vehicle being towed and start its engine.

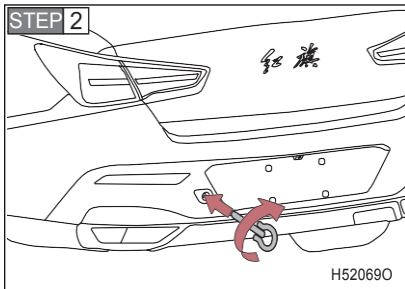
If the engine can not be started, turn the engine switch to "IG-ON" or "ACC" mode.

**STEP 6** Deactivate the electronic parking brake and shift the shift lever to N.

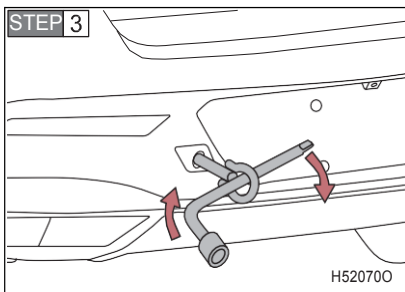
■ Rear Section



By pressing the lower end of the towing eyelet lid, release the towing eyelet lid.



Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a tyre wrench.

■ While towing

If the engine does not run, it means the brake and the steering wheel's power assistant system are not working, which makes steering and braking even more difficult.

■ Tyre wrench

Tyre wrenches are stored in the vehicle tool box. (→ P.406)

### CAUTIONS

Please observe the following notes. Otherwise it will lead to serious personal injuries, even death.

#### ■ **While towing vehicles**

Make sure to transport vehicles when their front wheels are elevated or all four wheels are off the ground.

If towing a vehicle when its front wheels are on the ground, its power train system and related parts might be damaged.

#### ■ **While towing**

- When towing with a rope, avoid any sudden start, or it would generate excessive tensile force to the towing eyelet or rope.

The towing eyelet or rope might be damaged, and the broken pieces might hit persons and lead to serious injuries.

- Do not turn the engine switch to the “IG-OFF” mode. The steering wheel might be locked and thus unavailable for any operation.

#### ■ **Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle**

Make sure the towing eyelets securely installed.

If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing. It may cause an accident as a result.

### NOTICES

#### ■ **When towing with a wheel-lifting truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle**

When lifting the vehicle, make sure the landing end of the vehicle has enough ground clearance for towing. Otherwise, during towing, the vehicle might be damaged.

#### ■ **When towing with a sling-type truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle**

Do not use any sling-type truck for towing no matter from the front or rear section of the vehicle.

#### ■ **When towing with a flat bed truck, prevent any damage to the vehicle**

- Do not drive over the holding blocks, or it would damage the tyres.

- Do not tie the vehicle onto parts (e.g. the suspension) other than tyres.

## If any abnormality is found on the vehicle

**If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible.**






- Visible symptoms
  - Fluid leaks under the vehicle.  
(Water dripping from the air conditioning after use and from drain hole on the vent pipe is normal.)
  - Flat-looking tyres or uneven tyre wear.
  - Engine coolant temperature continually points higher than normal.
- Audible symptoms
  - Changes in exhaust sound.
  - Excessive tyre squeal when cornering.
  - Strange noises related to the suspension system.
  - Noises related to the engine.
- Operational symptoms
  - Engine misfiring, stumbling or running rough.
  - Power reduces obviously.
  - Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking.
  - Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road.
  - Brake failure, soft brake pedal, or pedal approaching to the floor.










## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

### If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds










Calmly perform the following actions if any warning light lights up or flashes. If the warning light lights up or flashes and goes out subsequently, it does not necessarily mean a system fault. However, if this is going on for a while, have the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to inspect the vehicle.





#### List of warning lights

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p><b>Warning light for abnormal oil pressure</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Indicates low engine oil pressure.</li></ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• After the engine starts, if the indicator is still on, it means the charging system is faulty.</li></ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Engine exhaust monitoring system fault warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• After the engine starts, if the indicator is still on, it means the engine exhaust monitoring system is faulty.</li></ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Engine control system fault warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• After the engine starts, if the indicator is still on, it means the engine control system is faulty.</li></ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</b></p>
	<p><b>Brake system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Indicates a failure in the brake system.</li></ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.</b></p>

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p><b>Airbag system failure warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates a failure in airbag system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>EPS system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It indicates a failure in EPS.</li> </ul> <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p><b>ABS system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates a failure in ABS system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>ACC system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicating a failure in the ACC system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>Gearbox system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates a failure in the gearbox system.</li> </ul> <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p><b>Seat belt reminder light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reminds the driver or the front passenger of a failure in seat belt fastening.</li> </ul> <p>→The driver or the front passenger shall wear their seat belt.</p>
	<p><b>FCW system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates a failure in the FCW system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>Exterior lighting malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates a failure in the exterior lighting system.</li> </ul> <p>→Check bulbs and harness connectors of the exterior lighting system for any fault contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>EPB system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates a failure in EPB system.</li> </ul> <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>

## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p><b>IHC system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicating a failure in the IHC system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>ESC system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in ESC system.</li> </ul> <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p><b>High coolant temperature warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The coolant temperature is too high.</li> </ul> <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p><b>Low fuel level warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates insufficient remaining fuel.</li> </ul> <p>→Refuel the vehicle.</p>
	<p><b>Abnormal tyre pressure/ system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in the TPMS system or abnormal tyre pressure</li> </ul> <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p><b>Idle start-stop system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in the idle start-stop system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>LDW system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in the LDW system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>LCDA system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in the LCDA system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>Engine immobilizer system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in the engine immobilizer system.</li> </ul> <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>

Warning lights	Warning light/details/actions
	<p><b>Hybrid system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in the hybrid system.</li> </ul> <p>→Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer.</p>
	<p><b>Wireless charging system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in the wireless charging system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>Drive select system malfunction warning light</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates a failure in the drive select system.</li> </ul> <p>→Please contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.</p>
	<p><b>SVS indicator lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indicates that the vehicles needs maintenance.</li> </ul> <p>→Maintain the vehicle.</p>

---

Note: when the oil pressure warning light and coolant temperature warning light lights up, the warning buzzer sounds.

## In the case of a flat tyre

**Remove the flat tyre and replace it with the spare.**



### CAUTIONS

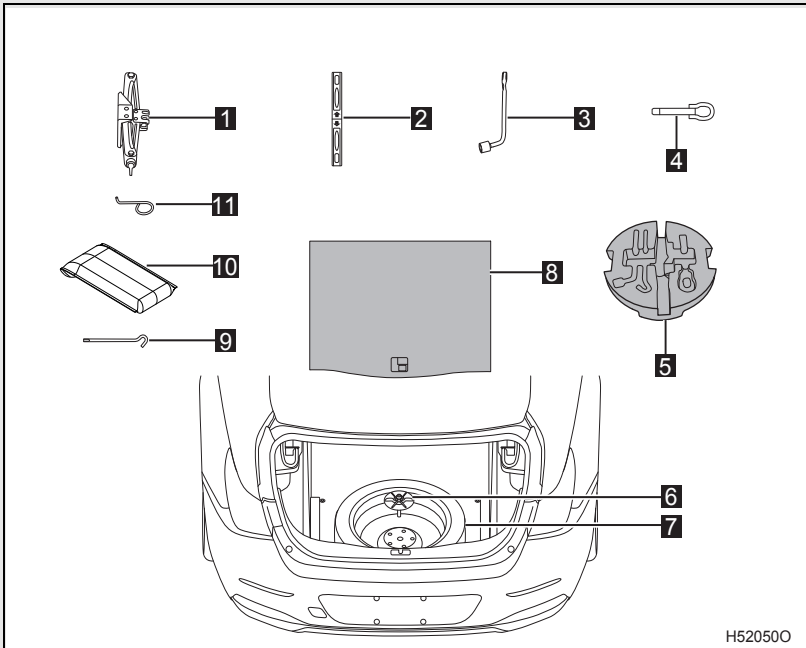
■ **Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tyre**

- Do not continue driving with a flat tyre.
- Driving even a short distance with a flat tyre can damage the tyre and the wheel beyond repair, causing an accident.

■ **Before jacking up the vehicle**

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Turn off the engine.
- Turn the warning light on, and place the warning triangle.

■ Location of the spare tyre and tools provided



- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Jack                                      | <b>2</b> Warning triangle          |
| <b>3</b> Tyre wrench                               | <b>4</b> Towing eyelet             |
| <b>5</b> Vehicle tool box                          | <b>6</b> Spare tyre fasteners      |
| <b>7</b> Spare tyre                                | <b>8</b> Trunk carpet              |
| <b>9</b> Jack handle                               | <b>10</b> Reflective vest assembly |
| <b>11</b> Wheel decoration cover<br>removal tool * |                                    |



## CAUTIONS

### ■ Always replace tyres according to the following steps

If operating improperly, it could be very dangerous. The vehicle might slide from the jack, leading to severe personal injuries.

### ■ The vehicle lifted up by the jack

Do not let any one leave inside the vehicle lifted up by a jack, and it is very dangerous to leave any occupant in it. The occupant might make the vehicle slide, and lead to severe personal injuries

### ■ Using the tyre jack

Improper use of the tyre jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Only use the lifting positions recommended in this manual.

It is very dangerous to use a jack on the position other than the ones recommended in this manual. The vehicle might slide from the jack, leading to severe personal injuries even death.

- Do not lift the vehicle on a non-specified position or leave any item on or under the jack.

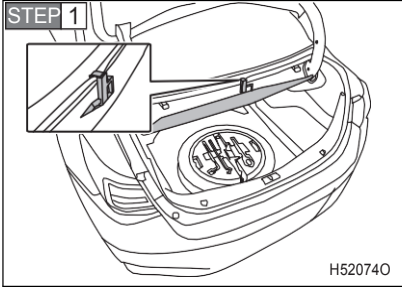
It is very dangerous to lift the vehicle on a non-specified position or leave any item on or under the jack, which would lead to vehicle deformation or vehicle sliding off, resulting in an accident.

- Do not use the tyre jack for any purpose other than replacing tyres or installing and removing tyre chains.
- Only use the tyre jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tyre.
- Do not use the removed tyre on other vehicles.
- Always check that the tyre jack is securely set to the jack point.
- Do not let any of your body part under the lifted vehicle.

It is dangerous for any of your body part under the lifted vehicle, if the vehicle slides from the jack, it would lead to severe personal injuries even death.

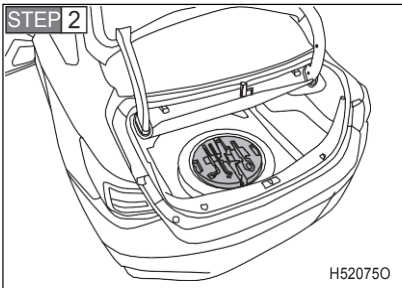
- Do not start or run the engine while your vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tyre.
- Take particular care when lowering the vehicle to ensure that no one working on or near the vehicle may be injured.

## Taking out the spare tyre

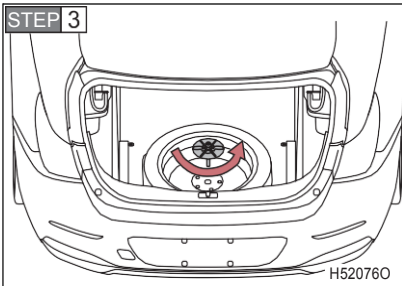


Lift the trunk carpet upward.

Hooks on the carpet can be hung at the edge of the trunk.



Take out the vehicle tool box.



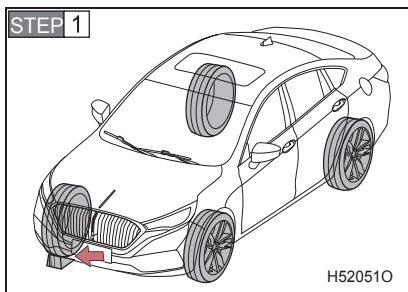
Unscrew and remove the spare tyre fasteners to take out the spare tyre.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ When accessing the spare tyre

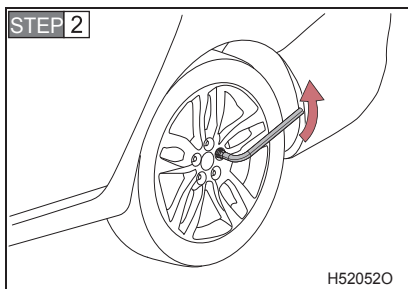
Be careful, and do not let your finger or other body part between the spare tyre of the vehicle body.

## Flat tyre replacement



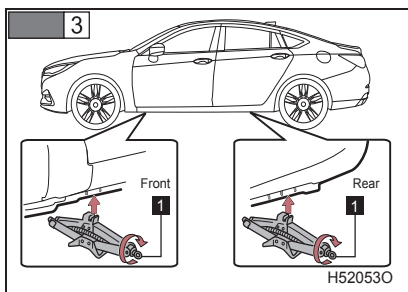
Use holding blocks to wedge the tyre.

Flat tyre		Wheel chock positions
Front wheel	Left	Behind the rear right tyre
	Right	Behind the rear left tyre
Rear wheels	Left	In front of the front right tyre
	Right	In front of the front left tyre



Use the accompanying tyre wrench to slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

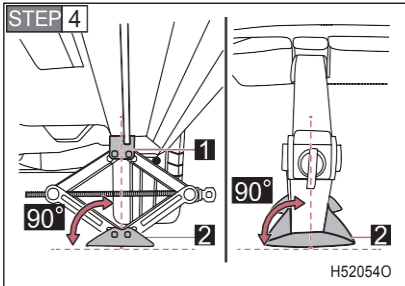
For some models, the wheel nut can be loosened after removing the wheel decoration cover.



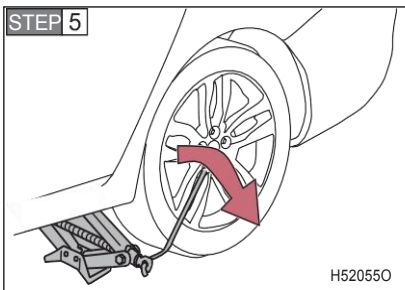
Turn the tyre jack portion "1" with your hands until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point marks are under the sill panel. Among them, the rear jack point is between the two marks pointed by the arrows in the figure.

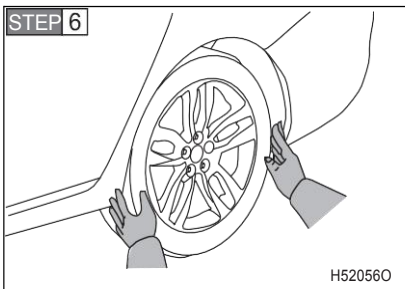
Please support the vehicle according to the jack point positions.



Calibrate the jack positions to make its notch "1" cover the jack point and the base plate "2" flatly attached to ground. At this moment, the base plate "2" must be vertically under the jack point.



Insert the jack handle into the hole of the jack. Rotate the jack handle to raise the vehicle and allow the wheels slightly off the ground.



Remove all the wheel nuts and the tyre.

When resting the tyre on the ground, place the tyre with the wheel spoke facing upward to avoid scratching the wheel surface.

### CAUTIONS

#### ■ Replacing a flat tyre

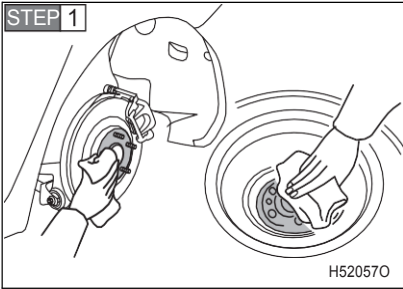
- Do not touch the area around the wheels or the brake immediately after driving.

After driving, the area around the wheels or the brake will be very hot. When replacing a tyre, touching this area with your hands, feet or other body parts could lead to burns.

- If the following notes are not followed, the wheel nuts might be loose and the wheels may come off, thus severe personal injuries even death might occur.
  - After the wheel replacement, tighten the wheel nuts to the specified torques with an torque wrench as soon as possible.
  - Do not install any wheel decorative insert that has been severely damaged, because it might come off from the wheel while driving.
  - When installing the wheels, only use wheel nuts designed for such wheel.
  - If bolts or nuts on the wheels have any crack or deformation, have the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to inspect the vehicle.
- Please correctly and securely tighten the wheel nuts.

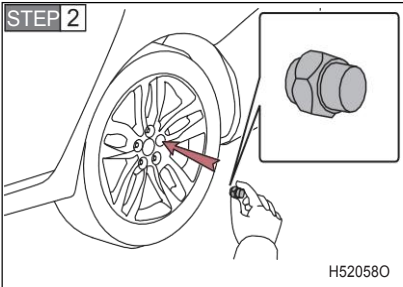
It is dangerous when the wheel nuts are improperly tightened or loose. The wheel might wobble or come off. It might make the vehicle out of control and lead to severe accidents.

## Installing the spare tyre

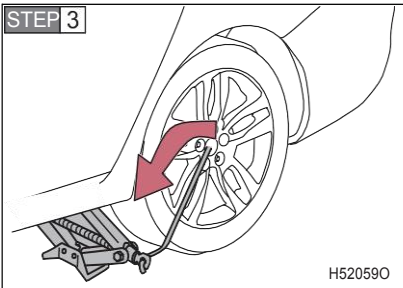


Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

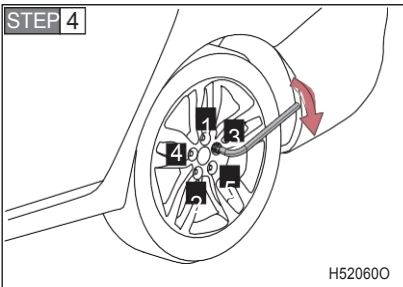
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tyre to come off.



Install the wheel and tighten each wheel bolt by hand with the same force.



Lower the vehicle.



Firmly tighten each wheel nut in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:  
108-147 N·m

**CAUTIONS****■ After using tools and the jack**

Before driving, make sure all tools and the jack are securely fixed on their storage spots to decrease the possibility to cause personal injuries in case of a collision or any emergency braking.

**■ Cleaning before installing wheels**

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tyre to come off.

**■ Installation of the spare tyre**

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident and leading to serious injury or even death. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to standard value in the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- Have FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer inspect and replace the wheel if the wheel bolt hole is damaged or cracked.

**NOTICES****■ Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tyre**

Do not continue driving with a flat tyre.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tyre can damage the tyre and the wheel beyond repair, causing an accident.

## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies If the engine cannot be started

**After executing correct starting steps ( → P.143), the engine cannot start yet. Please confirm the following reasons.**

- The engine will not start even though the starter is normally operating

One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle tank.  
Add fuel to the vehicle.
- There may be oil spilling off the engine.  
Try to go through the correct engine starting procedure again.  
( → P.143)
- The key may not be able to work properly.
- There may be a failure in the engine theft deterrent system. ( → P.63)
- It may not be able to shift out of the P position.

- The starter rotates slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume  
One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery is low. ( → P.417)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.

- The starter is not operating

The engine may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem, such as an open circuit.

- The starter can not be started, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound

One of the followings may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged.

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

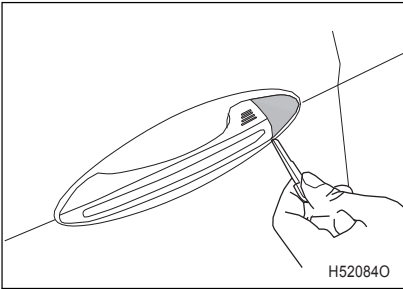
## If the key is lost

**If you lose your keys or the keys are stolen, provide the remaining keys or key number plate to the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer as soon as possible. After rematching the keys, the lost or stolen keys will be invalid. The illegal modification without authorization, or using informal spare parts may lead to the malfunction of the system.**

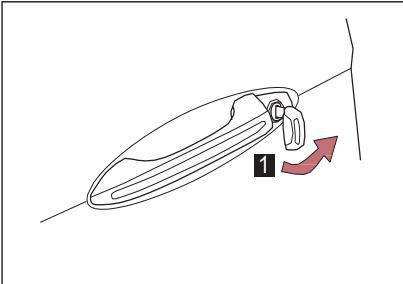
# If the smart key does not work properly

If communication between the smart key and vehicle is interrupted ( → P.96) or the smart key cannot be used because of depleted battery, the passive entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

## Locking and unlocking the doors

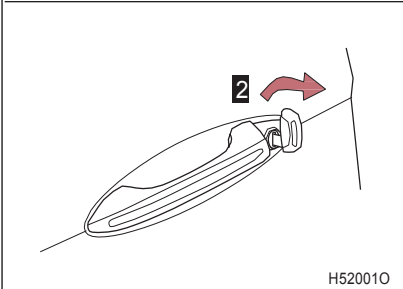


Open the door keyhole cover using the mechanical key.



Lock and unlock the vehicle using the mechanical key.

- 1** Lock the door.
- 2** Unlock the door.

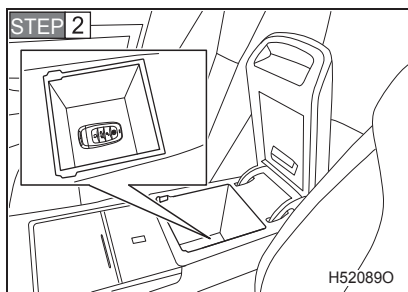


## Backup starting mode

Use the backup starting mode if the smart key battery is depleted.

**STEP 1** Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.  
Press the engine switch.

The Instrument display displays: No keys detected.



Open the central console box, and put the smart key into it.

**STEP 3** Depress the brake pedal and press the engine “START STOP” switch to start the engine.

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if the engine still can not be started.

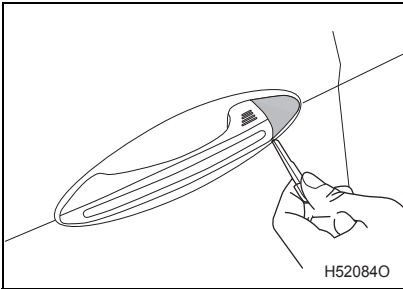
### ■ Replacing the key battery

Replace the smart key battery if it is weak. (→P.381)

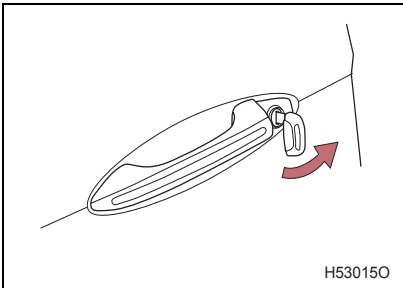
## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies If the door can not be locked properly

If the door cannot be locked through the PEPS function or the wireless remote control function due to the low battery. Then, the following steps can be used to lock each door.

### Locking the driver side door

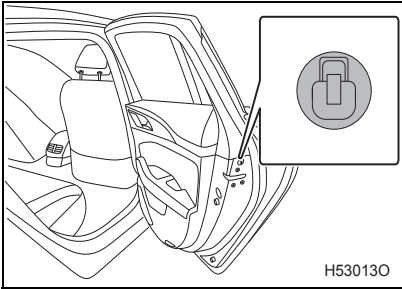


Use the mechanical key to disengage the door lock cylinder cover.

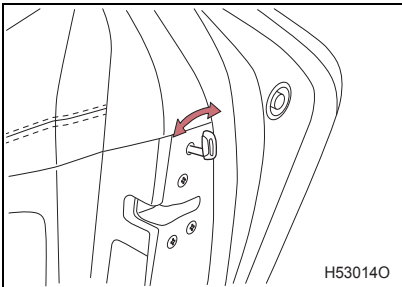


Use the mechanical key to lock the driver side door.

## Lock the front passenger side and rear passenger side doors



Disengage the mechanical lock switch cover of the corresponding side door.



Close the door after locking it by the use of mechanical key.

For the front passenger side and rear right door: turn the switch clockwise;

For the rear left door: turn the switch counterclockwise.

## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

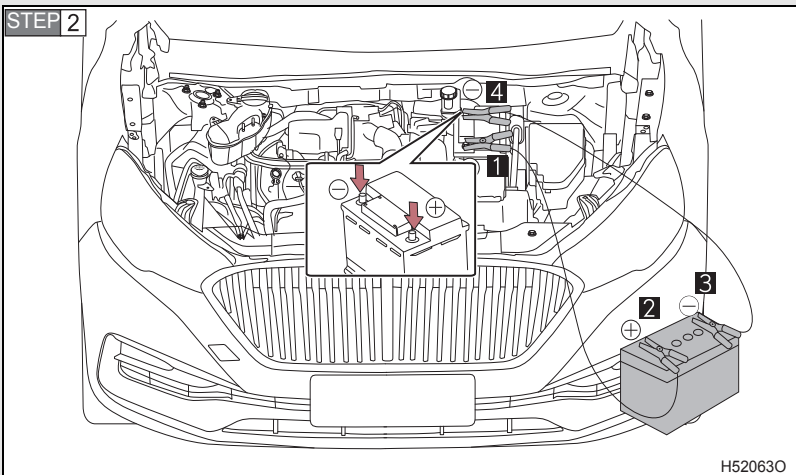
### If the battery is low

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged.

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer or a qualified repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12V battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

**STEP 1** Open the engine hood.



Connect the jumper cables

- 1** Connect to the positive (+) battery terminal on your vehicle.
- 2** Connect to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 3** Connect to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.
- 4** Connect to the negative (-) battery terminal on your vehicle. (Or connect metal parts on the engine body)

**STEP 3** Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

**STEP 4** Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the IGNITION switch to "IG-ON" mode.

**STEP 5** Once the engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected. Once the engine has started, drive your vehicle to the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer to inspect as soon as possible.

### ■ To prevent battery depletion

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

### ■ Battery charging

- Because natural discharge and wear effect of some electrical equipment, charge level in the battery will deplete even when the vehicle is not in use. If the vehicle leaves unused for a long time, the battery energy will deplete and the engine may not be started. (When the engine operates, the battery will be charged automatically)

### ■ When replacing batteries

- Use batteries conforming to the genuine standards.
- Use the batteries having the same battery compartment size with the original one and having the equal or larger capacity.
  - If you use batteries with a different battery compartment size, the batteries may not be properly secured.
  - If you use batteries with smaller capacity, the battery energy may deplete and the engine may not be able to be started even if the vehicle just leaves unused for a short time.



## CAUTIONS

### ■ When disassembling the battery terminals

- Please disassemble the negative (-) battery terminal first. If the disassembled positive (+) battery terminal touches any metal around, it may generate sparks, lead to a fire as well as electric shock, and thus cause severe injuries even death.

### ■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery.



## CAUTIONS

- Make sure all jumper cables are connected to the correct terminals, and they will not touch any other terminals except the correct one.
- Do not let the other end of the jumper cable connected to the “+” terminal touch any other parts or metal surfaces (such as a bracket or any non-paint metal) in this area.
- Do not let the “+” clips of the jumper cables to touch the “-” clips.
- Do not ignite a fire, smoke or use matches, cigarette lighters near the battery.
- Be careful when connecting the negative cable to the vehicle.  
Sparks may occur when connecting the second jumper cable. Sparks may explode the gas near the battery and cause personal injury.

### ■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte. Observe the following precautions

when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery electrolyte to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- If the battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.
- Keep away from moving parts when laying jumper cables.  
It is dangerous to connect jumper cables to or around moving parts (such as cooling fan). When the vehicle is started, the cable may be jammed, causing serious personal injury.  
If the battery is aging, continued use may cause the battery to emit malodorous gas, which may endanger the health of the occupants.



### NOTICES

#### ■ When handling jumper cables

- When connecting or disconnecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or belt.
- Only one 12V auxiliary battery can be used. Otherwise, it would damage the 12V starter, ignition system and other electric components.

## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies If the vehicle is overheating

### **Following situations may indicate an overheating vehicle.**

- The coolant system has high-temperature warning or you can feel the engine power is dropping.
- Steam comes out from the engine hood.
- Correction procedures

**STEP 1** Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the A/C system.

**STEP 2** Check to see if steam is coming out from the engine hood.

#### **If you see steam:**

Stop the engine. Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides and then restart the engine.

#### **If you do not see steam:**

Leave the engine operating and carefully lift the hood.

**STEP 3** Check if the cooling fans are operating.

#### **If the fans are operating:**

Wait until the engine coolant temperature decreases (shown on the combination meter) and then stop the engine.

#### **If the fans are not operating:**

Stop the engine immediately and contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer

**STEP 4** After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, check the engine coolant level and inspect the cooling system for leaks.

**STEP 5** Add engine coolant if necessary. (→ P.364)

Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer if engine coolant is unavailable in an emergency.

**CAUTIONS****■ Precautions when inspecting**

To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle, observe the following precautions.

- If steam is seen coming from the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot, causing serious injuries such as burns.
- Do not approach fan and belt when the engine is operating.
- Do not loosen the radiator cap while the engine and radiator are hot. Serious injuries, such as burns, may result from hot coolant and steam released under pressure.

**NOTICES****■ When adding engine coolant**

After the engine is fully cooled, slowly add the coolant to it. When the engine is very hot, fast filling coolant may damage the engine.

**■ To prevent damaging the cooling system**

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid mixing any foreign matter (such as sand or dust) to the coolant.
- Do not use any coolant additive.

## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies In case of the vehicle stuck

**Carry out the following procedures if the tyres spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow.**

**STEP 1** Turn off the engine. Apply the electronic parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

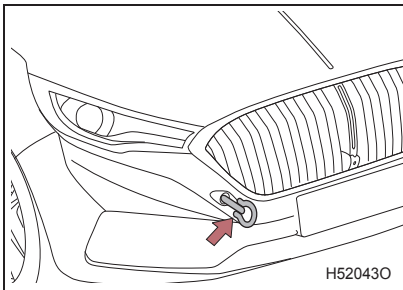
**STEP 2** Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the stuck tyre.

**STEP 3** Place wood, stones or some other material under the tyres to help provide traction.

**STEP 4** Restart the engine.

**STEP 5** Shift the shift lever to the D or R position and carefully apply the accelerator to free the vehicle.

### ■ Emergency towing



- In emergency, tie the emergency towing cable or chain to a second vehicle to tow this vehicle with a towing eyelet if it is stuck or can not move.
- For more details on towing, refer to “If the vehicle needs to be towed” in this chapter. (→P.389)
- Towing other vehicles with this vehicle is not recommended.

### ⚠ CAUTIONS

#### ■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or backward suddenly as it becomes free; please pay extra attention.

#### ■ When shifting the shift lever

Do not depress the accelerator pedal by mistake during gear shifting. Otherwise, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and cause serious accidents.



### NOTICES

- **To avoid damage to the transmission and other components**
  - Avoid wheel spin. Do not operate the engine at a high speed.
  - If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

### If you drive on water-covered roads

**Have the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer inspect the vehicle for the following aspects if water enters the vehicle accidentally when driving on water-covered roads:**

- Inspect the braking efficiency of the brake.
- Inspect the oil level and oil quality in the engine, transmission and differential (the white and turbid lubricating oil indicates that water is mixed in it and should be replaced).
- Inspect the lubricating situations of drive shaft, all bearings and all connectors.



Driving on water-covered roads easily causes the engine to stall, electric elements short circuit and vehicle watered. Do not start the engine after the engine stalls; doing so may cause serious damage to the engine.

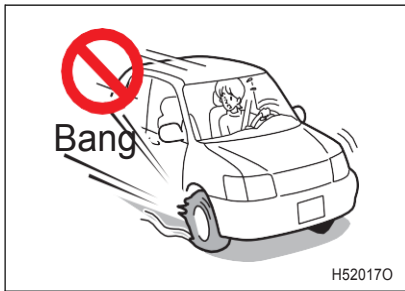
## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies In case of a punctured tyre

### **Stay calm when you have a punctured tyre or a broken tyre when driving.**

Tightly grip the steering wheel and slowly depress the brake pedal to decelerate the vehicle. The vehicle can easily be out of control if brakes are suddenly applied or by turning the steering wheel suddenly.

The tyre may be punctured or broken in the following situations:

- When the steering wheel vibrates.
- When the vehicle vibrates abnormally.
- When the vehicle dips abnormally.

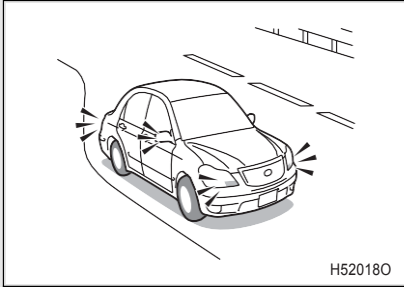


Do not drive with a punctured tyre.

Do not continue driving with a punctured tyre, otherwise, it might easily cause accidents. In addition, it may damage the tyre, wheel rim, suspension and vehicle body. At this moment, contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer immediately.

## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies In case of an accident

**Stay calm and follow the methods below:**



- 1** To prevent subsequent accidents.

Move the vehicle to a safe area avoiding affecting the traffic, and turn off the engine.



- 2** Adopt emergency treatment measures if someone is injured.

Try to adopt emergency treatment measures before the doctors and ambulance arriving. If the head is seriously injured, keep the gesture; if worrying the consecutive accidents, move to a safe area.



- 3** Call the police.

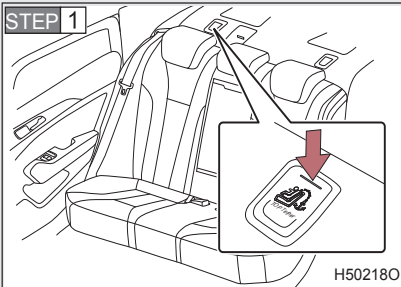
- 4** Confirm the trouble-causing party and record (name, address and phone number).

- 5** Contact the FAW Authorised Hongqi Dealer and your insurance company.

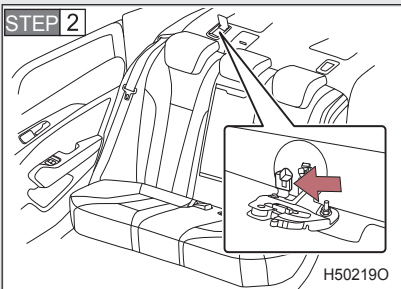
## 8-2. Measures to be taken in emergencies

### Trunk lid emergency open

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the trunk lid can be opened:

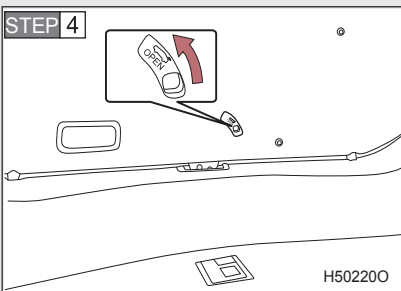


Open it by pressing the fixed anchor bracket lid downward.



Push the manual release mechanism of the trunk lid, and fold the rear right backrest (if necessary, disassemble the fixed anchor bracket lid assembly).

**STEP 3** You can access the trunk through the folded rear right backrest.



Push the unlock pin of the trunk lid lock and open the trunk lid.

**CAUTIONS**

- **Be cautious when manually opening or closing the trunk lid in emergency, and avoid getting hurt!**
  - Do not leave any child or people in need of help unattended in the vehicle, who may be trapped in it when emergencies occur and can not evacuate or save themselves.
  - As seasons change, the interior temperature of a locked vehicle might be very high or low, and occupants are extremely easy to get hurt or sick and even die, especially for babies.
  - Be cautious when opening or closing the trunk lid, and make sure no one is between the trunk lid and the vehicle body.

**NOTICES**

- **To prevent damaging the vehicle**

When opening or closing the trunk lid in emergency, carefully disassemble the parts to avoid damaging the vehicle.



---

**9. Specifications**

Maintenance data (fuel,  
oil level, etc.) ..... 399  
Fuel information ..... 411

## 9. Specifications

### Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

#### Dimensions

Model No.: CA7150HA6T, CA7180HA6T

Overall length	4,945 mm	
Overall width	1,845 mm	
Overall height	1,470 mm	
Front overhang	957 mm	
Rear overhang	1,113 mm	
Wheelbase	2,875 mm	
Tread	Front	1,600 mm
	Rear	1,590 mm
Approach angle	14.7°	
Departure angle	16.4°	

#### Seating capacity

Seating capacity 5

#### Drive mode

Drive mode Front-wheel drive

#### Mass of complete vehicle

Model No.: CA7150HA6T

Kerb weight	1,520 kg	
Max. permissible total mass	1,970 kg	
Full-load Axle load	Front	1,015 kg
	Rear	955 kg

### ■ Model No.: CA7180HA6T

Kerb weight		1,615 kg
Max. permissible total mass		2,065 kg
Full-load axle load	Front	1,068 kg
	Rear	997 kg

### Emission standards

### ■ Model No.: CA7150HA6T, CA7180HA6T

Emission standards	China VI
--------------------	----------

### Total fuel consumption under specified test conditions

### ■ Model No.: CA7150HA6T

Engine model	CA4GB15TD-30
Combined fuel consumption(L/100 km)	6.2

### ■ Model No.: CA7180HA6T

Engine model	CA4GC18TD-30
Combined fuel consumption(L/100 km)	6.4

### Vehicle performance

### ■ CA4GB15TD-30 gasoline engine

Maximum net power/engine speed	118kW/5,500rpm
Nominal power/engine speed	124kW/5,500rpm
Maximum output torque/engine speed	258N·m/ 1,500-4,350rpm
Maximum gradeability	≥ 30%
Top speed	210km/h

### ■ CA4GC18TD-30 gasoline engine

Maximum net power/engine speed	140kW/ 4,500-5,500rpm
Nominal power/engine speed	145 kW / 4,500-5,500 rpm
Maximum output torque/engine speed	320 N·m / 1,650-4,000 rpm
Maximum gradeability	≥ 30%
Top speed	220 km/h

### Front wheels alignment (no-load)

#### ■ Model No.: CA7150HA6T

Front wheel camber	-12'±30'
Master pin caster angle	7°2'±30'
Master pin inclination angle	14°54'±45'
Front wheel toe-in	$\beta=7'\pm5'$ $2\beta=14'\pm10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	412.8±20mm

#### ■ Model No.: CA7180HA6T

Front wheel camber	-22'±30'
Master pin caster angle	7°10'±30'
Master pin inclination angle	15°9'±45'
Front wheel toe-in	$\beta=4'\pm5'$ $2\beta=8'\pm10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	402.8±20mm

### Rear wheel alignment (no-load)

#### Model No.: CA7150HA6T

Rear wheel camber	-43'±45'
Rear wheel toe-in	$\beta=6'\pm5'$ $2\beta=12'\pm10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	399.7±10mm

#### Model No.: CA7180HA6T

Rear wheel camber	-55'±45'
Rear wheel toe-in	$\beta=9'\pm5'$ $2\beta=18'\pm10'$
Vehicle height (from the wheel center to the fender edge)	393.1±10mm

### Suspension

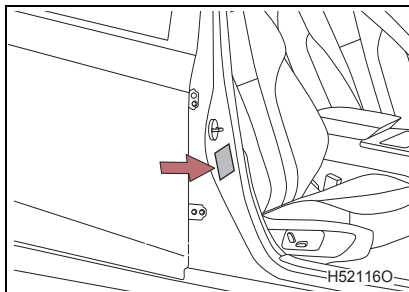
Suspension	Type		McPherson independent suspension
	Spring type		Helical spring
	Shock absorber type		Gas filled shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Transverse stabilizer bar
		Diameter	Φ23mm
Rear suspension	Type		E-type multi-link independent suspension
	Spring type		Helical spring
	Shock absorber type		Gas filled shock absorber
	Stabilizer bar	Type	Transverse stabilizer bar
		Diameter	Φ16mm

### New vehicle running-in technical conditions

The new vehicle running-in mileage is 1500 km, and the engine speed within in the first 1000 km shall not exceed 3/4 of the rated speed; during 1000 km and 1500 km, the engine speed can be raised according to the roads till the rated speed is reached.

## Vehicle identification

### ■ Manufacturer's label

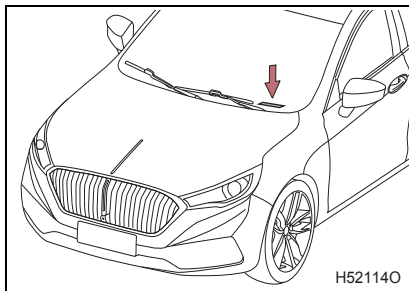


As in the figure, manufacturer's label is located on the right B-pillar. Contents on the manufacturer's label: manufacturer's country, manufacturing plant, vehicle identification number, brand, vehicle model, rated occupants, max. permissible total mass, engine model, max. engine net power, engine displacement and production date.

### ■ Vehicle identification number

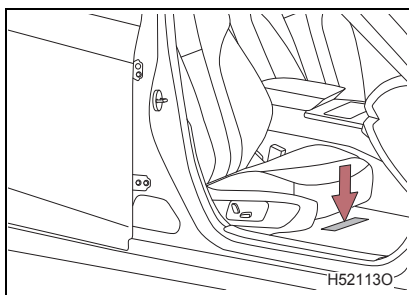
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your vehicle and is used for owner registration.

#### ► The upper left of the dash panel



It is also stamped under the front windshield to the upper left of the dash panel.

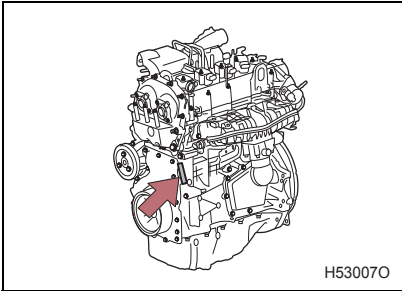
#### ► The bottom of the front passenger seat



It is stamped under the front passenger seat.

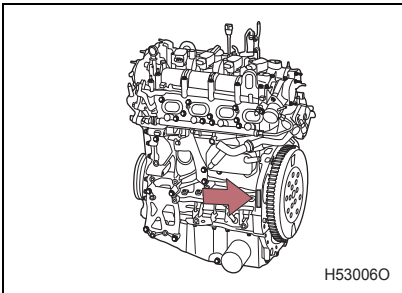
■ Engine model and leave-factory number

▶ CA4GB15TD-30 gasoline engine



The numbers are stamped on the engine cylinder body as shown in the illustration.

▶ CA4GC18TD-30 gasoline engine



The numbers are stamped on the engine cylinder body as shown in the illustration.

## Engine

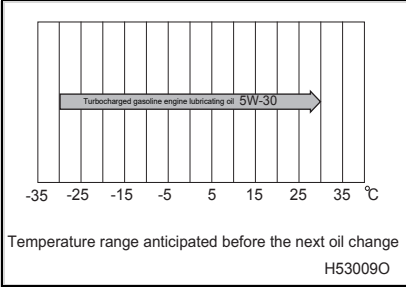
Model	CA4GB15TD-30、 CA4GC18TD-30
Type	Inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, water-cooling, double overhead camshafts, 16-valve, intake and exhaust VCT, in-cylinder direct injection, and charged gasoline engine
Bore and stroke	<p>▶ CA4GB15TD-30 gasoline engine 76.5 × 81.5 mm</p> <p>▶ CA4GC18TD-30 gasoline engine 82.5 × 84.1 mm (毫米)</p>
Displacement	<p>▶ CA4GB15TD-30 gasoline engine 1.498 L</p> <p>▶ CA4GC18TD-30 gasoline engine 1.798 L</p>

### Fuel

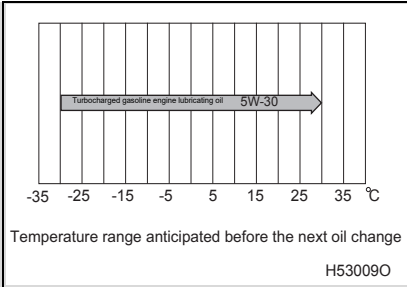
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline
Octane number	95# or above
Fuel tank capacity (for reference)	58 L

### Lubrication system

#### CA4GB15TD-30 gasoline engine

Oil capacity (drain and refill)	(5.2±0.1) L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil and oil filter	(4.8±0.1) L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil separately	(4.5±0.1) L
Oil quality grade	Special oil for turbocharged engine
Oil viscosity grade	Turbocharged gasoline engine lubrication oil 5W-30
The viscosity grade is selected according to the ambient temperature of use	 <p>Temperature range anticipated before the next oil change H53009O</p>

### CA4GC18TD-30 gasoline engine

Oil capacity (drain and refill)	(6.0±0.1) L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil and oil filter	(5.3±0.1) L
Filling quantity after replacing the oil separately	(5.0±0.1) L
Oil quality grade	Special oil for turbocharged engine
Oil viscosity grade	Turbocharged gasoline engine lubrication oil 5W-30
The viscosity grade is selected according to the ambient temperature of use	 <p>Temperature range anticipated before the next oil change H53009O</p>

### Cooling system

Model No.: CA7150HA6T, CA7180HA6T

Capacity	(7±0.1) L
Coolant type	Use the super long life coolant for the whole year (G30-91)

### Ignition system

CA4GB15TD-30 gasoline engine

Spark plug type	3707010A27L
Clearance	0.7 - 0.8 mm

CA4GC18TD-30 gasoline engine

Spark plug type	3707010-27L
Clearance	0.7 - 0.8 mm

## Electrical system

Battery	12V, 59Ah
---------	-----------

## A/C refrigerant

A/C refrigerant capacity	550±25g
--------------------------	---------

A/C refrigerant specifications	R134a
--------------------------------	-------

## Transmission

Model No.: CA7150HA6T

Transmission type	7-speed dual-clutch automatic transmission
-------------------	--

Automatic transmission fluid capacity	7.2L
---------------------------------------	------

Automatic transmission fluid type	BOT 351 C4
-----------------------------------	------------



### NOTICES

#### ■ Iridium alloy spark plugs

- The use of automatic transmission oil other than the specified model will affect the control of transmission hydraulic system, cooling and lubrication effect, and cause damage to the transmission assembly.

Model No.: CA7180HA6T

Transmission type	6-speed automatic transmission
-------------------	--------------------------------

Automatic transmission fluid capacity	6.7 L
---------------------------------------	-------

Automatic transmission fluid type	AW-1
-----------------------------------	------



### NOTICES

#### ■ Automatic transmission fluid

- Using automatic transmission fluid other than the specified may cause worse shifting effect or burns of clutch disc inside the automatic transmission of your vehicle.
- Change the automatic transmission fluid only if necessary.

## Brake

Free travel of brake pedal	≤ 5.4 mm
Travel of brake pedal	128.7 mm
Brake fluid capacity	0.8 - 0.9 L
Type of the brake liquid (Conforming to GB 12981-2012)	DOT4

## Reasonable use range of the brake friction pair

### ► Front

Pad thickness	Standard thickness	Aggregate thickness 18.5mm	Friction material thickness 12mm
	Min. thickness	Aggregate thickness 8.5mm	Friction material thickness 2mm
Brake disc Thickness	Standard thickness	28mm	
	Min. thickness	26mm	

### ► Rear

Pad thickness	Standard thickness	Aggregate thickness 18.52mm	Friction material thickness 11mm
	Min. thickness	Aggregate thickness 9.52mm	Friction material thickness 2mm
Brake disc Thickness	Standard thickness	10mm	
	Min. thickness	8mm	



### NOTICES

When the brake pad is worn to the min. thickness, there will be audible alarm reminding you to replace the brake pad as soon as possible.

### Tyres and wheels

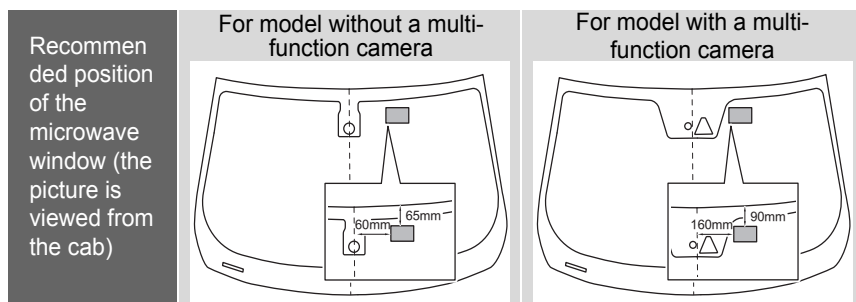
Tyre specifications	225/55 R17 97V		225/45 R19 92W	
Wheel size	17*7J		19*7.5J	
Tyre pressure kPa (bar)		3 persons	ECO	Full-load
	Fron	230(2.3)	260(2.6)	250(2.5)
	Rear	230(2.3)	260(2.6)	320(3.2)
Wheel nut torque	108-147N·m			
Wheel dynamic balance requirements	The residual amount of unbalance: ≤ 12g			
Spare tyre specifications	T125/70 R17 98M			
Spare tyre pressure kPa (bar)	420(4.2)			

### Seat (with a deep cushion)

Front seats	Position at front & rear (from the guide rail rear end position to the front)	40mm
	Backrest angle	24°
Rear seats	Position at front & rear	Unadjustable
	Backrest angle	26°

The normal service condition of seat backrest: any position within the adjustable range designed for the backrest is the normal service condition.

### Microwave window



Bulb				
	Bulb	W	Light source Type	Light colour
Exterior lighting and signal devices	Front position lamp	2.5	LED	White
	Dipped beam headlights	63	LED	White
	High beam headlights	18	LED	White
	Front turn indicator	5.5	LED	Amber
	Front fog lamp	7	LED	White
	Side turn signal lamp	1.4	LED	Amber
	Rear position lamp	4.2	LED	Red
	Brake light	5.8	LED	Red
	Rear fog lamp	4.3	LED	Red
	Reversing light	4.8	LED	White
	Rear turn signal lamp	5.3	LED	Amber
	High-level brake light	1.4 (low-level configuration) 4.8 (high-level configuration)	LED	Red
	License plate light	5	Bulb	White
Interior lighting system	Vanity lights	1	LED	White
	Room lamp	2	LED	White
	Dome map light	2	LED	White
	Auxiliary dash panel ambient lighting	0.2	LED	64-color
	Front foot space ambient lighting	0.2	LED	64-color
	Rear foot space ambient lighting	0.2	LED	64-color
	Trunk light	5	灯泡	White

# Fuel sensor

**You must only use unleaded gasoline in your vehicle.**

**To achieve the best engine performance, you must use unleaded gasoline of 95# or above in your vehicle.**

In order to ensure emission control performance and malfunction diagnosability, FAW recommends you use gasoline specified in the local standard of each city.

### ■ Fuel tank opening specially for motor gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fuelling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on vehicle fuel pumps.

### ■ If your engine knocks

- Contact FAW Authorized Sales Service Center.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.



### NOTICES

#### ■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use any unsuitable fuel. If you use any unsuitable fuel, the engine might be damaged.
- Unsuitable fuel may lead to the engine or exhaust gas monitoring system malfunction.
- Make sure to clean the fuel system thoroughly and check the engine after adding improper fuels. Contact FAW Authorized Sales Service Center.

Additional information on sales to other countries and regions except for the mainland of China .....413

Navigation, voice recognition, and related functions that need to be connected to the Internet to use the mobile APP and the car APP are temporarily unavailable in other countries and regions except for China, and mainly include the following contents in this manual:

1. Navigation\* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China
2. 5-10 Voice recognition\* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China
3. 5-11 Carlife\* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China
4. 5-12 On-board interconnection (HONGQI Smart Connect)\* and related functions: temporarily only available in the mainland of China

Other information



---

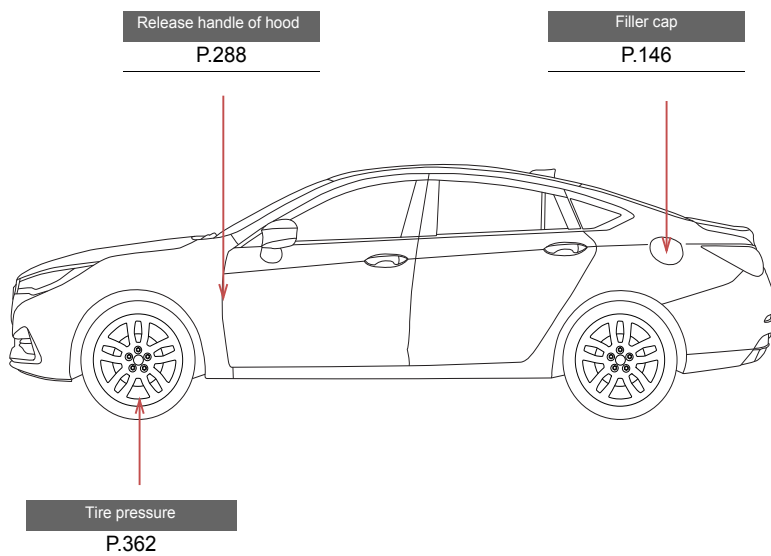
**Abbreviation list .....415**

## Abbreviation list

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
ABS	Antilock Brake System
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
AEB	Autonomous Emergency Braking
ALR	Automatic Locking Retractor
AT	Automatic Transmission
AVH	Automatic Vehicle Hold
BCM	Body Control Module
CAN	Controller Area Network
CDD-S	Controlled Deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go
CDP	Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake
CO	Carbon Monoxide
EBD	Electronic Brakeforce Distribution
ECU	Electronic Control Unit
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor
EMS	Engine Management System
ESCL	Electronic Steering Column Lock
ESC	Electronic Stability Control

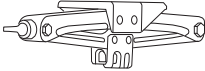
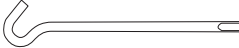

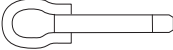
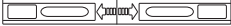
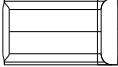

ABBREVIATIONS	MEANING
EPB	Electrical Parking Brake
EPS	Electric Power Steering
FCW	Forward Collision Warning
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist
IHC	Intelligent High Beam Control
LDW	Lane Departure Warning
LED	Light Emitting Diode
LCDA	Lane Change Decision Aid
MCS	Multi-function front Camera System
PEPS	Passive Entry&Passive Start
SVS	Service Vehicle Soon
TCS	Traction Control System
TPMS	Tire Pressure Manegment System
USB	Universal Serial Bus
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number

## References For Gas Station



Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	58L (Litre)
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline( → P.436)
Tire pressure	→ P.441
Oil capacity	→ P.437
The oil level	→ P.437

### On-board tool list

Illustration	Designation	Qty
	Jack	1
	Jack handle	1
	Tire wrench	1
	Towing eyelet	1
	Warning triangle	1
	Reflective vest assembly	1
	Wheel trim cover remover*	1